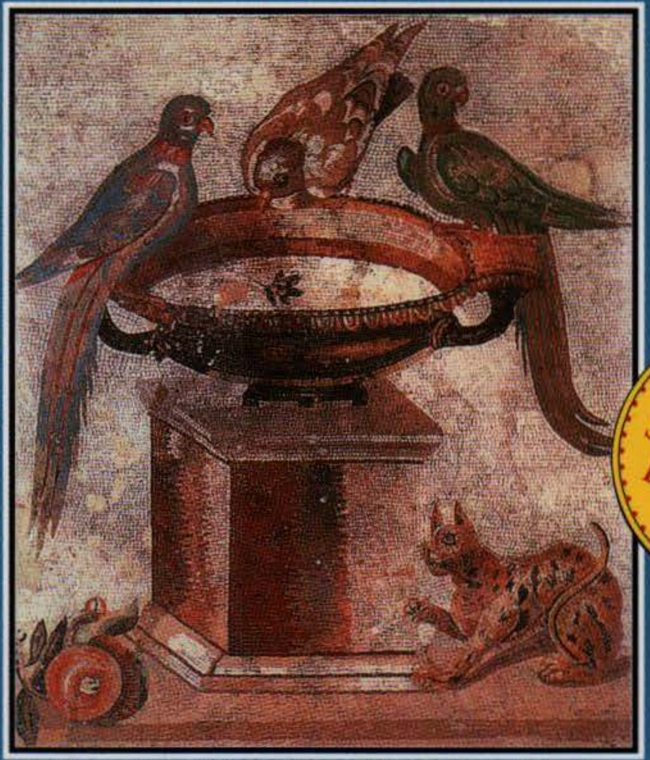
OXFORD LATIN COURSE

PART III



FULL COLOUR SECOND EDITION

MAURICE BALME & JAMES MORWOOD

OXFORD LATIN COURSE

PART III

SECOND EDITION

MAURICE BALME & JAMES MORWOOD

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research,
scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press
in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 1997

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 1997. This edition, with revised cartoons, published 2006

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Data available

ISBN-13: 978-0-19-912228-8

15

Printed in Singapore by KHL Printing Co. Pte Ltd.

Contents

Chapter	Introduction	5		
34	**Quīntus Delphōs vīsit**	6		
	Delphi	9	Grammar and exercises	127
35	**Quīntus mīlitat**	12		
	The Roman army – 1	16	Grammar and exercises	131
36	**Scintilla dēspērat**	18		
	The Roman army – 2	22	Grammar and exercises	135
37	**Philippī**	24		
	Brutus and Cassius	27	Grammar and exercises	138
38	**Quīntus Athēnās fugit**	29		
	Octavian returns to Italy	33	Grammar and exercises	141
39	**Quīntus Venusiam revīsit**	35		
	The confiscations	39	Grammar and exercises	143
40	**Quīntus amīcō veterī occurrit**	41		
	Latin poetry	46	Grammar and exercises	146
41	**Quīntus carmina facit**	48		
	Horace	52	Grammar and exercises	148
42	**Pompēius ad patriam revenit**	54		
	Books	57	Grammar and exercises	152
43	**Quīntus Maecēnātī commendātur**	59		
	Maecenas	62	Grammar and exercises	153
44	**Quīntus iter Brundisium facit**	64		
	Travel	68	Grammar and exercises	155
45	**Quīntus ā molestō quōdam vexātur**	71		
	Patrons and clients	75	Grammar and exercises	158
46	**Quīntus rūsticus fit**	77		
	Houses	81	Grammar and exercises	160
47	**Actium**	84		
	Divorce	87	Grammar and exercises	161
48	**Bellum Alexandrīnum**	89		
	Cleopatra	92	Grammar and exercises	165
49	**Caesar Augustus**	94		
	Caesar Augustus	97	Grammar and exercises	167
50	**Augustus Quīntum in amīcitiam suam accipit**	99		
	Vīxī puellīs	102	Grammar and exercises	169
51	**Maecēnās poētās fovet**	104		
	The Roman empire	107	Grammar and exercises	172
52	**Pāx et prīnceps**	111		
	Some glimpses of Augustus	114	Grammar and exercises	174
53	**Quīntus rūsticus**	116		
	The town mouse and the country mouse	120	Grammar and exercises	176
54	**Indomita mors**	122		
	Death	125	Grammar and exercises	179
	Appendix 1 Rome's imperial mission	183		
	Appendix 2 Continuous indirect speech	188		
	Appendix 3 Uses of the indicative and subjunctive	189		
	Reference grammar	191		
	Latin – English vocabulary	208		
	English – Latin vocabulary	220		
	Index of grammar	224		

Acknowledgements

The publisher and authors would like to thank the many consultants in the United Kingdom and the United States for comments and suggestions that have contributed towards this second edition. In particular: (UK) Julian Morgan, Deborah Bennett, David Cartwright, Alison Doubleday, John Powell, Philip Powell, Jeremy Rider, Tim Reader, F. R. Thorn, Andrew Wilson; (US) John Gruber-Miller, Carlos Fandal, Dennis Herer, James Lowe, Diana Stone and Jeffrey Wills.

The publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs;

©AKG p.10 (Erich Lessing), p.14 (Erich Lessing), p.94 top (Vatican Museums, Rome), p.100 (Erich Lessing & Musée du Louvre, Paris), p.114 (British Museum, London); Archivi Alinari p.62 (bottom), p.88, p.125; Ancient Art & Architecture Collection p.33 (bottom); Art Gallery of Ontario, Toronto p.84 (Poussin, Nicolas French 1595-1665 'Venus, Mother of Aeneas presenting him with arms forged by Vulcan' c.1635 oil on canvas 107.9 x 134.6 cm Gift of the Reuben Wells Leonard Estate 1936 acc no 48/5 photo by Carlo Catenazzi, AGO; Ashmolean Museum Oxford p.82 (bottom); D. Coles/Ashmolean Museum ©The Egyptian Exploration Society, p.57; The Barber Institute of Fine Arts, the University of Birmingham p.52; Biblioteca Vaticana p.51 (bottom); ©British Museum p.119; J. Allan Cash Photolibrary p.103; ©Donald Cooper, Photostage p.89; Roger Dalladay p.17 (bottom), p.23 (bottom), p.25, p.26, p.51 (top), p.60, p.62 (top), p.73 (top), p.96, p.99, p.107, p.126; Deutsches Archäologisches Institut, Istanbul p.183; C.M. Dixon p.33 (top), p.69 (bottom); Eric Dugdale p.80; Sonia Halliday Photographs p.68 (F.H.C. Birch); Robert Harding Picture Library p.11 (top) (Tony Gervis), p.27 (Tony Gervis), p.36 (top) (Tony Gervis); ©Michael Holford p.13, p.44, p.118; Images Colour Library p.66; Kostas Kontos p.85, p.105; Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna p.98; James Morwood p.11 (bottom), p.36 (bottom), p.53, p.67, p.69 (top), p.79, p.82 (top), p.86 (bottom), p.91, p.93, p.108, p.112, p.117, p.124; Scala, Florence cover; title page, p.8, p.20, p.34, p.40, p.42, p.43, p.46, p.50, p.56, p.58, p.63, p.72, p.73 (bottom), p.75, p.86 (top), p.94 (bottom), p.102, p.111, p.113, p.123; Spectrum Colour Library p.31; Franca Speranza s r l p.38 (Foto Mairani)

Cover photo by Scala

The cartoons are by Cathy Balme, and the illustrations on p.17 and p.23 are by Peter Connolly

Introduction

Part I of the course told the story of the childhood of the poet Horace (full name: Quintus Horatius Flaccus) in Venusia, a town in the remote south of Italy. Born in 65 BC, he was a very clever child, and at the beginning of Part II his father, Flaccus, took him to Rome so that he might have the best education available at the school of Orbilius. He spent seven years in Rome where he became friends with Marcus Cicero, the son of the great orator and statesman. After leaving Orbilius' school he went on to a rhetorical school. While he was there, Julius Caesar was murdered (15 March 44 BC); in the ensuing chaos, when civil war threatened, Flaccus decided to send Quintus to Athens to study philosophy and himself returned to Venusia to look after his family.

In Athens, where Quintus studied under Theomnestus, the head of the Academy, he again met Marcus Cicero, who was studying at the other university of Athens, the Lyceum. In September 44 BC Brutus, the leader of the conspirators who had murdered Julius Caesar, arrived in Athens; he attended lectures on philosophy and made friends with many of the students, whom he persuaded to accompany him to Macedonia (north Greece) where he was assembling an army to resist Antony and Octavian, the adopted son of Julius Caesar. Amongst others who followed him to Macedonia was Marcus Cicero.

Meanwhile Antony and Octavian had seized power in Rome and were murdering their enemies, amongst them Cicero, Marcus' father, who had led the resistance of the senate against Antony. When Quintus heard this news, he decided that he too must join the army of Brutus. But before doing so, he visited Apollo's famous shrine at Delphi. This is where the story of Part III begins.

Parts I and II contain a good deal of fiction, but in Part III the story is closely based on historical fact; we know much more about Horace's life from the time he joined the army of Brutus, largely from what he says about himself in his poetry, and he is playing a part in well-known historical events. We give below a chronological chart which provides the framework of the story.

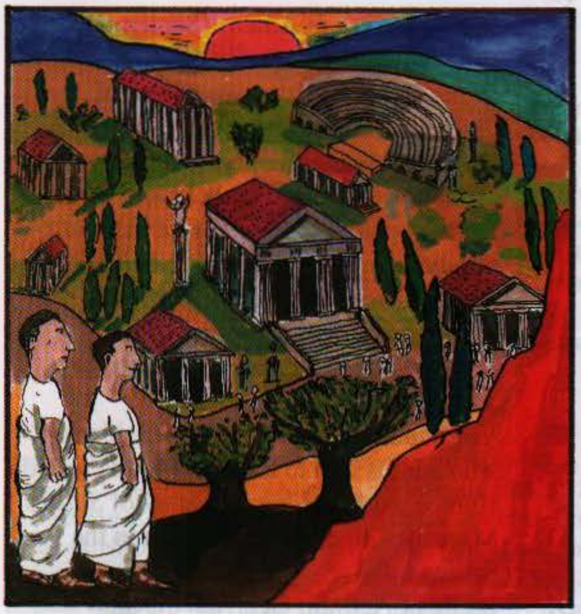
BC	
44	Brutus arrives in Athens (September)
42	Horace joins his army in Asia: he is made *tribūnus mīlitum*; the two battles of Philippi (October, November) in which Horace commands a legion: Brutus and Cassius are defeated and commit suicide
41?	Horace returns to Italy to find that the family farm has been confiscated and his family have disappeared; he goes to Rome; he is appointed clerk in the Treasury; he begins to write poetry; he becomes friends with Virgil
40?	Virgil introduces Horace to Maecenas, who admits him to the circle of his friends
35	Horace publishes his first book of *Satires*
33?	Maecenas gives Horace a farm in the Sabine hills
31	Battle of Actium: Octavian defeats Antony and Cleopatra
30	Octavian defeats Antony at Alexandria: Antony and Cleopatra commit suicide; Horace publishes the *Epodes*

This was the last battle of the civil wars, which left Octavian master of the Roman world. He became known as Caesar Augustus, the first Roman emperor, and established a dynasty which was to last a hundred years. Horace meanwhile became one of the leading poets of the time and the friend not only of Maecenas and other important people but of the emperor himself. He died in 8 BC and could proudly claim:

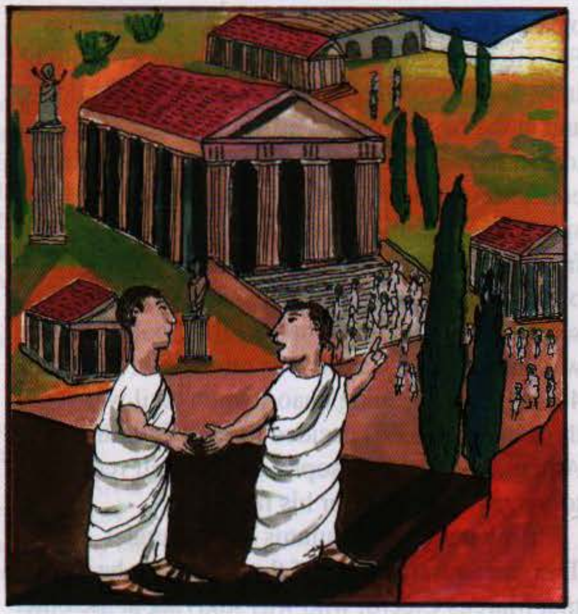
exēgī monumentum aere perennius . . .
ex humilī potēns

('I have raised a monument more lasting than bronze . . . achieving power despite my humble beginnings')

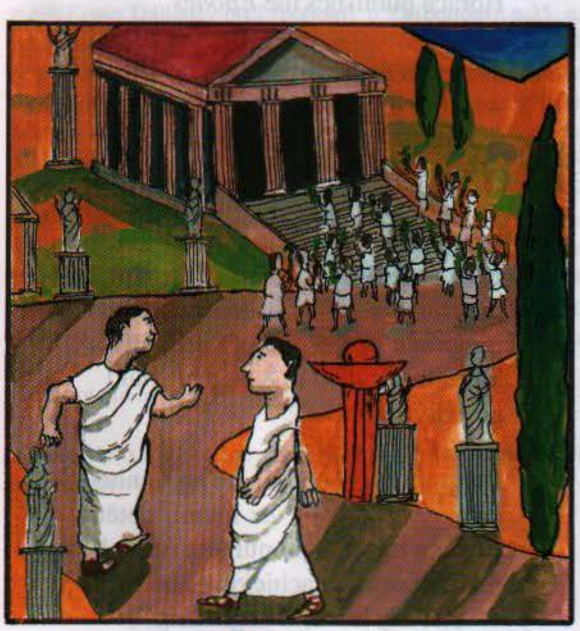
Chapter 34 Quintus Delphos visit



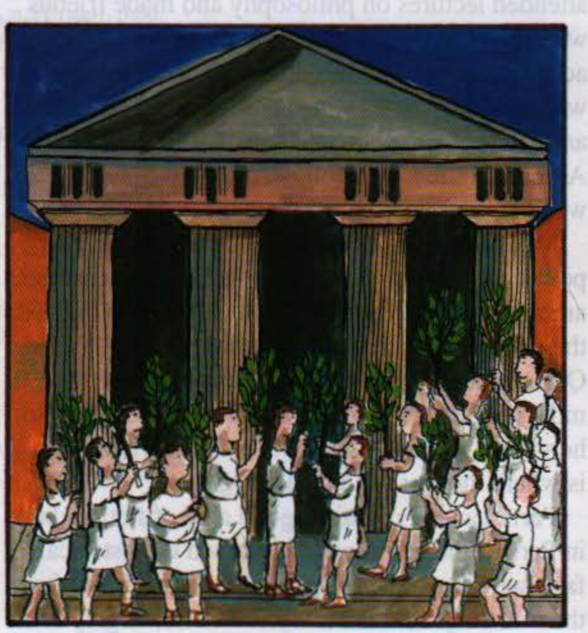
Quīntus Pompēiusque Delphōs vīsērunt ut Apollinis fānum (*shrine*) vidērent.



Quīntus 'age, Pompēī,' inquit, 'festīnēmus nē (*lest*) sērō adveniāmus.'



viam sacram ascendērunt ut ad templum advenīrent.



multī supplicēs (*suppliants*) prō templō expectābant ut deī ōrācula acciperent.

Vocabulary 34

verbs		*adjectives*	
dubitō, dubitāre	I doubt, hesitate	**quot?** (indecl.)	how many?
occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsum	I fall, die; I set (of sun)	**situs, -a, -um**	placed, sited
dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspexī, dēspectum	I look down on	*adverb*	
		anteā	before
prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectum	I look out at	*conjunctions*	
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum	I know	**antequam**	before
age, agite	come on!	**nē** + subjunctive	lest, in order not to
nouns		**ut** + subjunctive	in order to, to
ōrāculum, -ī, n.	oracle		
latus, lateris, n.	side		
sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, m.	priest		
necesse est (+ inf.)	it is necessary to		

Quīntus Delphōs vīsit

Quīntus, ubi dē morte Cicerōnis audīvit, valdē commōtus est. in Macedoniam festīnāre volēbat ut cum Brūtō mīlitāret mortemque patris amīcī suī vindicāret. sed antequam Athēnīs discessit, Delphōs vīsere cōnstituit, ut Apollinis nōtissimum fānum vidēret, quō hominēs ex omnibus partibus orbis terrārum veniēbant ut deī ōrācula peterent.

vindicāret avenge
fānum shrine

itaque amīcum quendam nōmine Pompēium petīvit et 'Pompēī,' inquit, 'vīsne mēcum venīre ut Delphōs vīsāmus?' ille 'certē' inquit 'tēcum veniam. Delphōs enim vīsere iamdūdum cupiō. iter quam celerrimē incipiāmus.' Quīntus 'ad Theomnēstum' inquit 'statim eāmus eumque valēre iubeāmus. crās iter incipiēmus.' Theomnēstum in tablīnō invēnērunt librum legentem. ille prōpositum eōrum laudāvit eōsque monuit ut omnia dīligenter spectārent.

iamdūdum for a long time now
prōpositum intention, plan

itaque posterō diē Athēnīs discessērunt. prīmum contendēbant viīs plānīs rēctīsque, sed quārtō diē iter difficilius fīēbat; collēs ascendēbant et mox in montēs iniērunt; nēminī occurrēbant nisi pāstōribus quī gregēs dē montibus agēbant paucīsque viātōribus quī Delphīs redībant.

plānīs flat
pāstōribus shepherds; **gregēs** flocks

subitō Delphōs prōspexērunt, in latere montis sitōs inter duās rūpēs ingentēs, quae in lūmine sōlis occidentis fulgēbant. paulīsper stābant tacitī, maiestāte locī commōtī. ā sinistrā ad campum dēspexērunt procul iacentem, ā dexterā montēs abruptī ad caelum surgēbant; in mediō fānum Apollinis ad latera montis adhaerēbat.

rūpēs rocks; **fulgēbant** were shining
abruptī sheer
adhaerēbat clung to

tandem Quīntus 'age,' inquit, 'festīnēmus, nē nox nōbīs incidat antequam advēnerimus.' sōl occiderat cum Delphōs advēnērunt; cēnāvērunt in parvā caupōnā continuōque dormīvērunt.

posterō diē Pompēius Quīntō excitātō 'age, Quīnte,' inquit,

koska
huomenna
comp.
vuoristoon
herätettyä

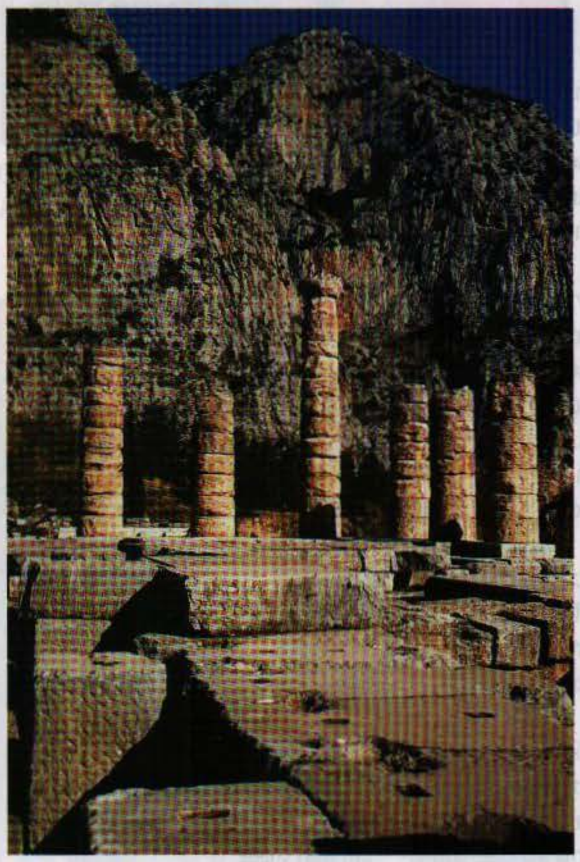
occīdere – tapan jukn. (caedo 3.)
occidere – kaaten, 'lasken', 'kaadu
(cadō 3.)

'collem ascendāmus ut templum Apollinis videāmus.' viam sacram lentē ascendērunt. iānuae templī apertae erant. ā fronte hominēs nōnnūllī sedēbant Pythiam exspectantēs. mox Pythia ipsa ā sacerdōte adducta est, veste pūrā indūta rāmumque laurūs manū gerēns. in adytum dēscendit. deinde murmura audīta sunt ex adytō sonantia; Pythia, ā deō commōta, ōrāculum dīvīnum ēdēbat. murmura dēsiērunt. Pythia ex adytō ascendit oculīsque ad terram dēmissīs ē templō tacita exiit. sacerdōs ōrāculum in tabulā scrīptum supplicī trādidit. ille tabulam summā reverentiā acceptam perlēgit deōque grātiās ēgit.

Quīntus, hanc caerimōniam tam veterem spectāns, penitus commōtus est. ad statuam Apollinis, quae in ultimā parte templī stābat, sē vertit; manūs ad caelum sustulit deumque ōrāvit ut propitius sibi esset. eō ipsō tempore hoc scīvit: poēta futūrus erat vātēsque Apollinis. ē templō tacitus exiit collemque cum Pompēiō dēscendit. prope viam erat fōns Castalius, Apollinī Mūsīsque sacer. Quīntus cōnstitit aquamque bibit.

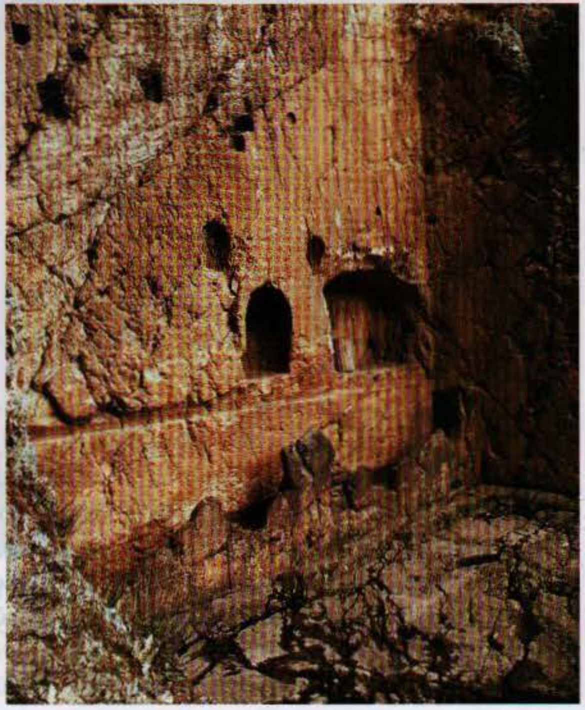
Pysāhtyi

ā fronte	in front
Pythiam	the priestess of Apollo
indūta	dressed in, wearing
rāmum laurūs	a branch of laurel
adytum	the inner shrine
sonantia	sounding, echoing
ēdēbat	was uttering
dēsiērunt	ceased;
dēmissīs	lowered
supplicī	to the suppliant
caerimōniam	ceremomy
penitus	deeply
propitius	favourable, propitious
futūrus erat	was going to be
vātēs	prophet



The Shining Rocks

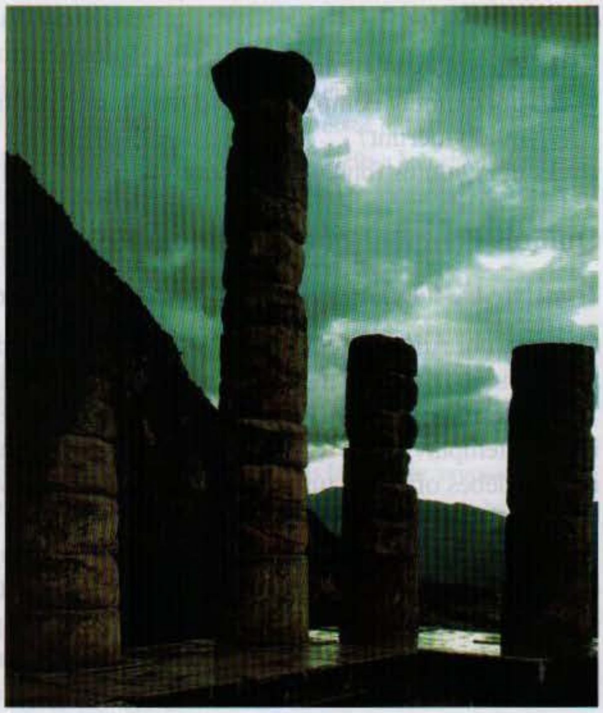
The Castalian spring



where he was destined to live honoured by many men'. Two great cliffs 1,000 feet high, which Quintus sees gleaming in the sunset, tower behind the site. They are called the Shining Rocks.

The myth says that when Apollo first came to Delphi, he killed Python, the monstrous dragon who kept guard there. Hence he was called 'Pythian' Apollo, and his Delphic prophetess was called the Pythia. According to a poem of the sixth century BC, Apollo declared about Delphi:

> Here I intend to build a very beautiful temple to give oracles to men who will always bring sacrifices to this place; and all who dwell in the fertile Peloponnese and all who dwell in Europe and throughout the sea-girt islands will consult it. I wish to give to all of them unerring advice, making prophecies inside the rich temple.



The temple of Apollo

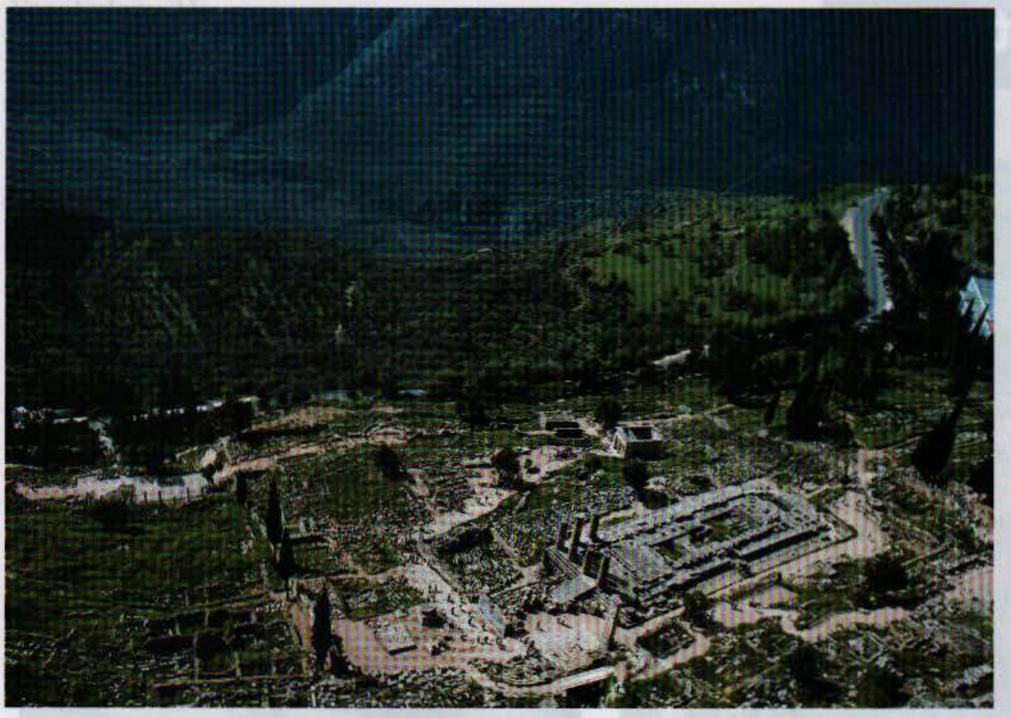
According to legend, Zeus had sent two eagles from opposite ends of the sky and they had met at Delphi. Thus the ancient Greeks regarded it as the centre of the world. Apollo's wish was fulfilled. This holy spot was held in special reverence throughout the Mediterranean countries and the oracle was questioned on many religious matters, both important and unimportant. Apollo told his original priests that they would know the will of the immortals. The oracle could not alter the future, but it did reveal what the gods were going to bring about.

Apollo's priestess would give replies, apparently inspired by the god. It is true that some of her responses were ambiguous or misleading. There is the famous story of how Croesus, the king of Lydia, consulted the oracle about whether he should invade Persia. 'If Croesus crosses the river Halys,' came the reply, 'he will destroy a mighty empire.' Croesus did indeed cross the Halys, only to suffer a calamitous defeat. It was his own empire that was destroyed.

More often, however, the oracle gave matter-of-fact answers to matter-of-fact questions. One old man who wanted children received the response:

> You are late looking for your family:
> but fit a new hook to an old plough-tree.

The old man was encouraged by this down-to-earth piece of advice, and married a young wife who later bore him two sons. Even oracles which were apparently riddles could make perfect sense. When the Persian hordes were descending on Athens in 480 BC, the Athenian general Themistocles interpreted the oracle's

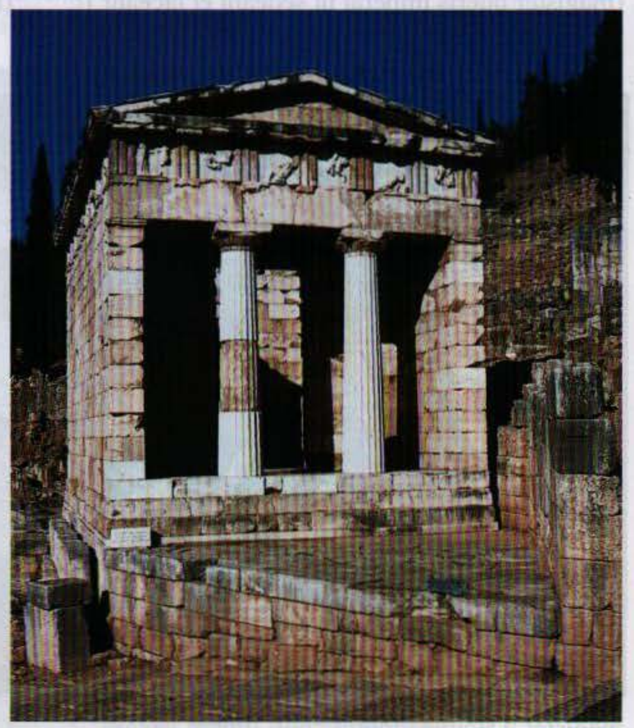


Delphi

promise 'that the wooden wall only shall not fail' as meaning that her wooden ships would save Athens. Sure enough, she won a great naval victory at Salamis.

The site of ancient Delphi remains one of the most impressive and atmospheric in Greece. The sanctuary was a kind of Greek United Nations and the various states competed with each other in putting up splendid buildings to add to their own prestige. The treasury of the Athenians, for example, is a superb architectural miniature. The site is dominated, however, by three buildings: the massive temple of Apollo; the fine stadium, where the Pythian games were held every four years; and the theatre. From the theatre there is a breathtaking view over the temple to the gorge beneath with its vast olive groves and the mountains beyond.

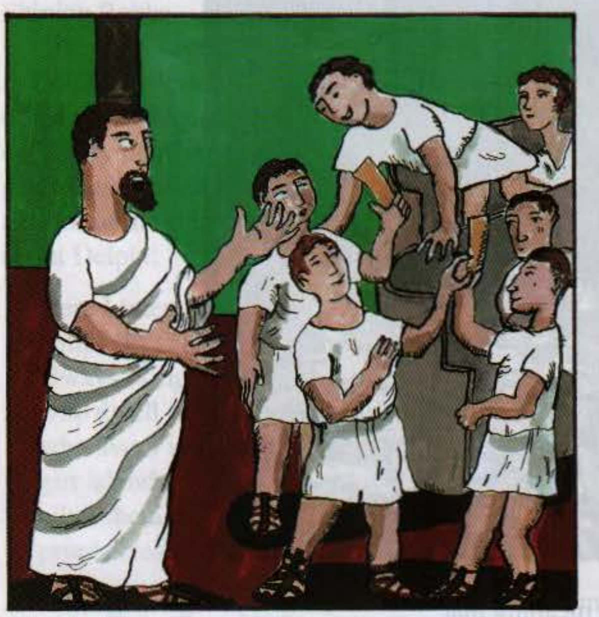
You can still see the Castalian spring where all who came to consult the oracle purified themselves. The Roman poets believed that its waters gave poetic inspiration.



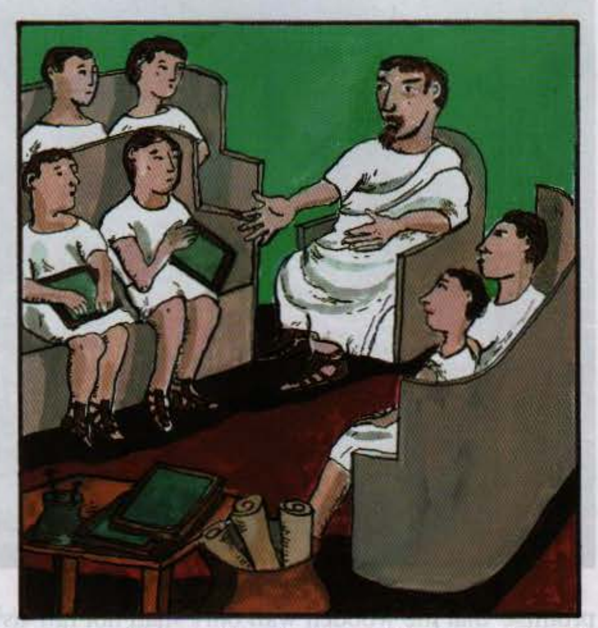
The treasury of the Athenians

You, your family or your school have a problem. You go to Delphi to consult the oracle. Describe what happens.

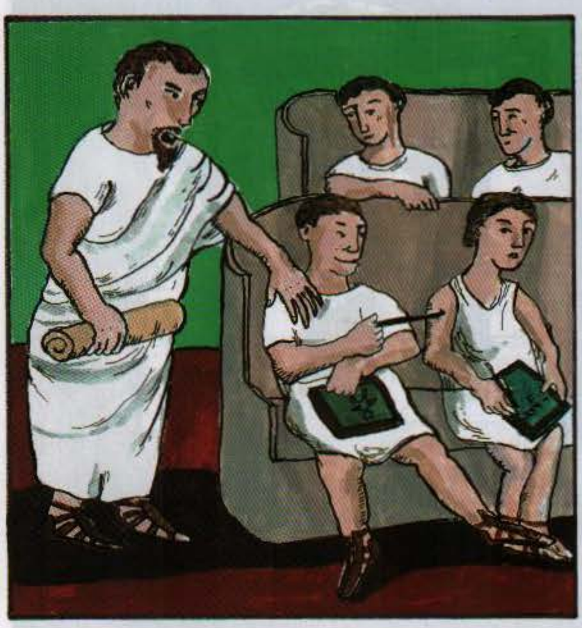
Chapter 35 Quintus militat



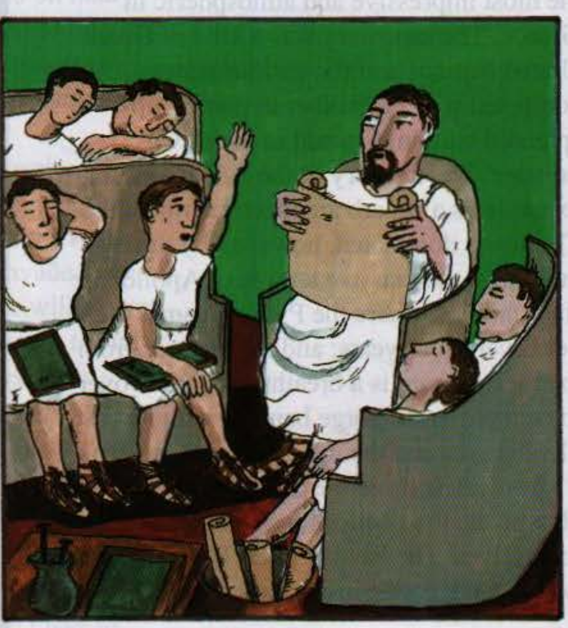
magister 'sedēte, puerī,' inquit, 'et tacēte.'
(magister puerīs imperat ut sedeant et taceant.)



magister 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'fer mihi tuam tabulam.'
(magister Quīntum rogat ut tabulam sibi ferat.)



magister 'Decime,' inquit, 'nōlī Iūliam vexāre.'
(magister Decimō imperāvit nē Iūliam vexāret.)



Quīntus 'magister,' inquit, 'vīsne mē dīmittere?'
(Quīntus magistrō persuāsit ut sē dīmitteret.)

Vocabulary 35

verbs

cessō, cessāre	I idle, linger
postulō, postulāre	I demand
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum	I forbid, order not to
pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītum	I punish

nouns

disciplīna, -ae, f.	learning, discipline, training
lēgātus legiōnis	legionary commander
tribūnus mīlitum	tribune of the soldiers
tēlum, -ī, n.	missile, javelin
tergum, -ī, n.	back
scūtum, -ī, n.	shield
opus, operis, n.	work; military work, fortification

adjectives

perītus, -a, -um + gen.	skilled in
saevus, -a, -um	savage
secundus, -a, -um	second, following; favourable
mīlitāris, -e	of soldiers, military

adverbs

forte	by chance
omnīnō	altogether, completely
rūrsus	again

preposition

sub + acc.	up to; (of time) towards

conjunction

dōnec	until

Quīntus mīlitat

merīdiē nautae nāvem solvērunt. ventus secundus erat, et sub noctem Dēlum advēnērunt, īnsulam parvam, ubi nātus erat deus Apollō. Quīntus monumenta vīsere volēbat magistrumque rogāvit nē nāvem solveret dōnec rediisset. cum in terram exiisset,

nātus erat was born

The stone lions of Delos

The Harbour Street, Ephesus

festīnāvit cum Pompēiō ut locum sacrum spectāret ubi Apollō nātus erat. cum omnia spectāvissent, sōl occiderat; cōnstituērunt igitur in terrā pernoctāre. postrīdiē cum prīmum in nāvem rediissent, magister nautīs imperāvit ut nāvem solverent.

minpä kun heti

pernoctāre to spend the night

reliquum iter sine cāsū cōnfectum est. tertiō diē lītus Asiae cōnspexērunt merīdiēque ad portum Ephesī advēnērunt. Quīntus Pompēiusque in urbem festīnāvērunt et, cum in forō sedērent, mīlitī cuidam occurrērunt quī cum Brūtō mīlitābat. eī persuāsērunt ut sē ad exercitum dūceret. sine morā iter iniērunt et sub vesperem ad castra advēnērunt. cum castra intrāvissent, mīles eōs ad centuriōnem dūxit et 'hī iuvenēs' inquit 'Athēnīs vēnērunt ut cum Brūtō mīlitent.'

ille eīs imperāvit ut sēcum in prīncipia legiōnis venīrent. cum centuriō eōs in prīncipia dūxisset, tribūnum mīlitum cōnspexērunt nōmine Rūfum, quī forte eīs nōtus erat. ille eōs hilariter salūtāvit; 'ergō vōs quoque' inquit 'vēnistis ut nōbīscum mīlitētis? vōs dūcam ad lēgātum legiōnis.' lēgātus eōs cōmiter excēpit; 'Rūfus' inquit 'vōs cūrābit; crās vōs ad imperātōrem dūcam.'

prīncipia (n. pl.) headquarters

excēpit received

postrīdiē Rūfus eīs ante lūcem excitātīs imperāvit ut ad lēgātum festīnārent; ille eōs ad Brūtum dūxit, quī multa eōs rogāvit. tandem 'iuvenēs prūdentēs' inquit 'vidēminī et strēnuī. vōs in exercitum meum accipiam.' ad lēgātum sē vertit: 'mitte hōs iuvenēs' inquit 'ad lēgātum decimae legiōnis. imperā eī ut eōs cūret disciplīnamque mīlitārem doceat.' haec dīxit eōsque dīmīsit.

vidēminī you seem; **strēnuī** energetic

lēgātus decimae legiōnis eōs trīstis īnspexit. 'ergō' inquit 'Athēnīs vēnistis? in Acadēmīā philosophiae studēbātis? nunc mīlitāre vultis? dī immortālēs! mox nōn exercitum habēbimus sed scholam philosophōrum. Rūfe, dūc hōs iuvenēs ad Lūcīlium; imperā eī ut aliquid disciplīnae eōs doceat.'

aliquid disciplīnae some(thing of) discipline

Respondē Latīnē

1. cum Quīntus Pompēiusque Ephesum advēnissent, quōmodo exercitum Brūtī invēnērunt?
2. cum centuriō eōs in prīncipia legiōnis dūxisset, quem cōnspexērunt?
3. cūr Brūtus eōs in exercitum suum accēpit?
4. quōmodo eōs accēpit lēgātus decimae legiōnis?

Lūcīlius Quīntum ad disciplīnam mīlitārem īnstituit

īnstituit introduces to

Translate the first paragraph and answer the questions on the rest

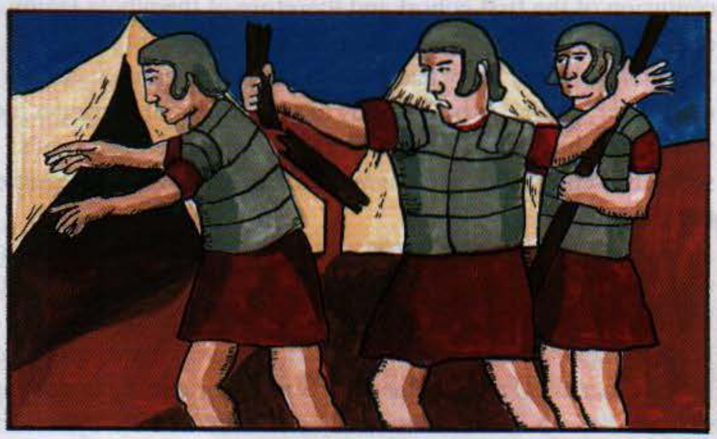
Rūfus Quīntum Pompēiumque ad Lūcīlium dūxit. ille centuriō erat, vir fortis, disciplīnae mīlitāris diū perītus. mīlitēs pigrōs saevē puniēbat; ab eīs appellātus est 'cēdō alteram'; nam cum vītem in tergō mīlitis frēgerat, alteram postulābat et rūrsus aliam. Quīntus Pompēiusque ad disciplīnam mīlitārem ab eō celeriter īnstitūtī sunt. tēla iacere didicērunt, gladiō ferīre, opera cōnstruere. longa itinera faciēbant arma sarcinamque ferentēs. Lūcīlius numquam eōs quiēscere sīvit; semper eīs imperābat nē cessārent. illī numquam tam fessī fuerant.

pigrōs lazy
'cēdō alteram' 'give me another'
cum whenever; **vītem** vine staff
sarcinam pack

vīcēsimō diē Lūcīlius, cuius mōs erat reprehendere, eōs laudāvit: 'iuvenēs,' inquit, 'nōn omnīnō inūtilēs estis. aliquid disciplīnae mīlitāris didicistis. itaque ad lēgātum eāmus. vōs eī commendābō.'

vīcēsimō twentieth
reprehendere to criticize
inūtilēs useless

cum Lūcīlius eōs ad lēgātum dūxisset, ille eōs trīstis īnspexit: 'ergō' inquit 'disciplīnam mīlitārem iam didicistis? vīgintī diēbus mīlitēs factī estis? vidēbimus. intereā Brūtus mihi imperāvit ut vōs in meam legiōnem accipiam. Lūcīlius vōbīs dīcet quid facere dēbeātis. īte nunc et officia dīligenter perficite.' deinde eōs benignius aspiciēns, 'sine dubiō' inquit 'fortēs vōs praebēbitis et dīligentēs, et mox mīlitēs fīētis decimā legiōne dignī.' cum haec dīxisset, eōs dīmīsit.



cedo alteram

1. How did Lucilius' behaviour towards Quintus and Pompeius change on the twentieth day? [2]
2. What did he say to them? [4]
3. When Lucilius took them to the legionary commander, how did the latter react at first? Did he think they were now fully trained? [2 + 2]
4. How did he encourage them? [3]
5. Write short character sketches of Lucilius and the legionary commander. [4 + 3]

THE ROMAN ARMY – I

By the beginning of the first century BC the Roman army had become a professional body, open to any citizen who was willing to serve for payment. Soldiers would undertake to join for sixteen (later for twenty) years. They swore an oath of allegiance to their general, who for his part promised to give them land when they retired, and so there was a great danger that the soldiers would put loyalty to an individual before their duty to the state.

The largest unit of the army was the legion. This would number 6,200 at full strength but normally the total would be anything between 3,000 and 6,000. The legion was divided into ten cohorts, which were made up of six centuries of eighty to one hundred men each.

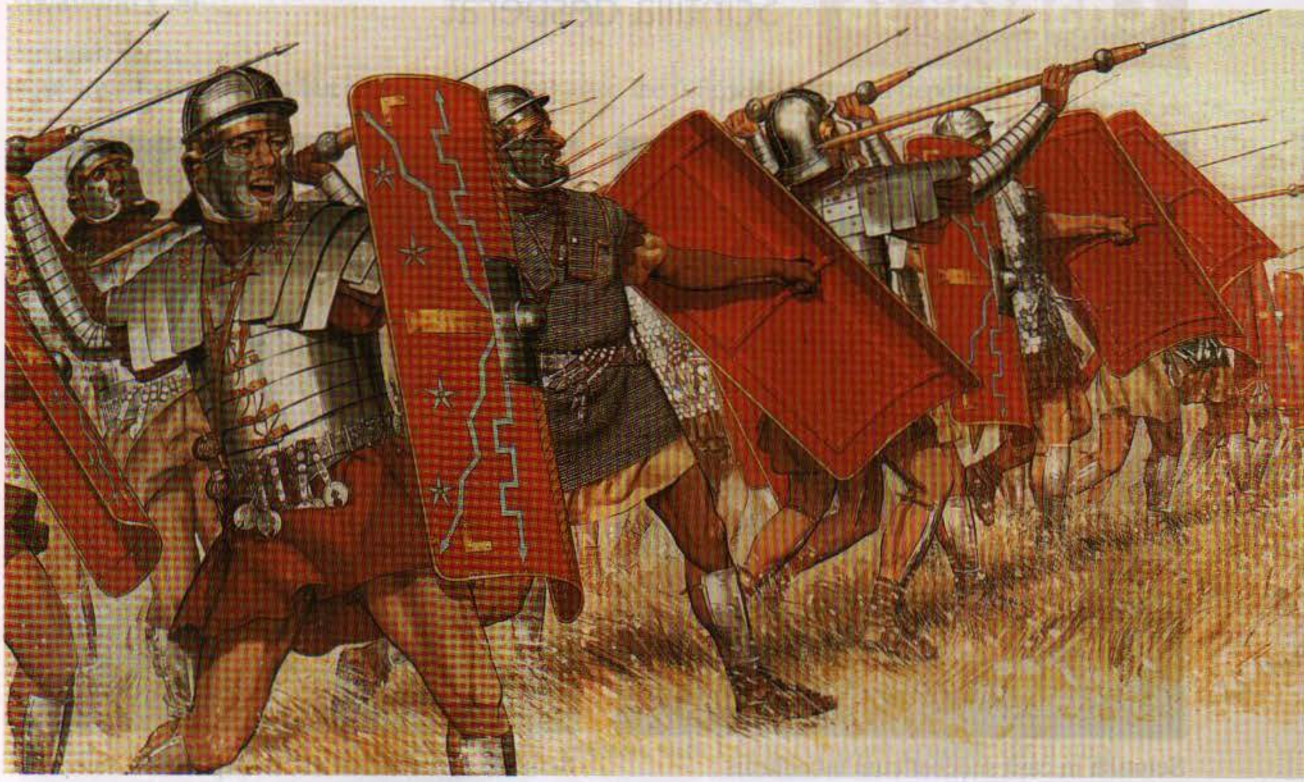
The army commanders were usually ex-praetors or ex-consuls. These senior magistrates held *imperium*, i.e. the right to command an army. Their tent, the *praetōrium*, would be placed in the middle of the camp. Each legion was commanded by a *lēgātus* who would be aided by six *tribūnī*, usually young men of aristocratic birth. The legate and the tribunes were the higher-ranking officers.

The backbone of the army was provided by the centurions. They were the equivalent of the sergeants in a modern army. Unlike the tribunes, they were long-term professional soldiers. There were sixty of these, with six of them commanding each of the ten cohorts. They were carefully graded in authority and every centurion's ambition was to become *prīmus pīlus*, the senior centurion of the first cohort and therefore of the whole legion. The centurions were key figures, responsible for discipline among the common soldiers. They had the right to flog their men, a right mercilessly enforced by Lucilius in our story, and carried a rod to symbolize this. Other officers were the *optiō*, the centurion's second-in-command, and the *tesserārius*, who was responsible for the watchword.

The legionary soldier wore a linen vest and over that a woollen tunic which reached almost to his knees. He placed on top of this a leather doublet, with plates of metal, if he could afford them, loosely fitted to it with thongs. He had a brown cloak which could be used as a blanket when necessary. He wore heavy hobnailed sandals, had his hair cut extremely short and was always clean-shaven since a beard would offer a handhold to the enemy.

On the battlefield he wore a crested helmet (made of leather and later of metal) and a curving shield (*scūtum*) made of wood and covered with leather. This was four feet long and two and a half feet wide, strengthened by a rim of metal and a bronze or iron boss in the middle. The shield left the right leg uncovered, and so the soldier would protect it with a metal greave.

He fought with a sword, two javelins and sometimes a dagger. The sword was short and wide, about two feet long, two-edged and



A legion charges

well adapted to hand-to-hand fighting. The javelins were about seven feet in length. Made of wood with a two-foot head of iron, they would be thrown at a range of about thirty yards. The metal head was often joined to the shaft with a wooden pin which snapped on impact and made the weapon useless, to prevent the enemy picking up the javelins and throwing them back at the Romans.

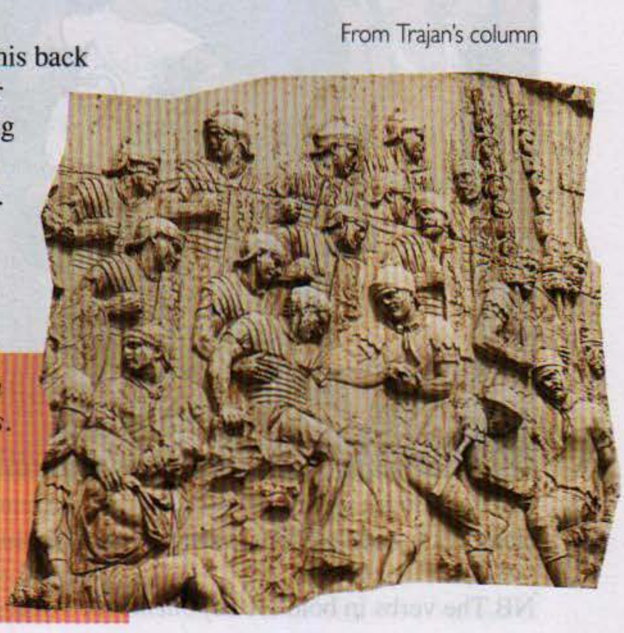
The soldier on the march carried in his pack and on his back not only his personal gear and clothing but also tools for pitching camp and stakes for forming a palisade, cooking utensils and food for several days. His wheat ration counted as part of his pay and he had to grind it himself. His drink was more like vinegar than wine.

It was a tough life but it produced a superbly disciplined and effective army.

Imagine that you are a Roman soldier drawn up with the enemy advancing on you. Describe what happens.

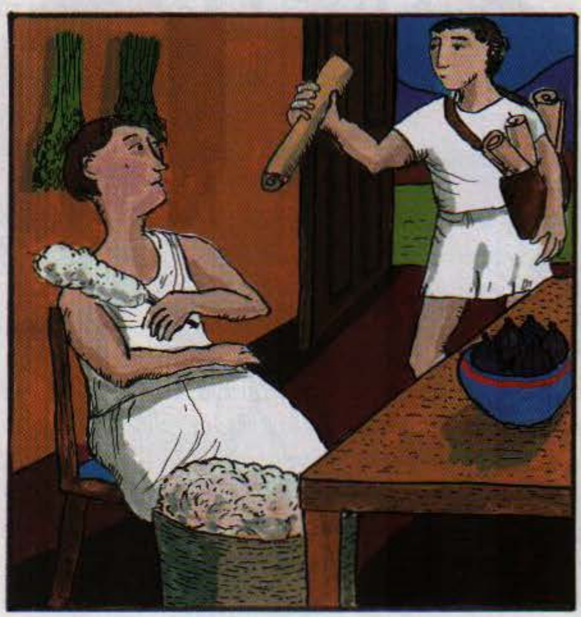
Discounting changes in equipment and technology, what similarities can you find between the Roman legionary soldier and the modern infantryman?

From Trajan's column

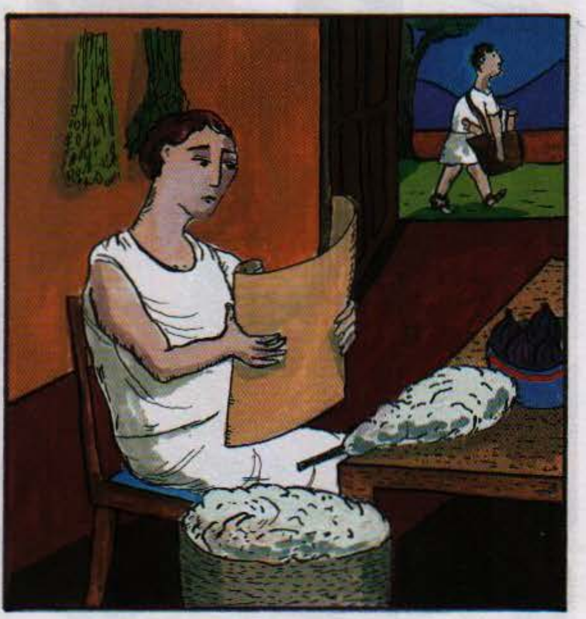


What is going on here?

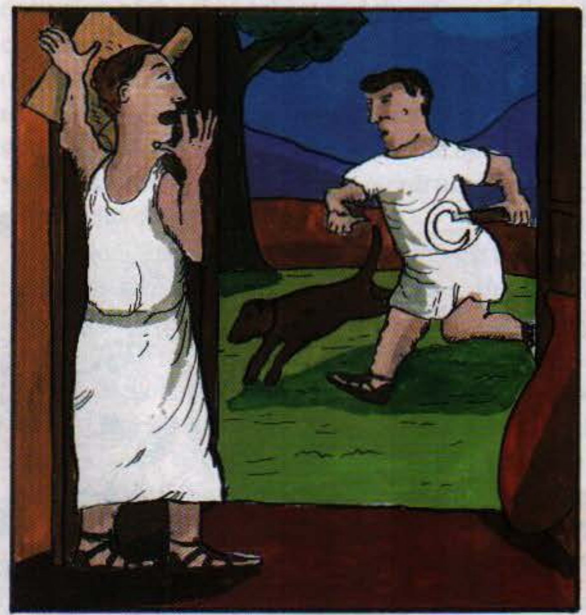
Chapter 36 Scintilla desperat



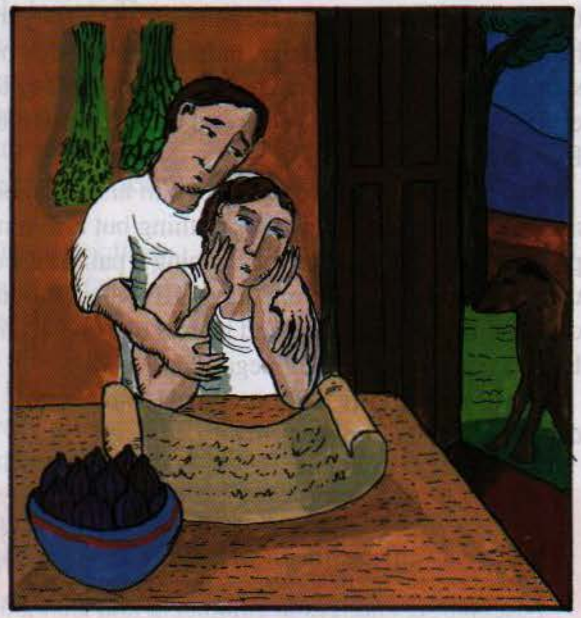
Scintilla in casā sedēbat cum tabellārius **ingressus est** epistolamque eī trādidit.



Scintilla nōn **morāta est** sed epistolam statim perlēgit.



Flaccus iam ad agrum **profectus erat**, sed cum clāmōrēs uxōris audīvisset, celeriter **regressus est**.



Flaccus uxōrem **cōnsōlārī cōnābātur**. dē Quīntī epistolā diū **loquēbantur**.

NB The verbs in bold are *deponent*: see vocabulary.

Vocabulary 36

deponent verbs

these are passive in form but active in meaning; learn the following common deponent verbs:

	present	*infinitive*	*perfect*	
1st (like **paror**)	**cōnor**	**cōnārī**	**cōnātus sum**	I try
	cōnsōlor	**cōnsōlārī**	**cōnsōlātus sum**	I comfort
	moror	**morārī**	**morātus sum**	I delay
2nd (like **moneor**)	**vereor**	**verērī**	**veritus sum**	I fear
	videor	**vidērī**	**vīsus sum**	I seem
3rd (like **regor**)	**lābor**	**lābī**	**lāpsus sum**	I slip, fall
	loquor	**loquī**	**locūtus sum**	I speak, say
	proficīscor	**proficīscī**	**profectus sum**	I set out
	sequor	**sequī**	**secūtus sum**	I follow
4th (like **audior**)	**orior**	**orīrī**	**ortus sum**	I arise
mixed (like **capior**)	**morior**	**morī**	**mortuus sum**	I die
	patior	**patī**	**passus sum**	I suffer
	ēgredior	**ēgredī**	**ēgressus sum**	I go out
	ingredior	**ingredī**	**ingressus sum**	I go into
	prōgredior	**prōgredī**	**prōgressus sum**	I advance
	regredior	**regredī**	**regressus sum**	I go back

(the last four are compounds of **gradior, gradī, gressus sum** I step; compare **gradus, -ūs** a step)

verbs

cēlō, cēlāre	I hide
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum	I prevent
coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum	I join
dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī, dēsitum	I cease

adjectives

pius, -a, -um	pious, good
impius, -a, -um	impious, wicked

nouns

mala, -ōrum, n. pl.	evils, troubles
terror, terrōris, m.	terror
opus est + dat. of person,	abl. of thing needed, e.g. **opus est mihi auxiliō** I need help (there is need of help for me)
pēs, pedis, m.	foot

Scintilla dēspērat

omnēs Venusīnī valdē ānxiī fīēbant. cotīdiē nūntiī peiōrēs Rōmā afferēbantur; rēspūblica in bellum cīvīle lābēbātur, sīcut Flaccus praedīxerat.

Scintilla in casā sedēbat cum tabellārius ingressus epistolam eī trādidit. signum continuō frēgit epistolamque celeriter perlēgit; terrōre commōta ululāvit. Flaccus iam ad agrum profectus erat sed cum clāmōrēs uxōris audīvisset, ad casam recurrit. ingressus 'quid passa es, cārissima?' inquit. illa 'ō mī vir, Quīntus Athēnīs

Venusīnī the people of Venusia

praedīxerat had foretold

tabellārius postman

ululāvit shrieked

discessit; Brūtum in Asiam secūtus est.' Flaccus 'quid dīcis, cārissima?' inquit; 'num vult mīlitāre fīlius noster?' illa 'lībertātem populī Rōmānī dēfendit, ut dīcit; ō diem nigrum! ō dī immortālēs, servāte fīlium nostrum. ō Flacce, Decimum arcesse; ille nōs adiuvābit.'

Flaccus 'Quīntus nōn iam puer est,' inquit, 'sed vir fortis et bonus; officium suum perficere dēbet. nōn possumus eum prohibēre lībertātem populī Rōmānī contrā tyrannōs dēfendere. sed, sī tibi placet, Decimum arcessam ut rem eī prōpōnāmus.'

Flaccus ad Decimī aedēs festīnāvit. occurrit eī Brundisium profectūrō sed eī persuāsit ut sēcum Venusiam redīret. casam ingressī Scintillam ūbertim flentem invēnērunt. Decimus ad eam accessit et 'nōlī flēre, Scintilla,' inquit; 'Quīntus sine dubiō mox Athēnās regressus in Acadēmīā iterum studēbit. bellum nōn diū gerētur. Quīntus tamen imprūdēns est, sī Brūtō sē coniūnxit; Antōnius enim mīlitiae perītissimus est cōpiāsque meliōrēs habet. cum Caesaris percussōrēs vīcerit, sine dubiō rempūblicam restituet. nunc reīpūblicae opus est virō fortī quī pācem cīvibus reddet. ego ipse Brundisium iam profectūrus sum ut Antōniī exercituī mē coniungam.'

profectūrō about to set out
ūbertim copiously, in floods
percussōrēs assassins
restituet will restore

Flaccus, cum haec audīvisset, sē continēre nōn poterat. 'quid dīcis, perfide?' inquit; 'tū in animō habēs in exercitū illīus tyrannī mīlitāre? nihilne cūrās dē lībertāte? abī! nōlī unquam posteā in hanc casam ingredī.'

continēre to restrain
perfide traitor!

Decimus sē vertit et tacitus ēgressus est. Flaccus ad Scintillam accessit et cōnābātur eam cōnsōlārī. illa tamen flēre nōn dēsiit; 'quot mala patiēmur!' inquit; 'cīvēs cum cīvibus, patrēs cum fīliīs pugnābunt. quot mātrēs fīliōs suōs lūgēbunt! saeviet Mars impius tōtum per orbem terrārum.' haec locūta ad terram cecidit, exanimāta.

lūgēbunt will mourn for
saeviet Mars Mars (god of war) will rage; **exanimāta** in a faint

A scene of fighting from Trajan's column

Respondē Latīnē

1 cūr Venusīnī ānxiī fīēbant?
2 cūr tam commōta erat Scintilla?
3 quōmodo cōnātus est Decimus Scintillam cōnsōlārī?
4 cūr Flaccus Decimō tam īrātus erat? quid eī dīxit?

Fābella: Quīntus Pompēiusque ad disciplīnam mīlitārem īnstituuntur

Persōnae: **Lūcīlius, Pompēius, Quīntus**

intrant Quīntus Pompēiusque currentēs; sarcinās gravissimās ferunt et scūta et gladiōs. sequitur Lūcīlius.

sarcinās packs

Lūcīlius: festīnāte, iuvenēs; nōn iam philosophiae in Acadēmīā studētis. currite.

Pompēius: nōn longius currere possum.

Lūcīlius: cōnsistite!

Quīntus (*anhēlāns*): quīnque mīlia passuum iam cucurrimus, Lūcīlī; cōnfectī sumus. sub arbore sedeāmus paulīsper et quiēscāmus.

anhēlāns panting

arma in terrā dēpōnunt sedentque sub arbore.

Lūcīlius: iam satis quiēvistis, iuvenēs. surgite. nōn tempus est morārī. ecce, hostēs in nōs prōgrediuntur. nōnne eōs vidētis? in illā silvā sē cēlant.

Pompēius: quid dīcis, Lūcīlī? nūllōs hostēs videō.

Lūcīlius: hostēs cēlātī sunt. cavēte, nē in īnsidiās cadātis. quid facere dēbētis?

īnsidiās ambush, trap

Quīntus: dēbēmus explōrātōrēs praemittere cautēque prōgredī, gladiīs strictīs.

explōrātōrēs scouts
gladiīs strictīs with swords drawn

Lūcīlius: euge, Quīnte. explōrātōrēs praemittite, nē imprōvīsī capiāminī, cautēque prōcēdite.

euge good!; **imprōvīsī** off your guard

Quīntus cautē prōgreditur gladium vibrāns. Pompēius sequitur, parvā vōce murmurāns.

vibrāns brandishing

Pompēius: quam stultus est hic lūdus! Lūcīlius īnsānit; cōnātur nōs labōre cōnficere.

ubi ad silvam adveniunt, Quīntus maximā vōce clāmat virgultaque gladiō ferit.

virgulta (n. pl.) undergrowth

Quīntus: ecce, Lūcīlī. hostem occīdī; reliquī fūgērunt.

Pompēius: ecce, Lūcīlī. vulnerātus sum; morior.

Lūcīlius: cōnsistite, iuvenēs. redīte ad mē. curre, Pompēī. nōlō alteram vītem in tergō tuō frangere.

vītem vine staff

Quīntus Pompēiusque ad Lūcīlium currunt.

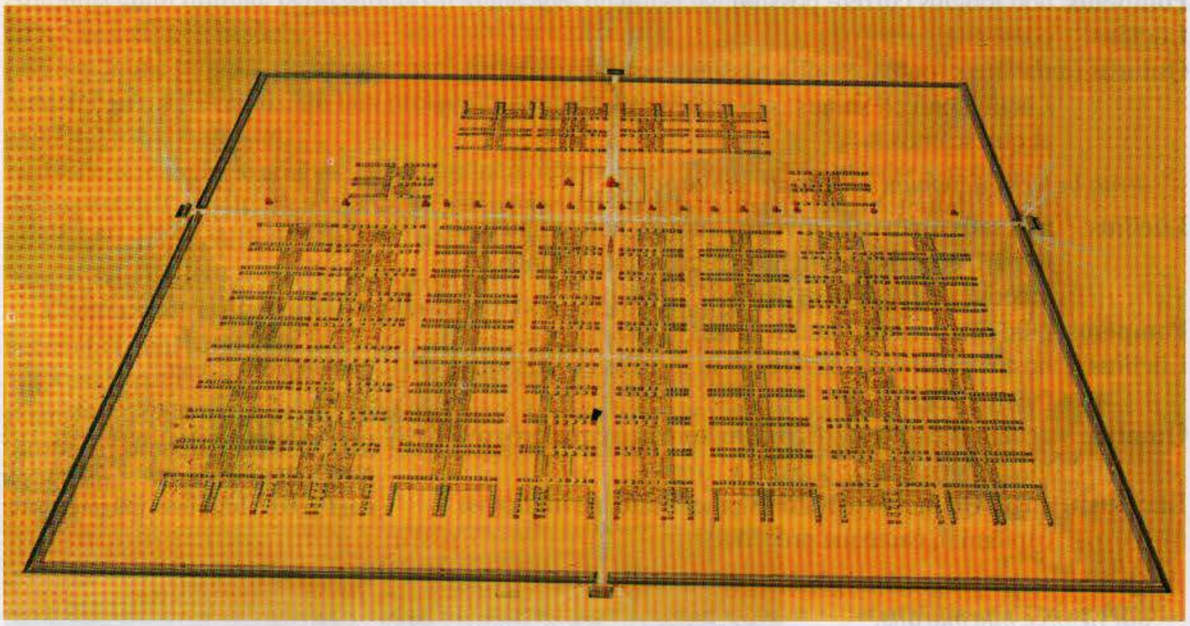
Lūcīlius: satis lūsistis, iuvenēs. nōn omnīnō inūtilēs estis. tīrōnēs peiōrēs vīdī, rārō tamen. ad castra redeāmus ut lēgātō vōs commendem. iam dextrō pede contendite. ō Quīnte, sinistrō pede profectus es. eheu! numquam mīles fīēs.

inūtilēs useless; **tīrōnēs** recruits
rārō seldom, not often

THE ROMAN ARMY – 2

A Roman army would generally cover fifteen to twenty miles in a day when it was on the move. This meant that it would take about fifty-four days to march from Rome to the Channel ports. However, far greater distances could be achieved in forced marches if necessary.

An army would have to create a temporary camp every evening when it was on the move. The soldiers would dig a ditch (*fossa*) around a square site and pile up the displaced earth behind the ditch to form a mound (*agger*) and a rampart (*vāllum*). They would build a palisade, made up of the stakes they took with them on the march, on top of this. (They would each carry a spade and two or three stakes.)

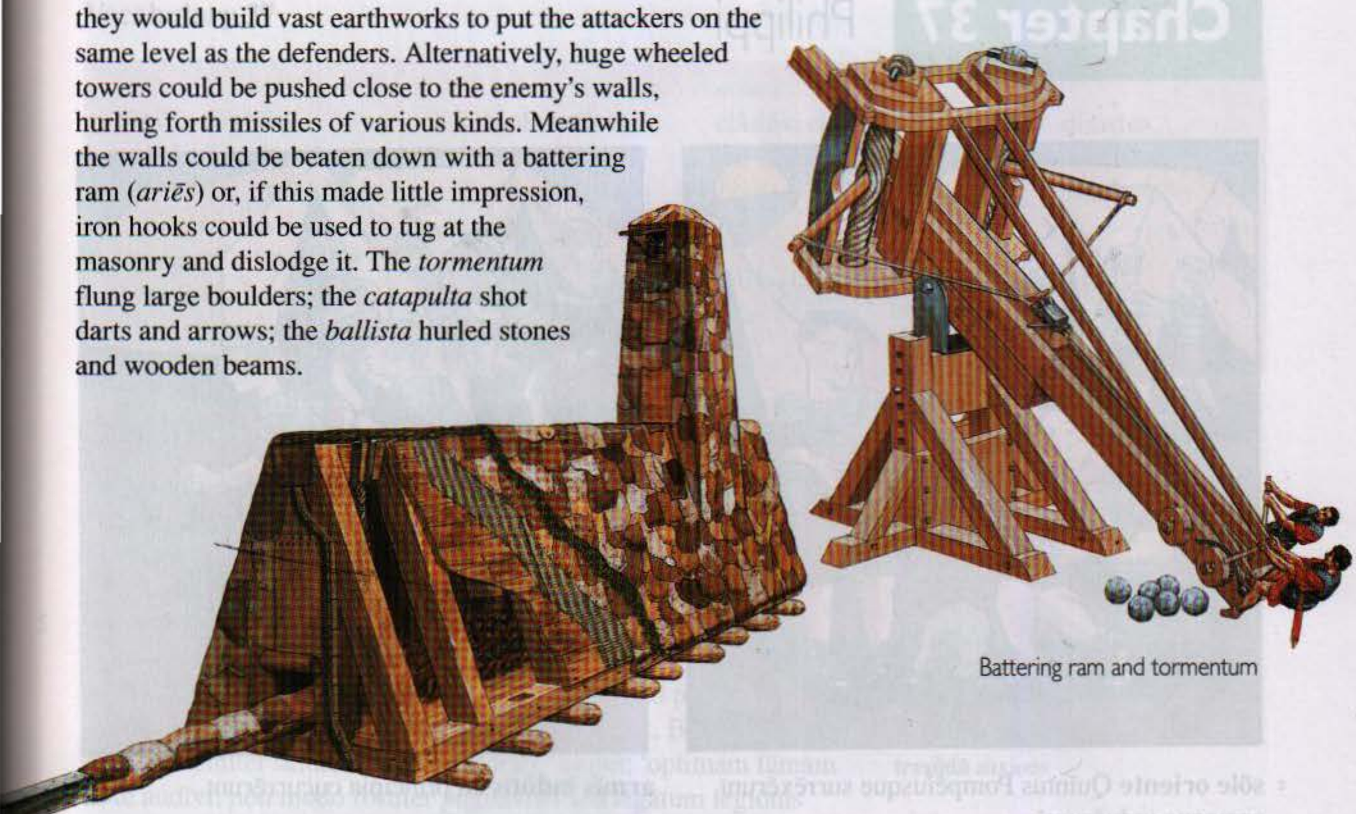


A Roman camp

The general's tent (*praetōrium*) was, as we have seen in the last chapter, at the centre of the camp, where the main thoroughfares from north to south and from east to west met. Here the standards (*signa*) and the treasury of the legions were stored, and young aristocrats, who were accompanying the general in order to gain practical experience of fighting, were quartered. The *quaestōrium*, the quarters of the paymaster where hostages, prisoners and booty were kept, was next to the *praetōrium*. On the other side of the *praetōrium* was an open space called the forum. This was the centre of camp life. Here the general would deliver speeches to his men, give rewards and administer punishments. Here too makeshift shops would suddenly spring into existence.

Now we come to the siege of an enemy town.

When the Romans were confronted with a really strong town, they would build vast earthworks to put the attackers on the same level as the defenders. Alternatively, huge wheeled towers could be pushed close to the enemy's walls, hurling forth missiles of various kinds. Meanwhile the walls could be beaten down with a battering ram (*ariēs*) or, if this made little impression, iron hooks could be used to tug at the masonry and dislodge it. The *tormentum* flung large boulders; the *catapulta* shot darts and arrows; the *ballista* hurled stones and wooden beams.



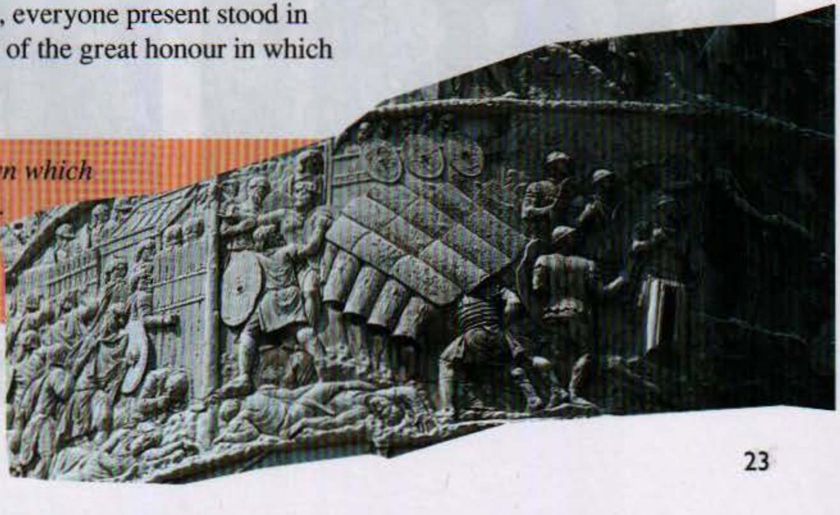
Battering ram and tormentum

A famous formation adopted by the Romans against a besieged town was the *testūdō* (tortoise shell). The soldiers would advance to the walls with their shields locked together over their heads to protect themselves from missiles. They would then try to scale the walls with ladders.

You have already read about a Roman triumph, the reward for a successful general. The valour of ordinary soldiers was rewarded with crowns, collars, bracelets and horse-trappings. On p. 166 we quote an inscription which tells us that a soldier called Silvanus won the lot! The most highly valued award was the civic crown (*corōna cīvica*), granted to soldiers who had saved a Roman citizen's life in battle. When those who had been given this humble crown of oak leaves entered a room, everyone present stood in respect. This is only one illustration of the great honour in which courage was held by the Romans.

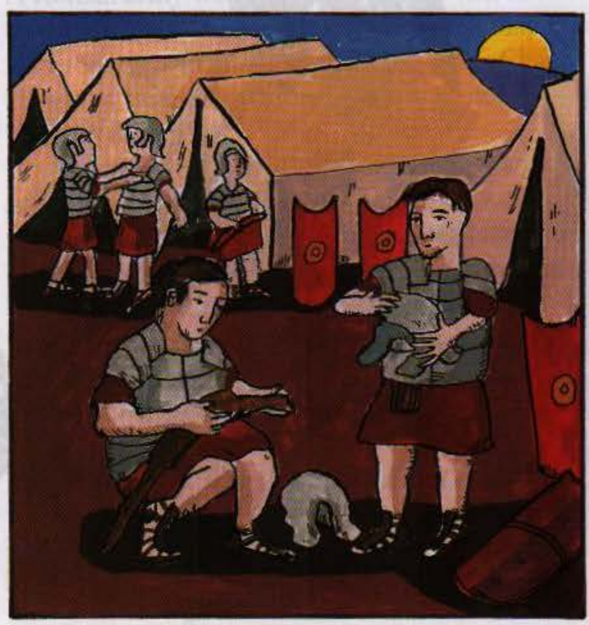
Imagine yourself in a walled town which is being attacked by the Romans. Describe what happens.

From Trajan's column

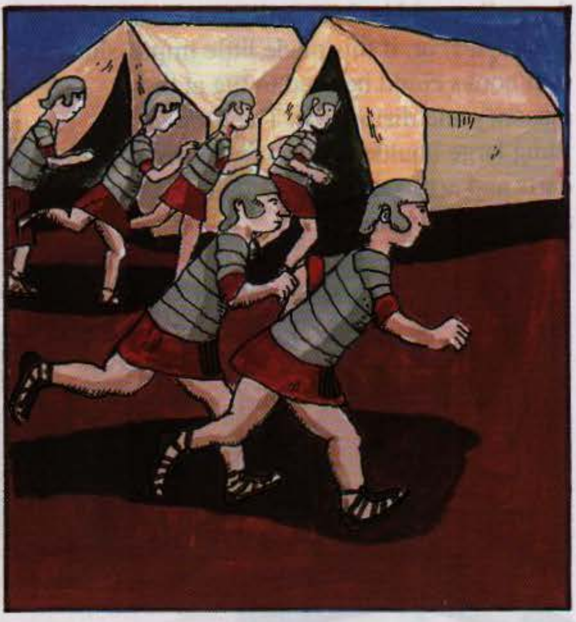


What is going on here?

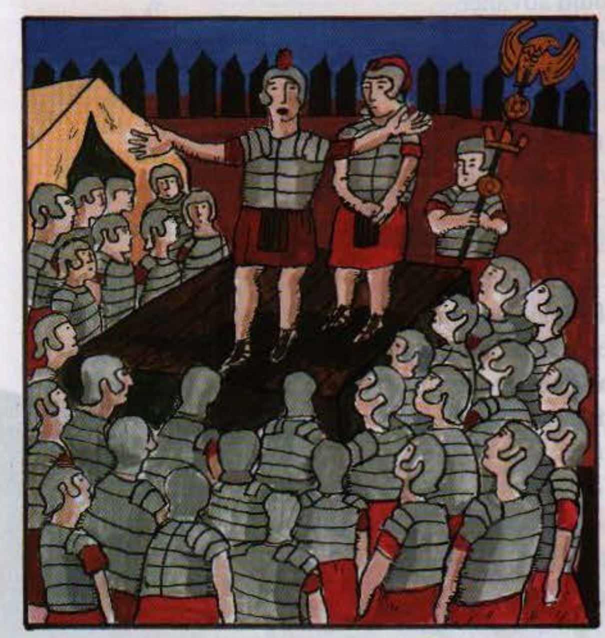
Chapter 37 Philippi



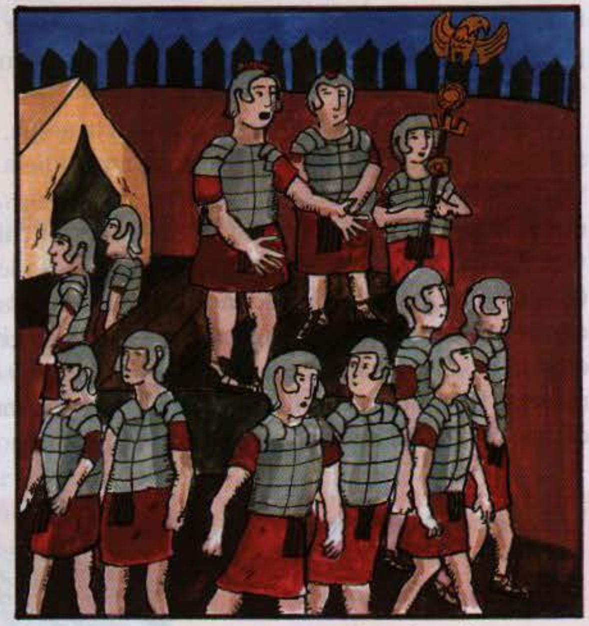
sōle oriente Quīntus Pompēiusque surrēxērunt armaque induērunt.



armīs indūtīs ad prīncipia cucurrērunt.



Brūtus, **mīlitibus convocātīs**, ōrātiōnem habuit.



ōrātiōne cōnfectā Brūtus mīlitēs dīmīsit.

Notice the phrases in bold print; participial phrases independent of the structure of the rest of the sentence go into the ablative case.

Vocabulary 37

verbs		*nouns*	
cōgitō, cōgitāre	I think, reflect	**clādēs, clādis, f.**	disaster
praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitum	I offer, provide	**cornū, -ūs, n.**	horn; wing of an army
mē praebeō	I show myself		
proelium committō	I join battle	*adjective*	
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum	I kill	**plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque**	several

Philippī

aliquamdiū Brūtus cum exercitū in Asiā manēbat dum mīlitēs sē exercēbant et ad bellum sē parābant. Quīntus plērīsque proeliīs aderat quae in Asiā gessērunt. fortem sē praebuit et strēnuum. in proeliō quōdam lēgātum legiōnis servāvit, quī summum in perīculum vēnerat.

strēnuum energetic

paucīs post diēbus, labōribus cōnfectīs, in contuberniō quiēscēbat cum optiō intrāvit eīque imperāvit ut ad praetōrium venīret. cum praetōrium animō trepidō intrāvisset, Brūtus surrēxit eumque cōmiter salūtāvit. 'salvē, Horātī,' inquit; 'optimam fāmam dē tē audīvī; nōn modo fortiter pugnāvistī sed lēgātum legiōnis ipsum ē perīculō servāvistī. cōnstituī igitur tē tribūnum mīlitum facere.' hīs dictīs, Quīntum dīmīsit.

contuberniō his tent
optiō an orderly
praetōrium the general's headquarters
trepidō anxious

An army on the march

postrīdiē Brūtus, omnibus cōpiīs convocātīs, ōrātiōnem habuit. in tribūnal ascendit mīlitēsque salūtāvit. 'commīlitiōnēs,' inquit, 'Antōnius Octāviānusque, hērēdēs tyrannī, exercitū maximō collēctō, nōs oppugnāre parant. iam iter ad Graeciam iniērunt. necesse est nōbīs in Graeciam contendere ut eīs occurrāmus. itaque vōs parāte ad iter longum et labōriōsum. hoc tamen meminerīmus: cum victōriam reportāverimus, lībertāte populō Rōmānō restitūtā, bella cīvīlia cōnfecta erunt.'

mīlitēs Brūtō plausērunt et laetī ad iter sē parāvērunt. paucīs post diēbus Brūtus omnibus cum cōpiīs ad Graeciam profectus est. in itinere Cassius eī obviam iit cum duodecim legiōnibus. sīc Brūtus Cassiusque duōbus exercitibus coniūnctis ex Asiā in Graeciam contendērunt.

Antōniō Octāviānōque prope Philippōs occurrērunt. proeliō commissō, in dextrō cornū Brūtus Octāviānum vīcit. in sinistrō Cassius victus est ab Antōniō tantāque clādē acceptā dēspērāvit et sē interfēcit. Mars anceps fuerat; plūrimī in campō occīsī erant, inter quōs lēgātus ipse decimae legiōnis mortuus erat fortissimē pugnāns.

tribūnal	platform
commīlitiōnēs	fellow soldiers
hērēdēs	heirs
meminerīmus	let us remember
reportāverimus	we have won
restitūtā	restored
plausērunt	(+ dat.) applauded
obviam iit	(+ dat.) came to meet
duodecim	twelve
Mars anceps fuerat	the battle had been indecisive

Respondē Latīnē

1 cum Quīntus ad praetōrium arcessītus esset, quid eī dīxit Brūtus?

2 cūr necesse erat in Graeciam contendere?

3 proeliō commissō, quid ēgit Brūtus? quid ēgit Cassius?

4 quōmodo sē gessit lēgātus decimae legiōnis?

A Roman general addressing his troops

Brūtus vincitur

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage and answer the questions on the rest

tribus post diēbus Quīntus ad praetōrium vocātus est. Brūtus trīstior vīsus est quam anteā sed Quīntum cōmiter salūtāvit. 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'tribūnus mīlitum factus tē optimē gessistī atque in illō proeliō exitiālī summam praebuistī virtūtem. lēgātō igitur decimae legiōnis mortuō, tē ipsum legiōnī praeficiō. mox proelium iterum committēmus. deōs ōrō ut rem melius gerāmus et hostibus victīs lībertātem populō Rōmānō restituāmus.'

Quīntus ē praetōriō ēgressus nōn rēctā ad Pompēium rediit sed dē Brūtī verbīs sōlus diū cōgitābat. fīdūciā Brūtī ēlātus est sed magnitūdine tantī officiī sollicitātus.

exitiālī	deadly
restituāmus	we may restore
rēctā	straight
fīdūciā	confidence, trust
ēlātus est	he was excited
sollicitātus	worried

Philippi

haud multō post Brūtus proelium committere coāctus est. prīmum cōpiae eius hostēs summā vī oppugnātōs vīcērunt; Quīntus legiōnem decimam fortissimē dūxit. sed mox Antōnius eōs repulit et cornū sinistrō Brūtī perruptō tōtum exercitum circumdedit. illī territī tergum vertērunt armīsque abiectīs ad castra sua fugiēbant.

perruptō	broken through
circumdedit	surrounded

1 How did Quintus feel when he was put in command of the legion? [4]

2 When the second battle was joined how did Brutus' forces fare at first? [3]

3 How did Antony turn the tables on them? [3]

4 What did Brutus' men do? [3]

5 What do you learn from this and earlier chapters about the character of Brutus? [4]

BRUTUS AND CASSIUS

Why had Brutus, Cassius and the other conspirators killed Julius Caesar? It was easy for them to say that they had done it to give Rome back the freedom it had lost through the dictatorship of one man. The proud descendant of the Brutus who had driven out the last king of Rome soon issued coins which linked the daggers of the Ides of March with the idea of republican *lībertās*. But, as we have seen, the Roman mob, stirred up by Mark Antony, did not view the assassination in this way. Brutus and Cassius were forced to flee from the city less than a month after they had killed the dictator.

In fact, when the murderers of Caesar talked of freedom, they meant that they wanted to return power to the small number of families who dominated the state. Put like this, their cause does not appear so noble. In any case, the senate had shown that it was incapable of running the Roman state. Sooner or later one powerful man was going to take over. All the conspirators had achieved was to delay this.

History has not passed a generous verdict on Cassius. In *Julius Caesar*, Shakespeare presents him as a near villain with 'a lean and hungry look', drawing a hesitant Brutus into the plot against Caesar. But Cassius, in whose character Shakespeare found generosity and warmth as well as villainy, was certainly sincere in his hatred of tyranny, and he was a resolute and experienced soldier as well. Brutus, his brother-in-law, would have done better if he had taken more of Cassius' advice.

Brutus, however, is the more obviously admirable character. He was a thinker rather than a man of action, and we have seen how he took a deep interest in philosophy when he was in Athens in 44 BC. He discussed philosophical matters with Theomnestus and Cratippus so eagerly that it seemed, even at this critical stage, that he was only interested in study. Yet he showed during this time in Athens that he could fire the young with enthusiasm for his political cause. He was especially pleased by young Marcus Cicero whom he praised highly.

Brutus was a man who always thought he was in the right. But he was undoubtedly sincere. He wrote a book about *virtūs*, which means not just courage but all the qualities which make a good man. He possessed many of these himself, and he died for what he believed.

Shakespeare puts into the mouth of Mark Antony a fine tribute to his enemy Brutus:

This was the noblest Roman of them all:
All the conspirators save only he
Did that they did in envy of great Caesar;
He only, in a general honest thought
And common good to all, made one of them.
His life was gentle, and the elements
So mix'd in him that Nature might stand up
And say to all the world 'This was a man!'

When Julius Caesar saw Brutus, his trusted friend, attacking him amongst the conspirators, he said, 'You too, Brutus?'

How do you think Brutus felt at this moment?

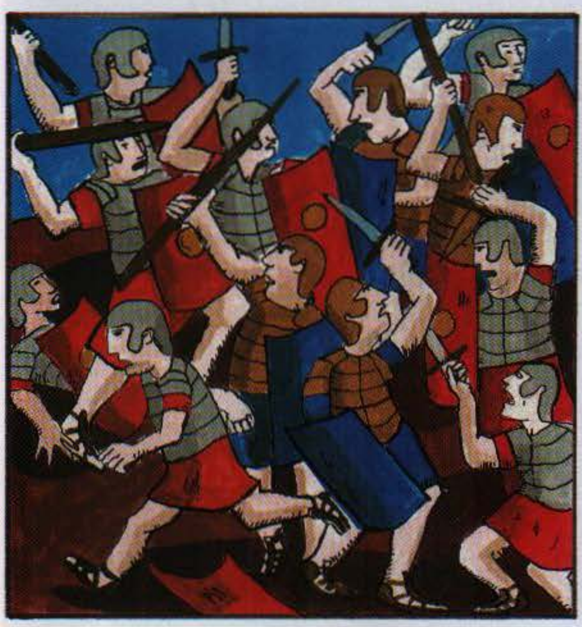
CAESAR
DICT
PERPETVO

Julius Caesar

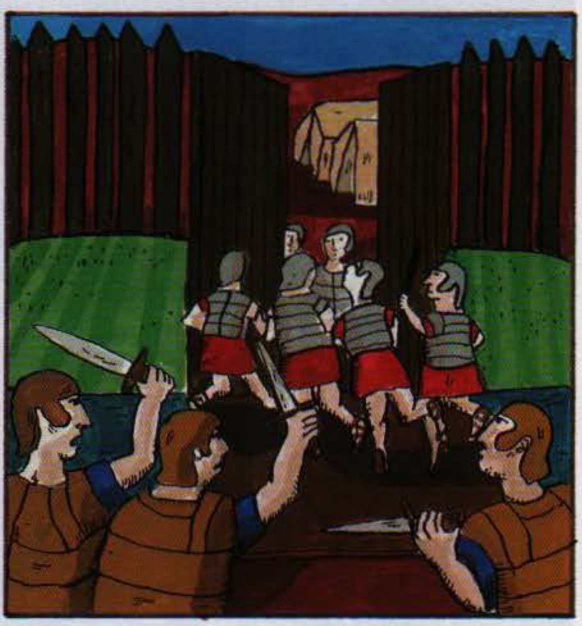
Cassius

Brutus

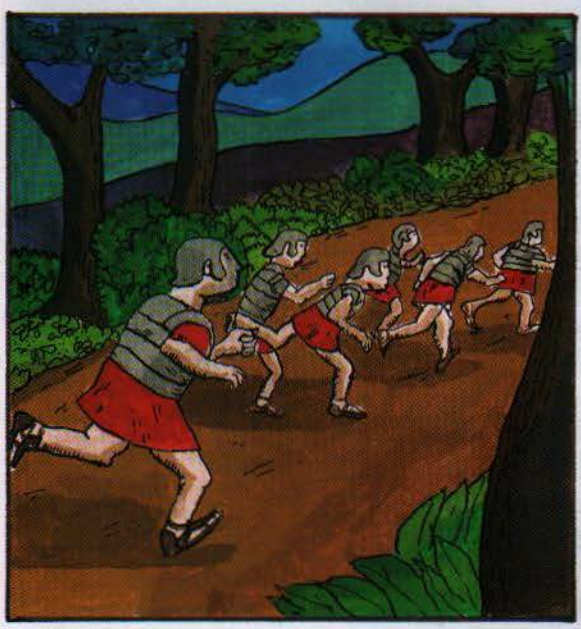
Chapter 38 Quintus Athenas fugit



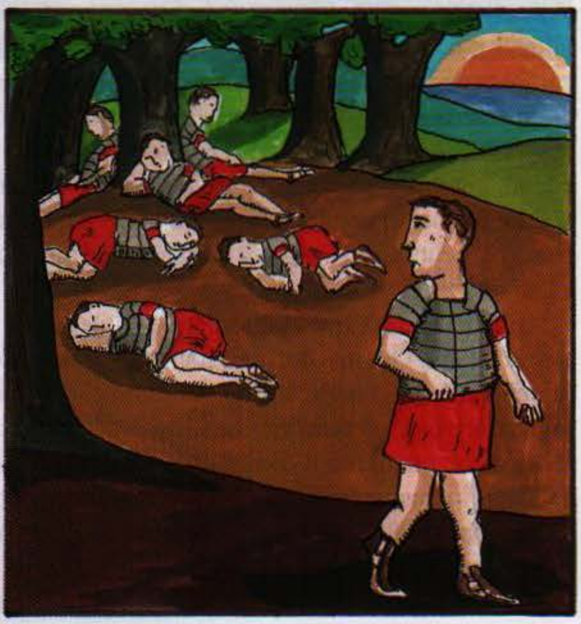
Quīntus scūtō abiectō ē proeliō ad castra fūgit.



hostēs sequentēs in castra irruptūrī erant.



Quīntus comitēs secūtus in silvās cucurrit.



posterō diē Athēnās profectūrus comitēs dormientēs trīstis īnspexit.

The captions introduce the future participle: **irruptūrī** = about to break into; **profectūrus** = about to set out.

Vocabulary 38

verbs	
cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum	I lie down
agnōscō, agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitum	I recognize
prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditum	I betray
abiciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectum	I throw away
complector, complectī, complexus sum	I embrace
intueor, intuerī, intuitus sum	I gaze at

nouns	
futūra, -ōrum, n. pl.	the future
vāllum, -ī, n.	rampart
difficultās, difficultātis, f.	difficulty
rūs, rūris, n.	the country
rūre	in the country

adjectives	
dīrus, -a, -um	terrible, dire
rūsticus, -a, -um	rustic, of the country; a countryman
memor, memoris + gen.	remembering, mindful of
immemor, immemoris + gen.	forgetful of

adverbs	
aliquandō	sometimes
noctū	by night
paulum	a little
quam prīmum	as soon as possible

Quīntus Athēnās fugit

Quīntus, cum Antōnius Brūtī cornū sinistrum perrūpisset, scūtō abiectō, ā campō fūgit. ē comitibus paucī hostibus adhūc resistēbant; plūrēs cum Quīntō ad castra fugiēbant, virtūtis immemorēs. nihil cūrābant nisi ut quam prīmum ad castra pervenīrent.

perrūpisset had broken through

in castrīs dīram fāmam audīvērunt. Brūtus enim dē futūrīs dēspērāns in gladium suum incurrerat; mortuus erat. Quīntus, hōc audītō, penitus commōtus est. sed nōn tempus erat morārī. hostēs vāllum ascēnsūrī erant; Quīntus clāmōrēs eōrum audīre iam potuit. comitēs secūtus, quī ex alterā parte castrōrum effugiēbant, in silvās cucurrit.

penitus deeply

Quīntus comitēsque cubuērunt, in silvīs cēlātī, diemque trīstēs exspectābant. Quīntus dormīre nōn poterat; sē suōsque vehementer reprehendit, quod imperātōrem prōdidissent tergumque vertissent. imperātōre mortuō quid iam factūrus erat? caput saltem servāverat; fēlīcior erat quam multī comitum, quī aut in campō mortuī iacēbant aut captī in manūs hostium vēnerant. iam nihil cupiēbat nisi domum redīre et parentēs iterum vidēre; cōnstituit igitur Athēnās sōlus contendere.

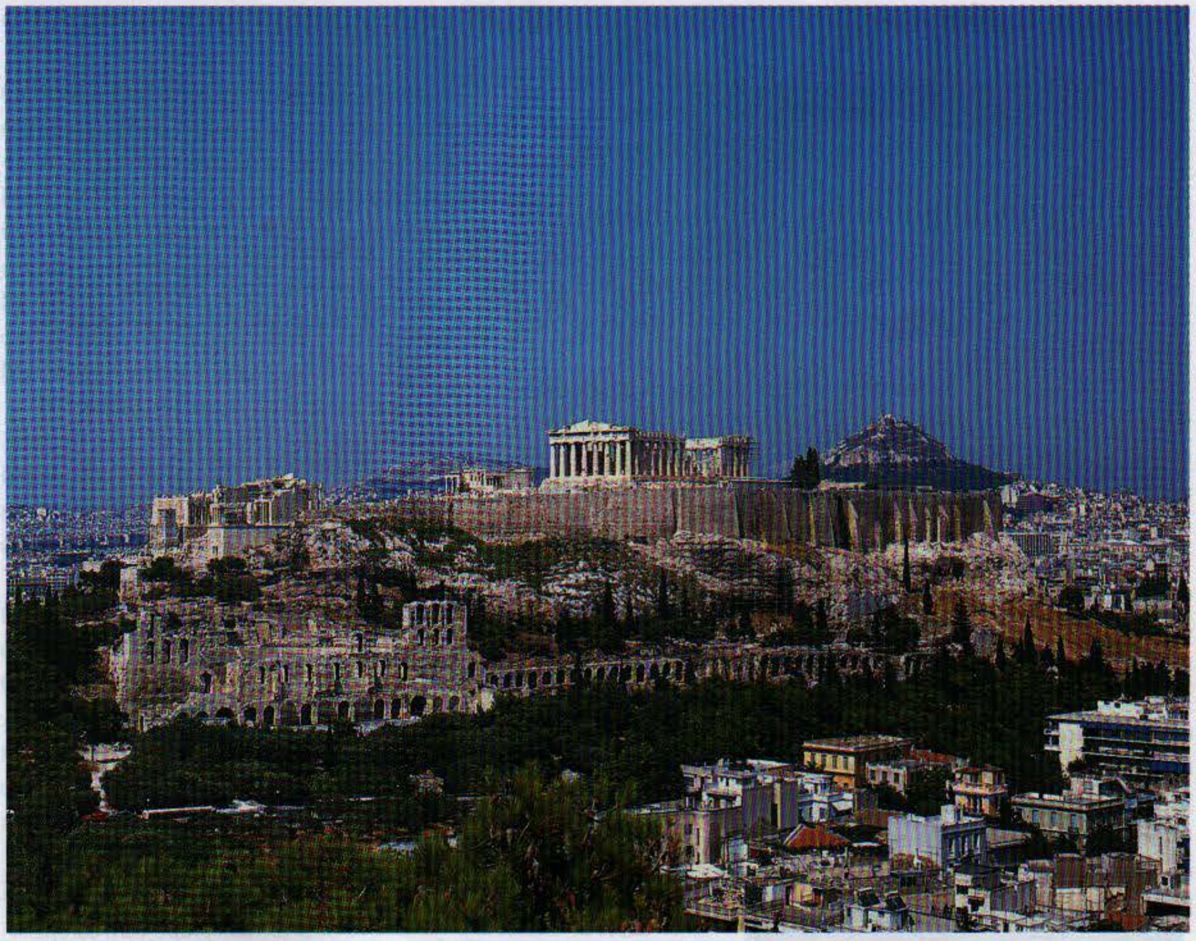
reprehendit blamed

caput saltem his life at least

sōle oriente surrēxit, Athēnās profectūrus; comitēs aspexit adhūc dormientēs. paulum dubitāvit, deinde sōlus profectus est. vīgintī diēs iter labōriōsum faciēbat; interdiū dormiēbat in silvīs cēlātus, nē ab hostibus caperētur. noctū prōcēdēbat per viās dēsertās. aliquandō rūsticīs occurrēbat, quī plērumque eum cōmiter accipiēbant cibumque dedērunt.

interdiū in the day time

plērumque usually



tandem Athenas procul conspexit

tandem Athēnās procul cōnspexit. sōle occidente urbem ingressus, ad aedēs Theomnēstī festīnāvit iānuamque pulsāvit. Theomnēstus iānuā apertā Quīntum vix agnōvit sed vultū eius propius aspectō 'dī immortālēs,' inquit, 'num Quīntum videō? quid passus es? intrā celeriter.' Quīntus ingressus omnia eī nārrāvit. ille 'Quīnte, iēiūnus es. prīmum cēnā, deinde ī cubitum. crās cōgitēmus quid facere dēbeās.'

iēiūnus starving; **ī cubitum** go to bed

Quīntus diū dormiēbat. merīdiē Theomnēstus eum excitāvit et 'age, Quīnte,' inquit, 'nōn potes in urbe manēre nē Antōniī mīlitēs tē capiant. quid factūrus es?' Quīntus nihil cupiēbat nisi domum redīre. ad portum igitur profectī sunt ut nāvem quaererent quae ad Italiam discessūra erat.

Respondē Latīnē

1. cum Antōnius Brūtī cornū sinistrum perrūpisset, quid fēcit Quīntus?
2. cum ad castra advēnisset, quid cognōvit Quīntus?
3. in silvīs cēlātus, cūr Quīntus dormīre nōn poterat?
4. quid facere cōnstituit?
5. cūr nōn poterat Athēnīs manēre?

Quīntus in Italiam redit

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage. Read the remainder in Latin several times until you understand it, then summarize what it says in your own words in English

cum Quīntus nāvem cōnscēnsūrus esset, Theomnēstus eum complexus saccum argentī trādidit. 'hoc argentum accipe,' inquit; 'ōlim mihi rependere poteris. iam valē et tē cūrā. dī tē servent.' Quīntus grātiās eī āctūrus erat, sed ille haec locūtus sē verterat et ad urbem festīnābat.

saccum	a bag
ōlim	some time;
rependere	repay
dī tē servent	may the gods preserve you

nautae, iam nāvem solūtūrī, magistrī signum exspectābant, quī Quīntō imperāvit ut festīnāret. ille nāvem vix cōnscenderat cum nautae fūnibus solūtīs in apertum mare rēmigāvērunt. mox vēlīs sublātīs nāvis celeriter prōcēdēbat. itinere sine cāsū cōnfectō, quārtō diē Brundisium advēnērunt.

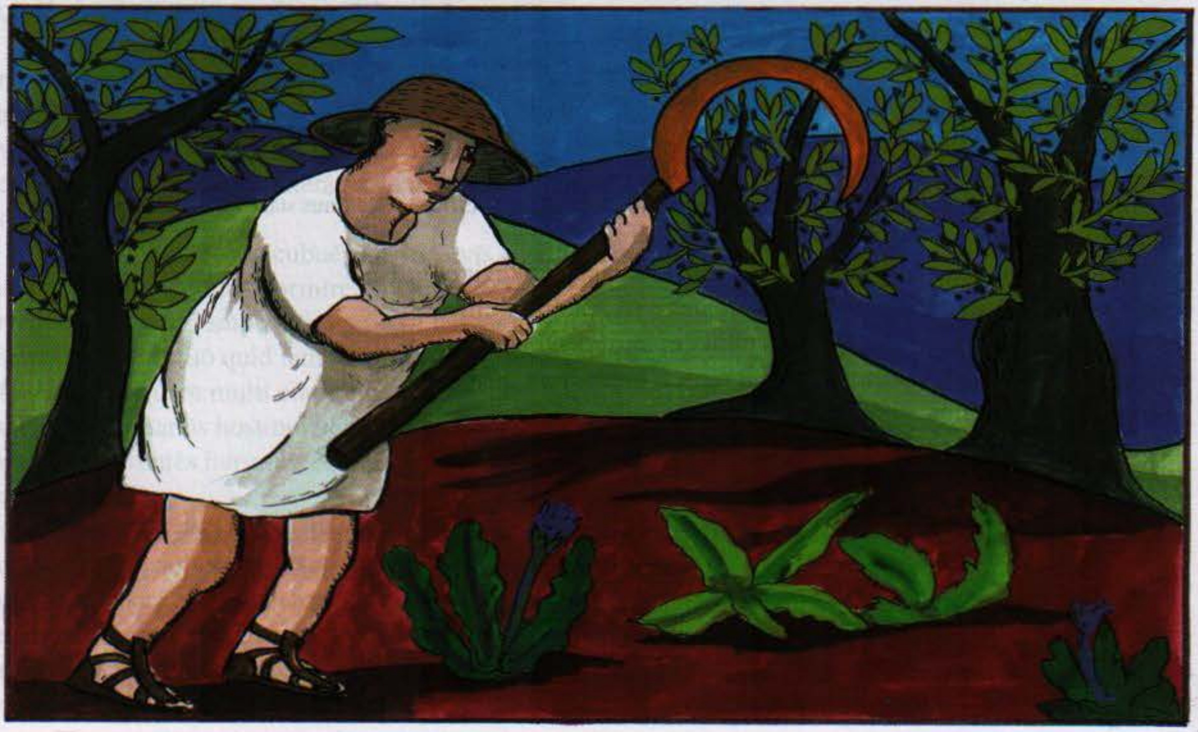
fūnibus	the ropes
rēmigāvērunt	rowed
vēlīs	(n. pl.) sails

Quīntus statim profectus est ut domum quam prīmum advenīret. cum Venusiam accēderet, in summō colle cōnstitit colōniamque dēspexit. summō gaudiō deīs grātiās ēgit quod domum dīlectam tandem vidēret.

dīlectam	beloved

ad colōniam dēscensūrus erat cum colōnum senem prope viam cōnspexit quī agrum labōriōsē colēbat. Quīntus eum agnōvit; Ganymēdēs erat, vetus amīcus patris. accessit eumque salūtāvit. ille vultum eius diū intuitus tandem 'dī immortālēs,' inquit, 'num Quīntum videō? cūr hūc revēnistī? num colōniam intrātūrus es?' Quīntus 'revēnī,' inquit 'ut domum parentēsque revīsam. cūr mē hoc rogās? quid accidit?'

colonum senem prope viam conspexit



OCTAVIAN RETURNS TO ITALY

Octavian

Octavian had shot to fame like a meteor. He was only eighteen when Julius Caesar was murdered in March 44 BC. The moment he received the news, he hurried back to Italy from abroad and found on landing that Caesar had adopted him in his will and left him three quarters of his estate. He very skilfully used the fact that he was Caesar's heir to strengthen his position. He now called himself Caius Julius Caesar Octavianus. 'Look at his name,' wrote Cicero, adding, 'then look at his age.'

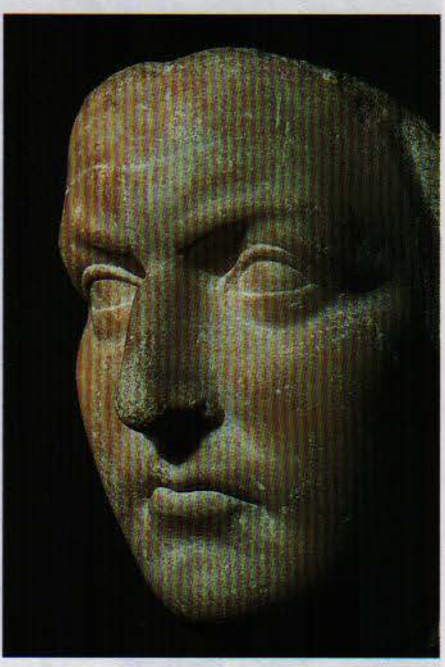
His relationship with Caesar's great friend Mark Antony was very tense. Antony thought that he could brush the young man aside, but soon found that this was not possible. At one stage he said resentfully, 'You, boy, owe everything to your name.'

Cicero persuaded the senate that Antony was aiming to become dictator and that they should use Octavian to deal with this threat and then cast him aside. Indeed, Octavian and the two consuls fought two battles with Antony south of the Alps and defeated him. But when the senate then tried to marginalize Octavian, he demanded the consulship and marched on Rome. He was nineteen by now and the minimum legal age was forty-three, but the senate had to give in.

However, it was Antony who, in 42 BC, won the Battle of Philippi and avenged Caesar's death. Octavian had been ill. He said that he had been warned by a friend's dream, and was carried out of his camp only a short time before the enemy overran it. He may have taken refuge unheroically in a marsh.

So Antony had the glory of the great victory and went off to the East to re-establish order and to raise money. Octavian took on the unpopular task of returning to Italy to find land on which to settle the 100,000 veterans of the Philippi campaign.

He caused bitter anger. Large areas were confiscated from eighteen Italian cities to provide homes for the veterans. There were noisy demonstrations against this. Land-owners whose property he had seized flocked to Rome to plead their cause and gained the support of the plebs. Riots broke out and Octavian's life was in danger. Chaos spread throughout Italy. Fights flared up between soldiers and civilians who had resorted to arms themselves. It was a frightening time. Countless smallholders (Quintus' father among them) were forced off their land, and not many were as fortunate as Quintus' fellow-poet Virgil, who may well have got his estate back. Italy became a hungry and desperate country.

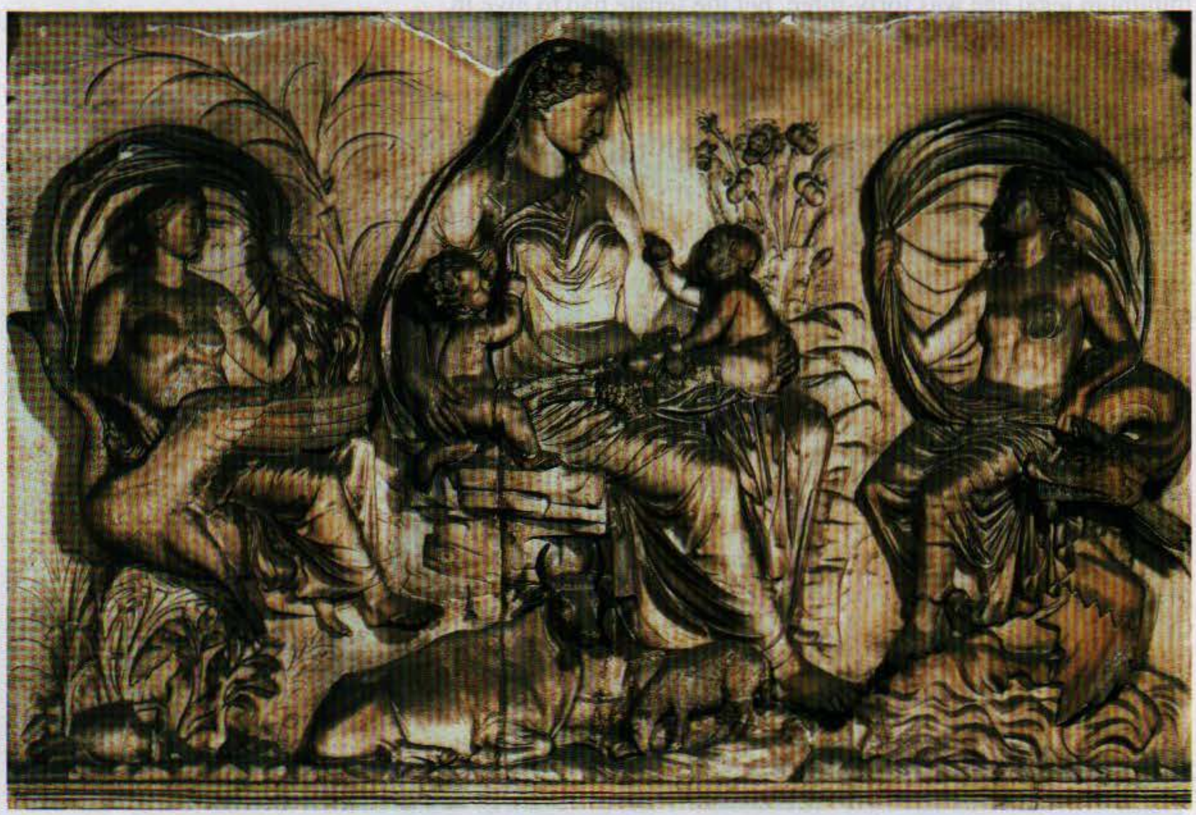

Mark Antony

The difficult relationship between Octavian and Antony was now put under new pressure. Antony's wife Fulvia and his brother Lucius raised eight legions and occupied Rome in protest at what Octavian was doing. Octavian soon drove them out and eventually forced them into submission. But then (in 40 BC) Antony himself, returning to Italy from the East, found the port of Brundisium closed against him and laid siege to the city. Octavian marched south with his legions and it looked as if civil war was about to break out yet again. But the soldiers on neither side had the appetite for still more fighting.

A summit conference between Octavian and Antony was arranged, and here they settled their differences. Antony's first wife had recently died and he now married Octavian's sister Octavia. War had been avoided. It looked to some as if a new Golden Age was dawning. Virgil wrote ecstatically:

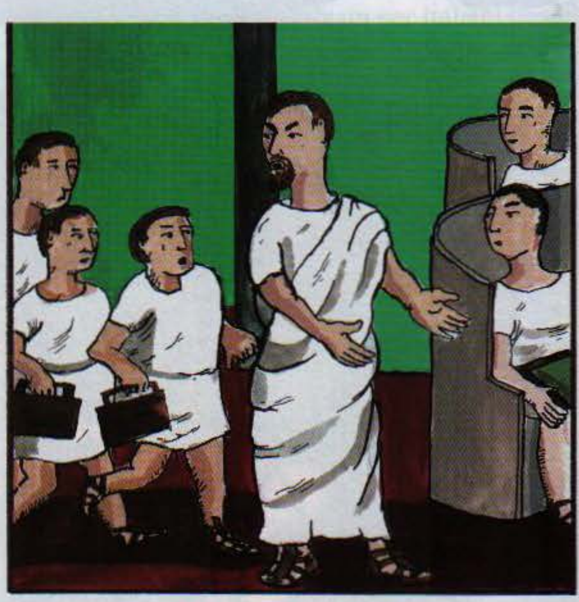
Ours is the crowning era foretold in prophecy:
Born of Time, a great new cycle of centuries
Begins. Justice returns to earth, the Golden Age
Returns, and its first-born comes down from heaven above.

Do you feel more sympathy with Antony or with Octavian?

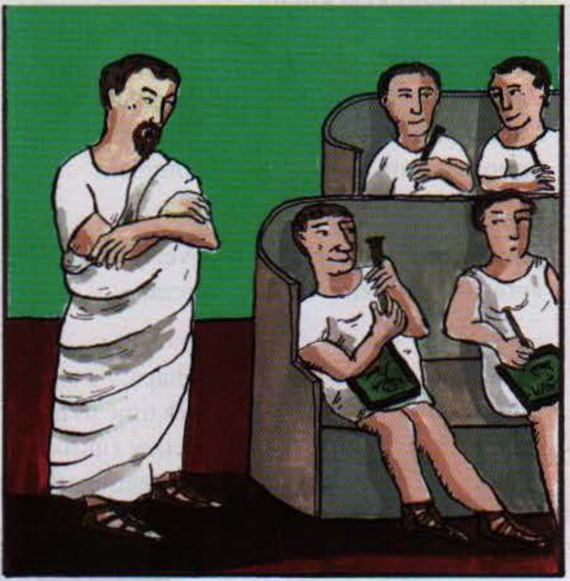


The Golden Age – Mother Earth sits among images of fertility

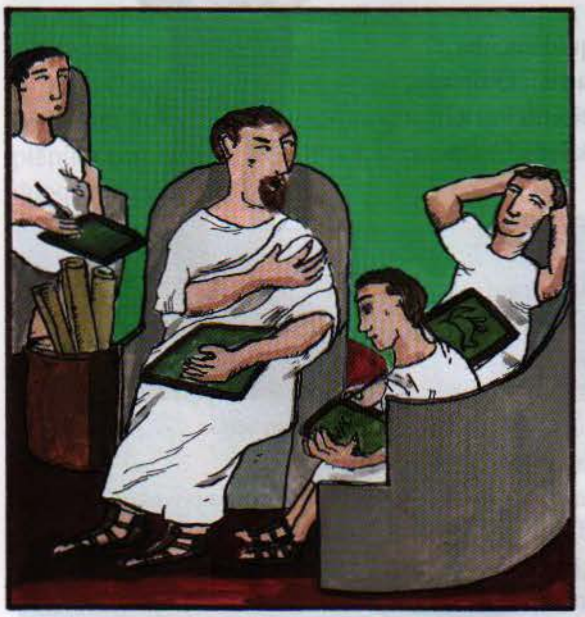
Chapter 39 Quintus Venusiam revisit



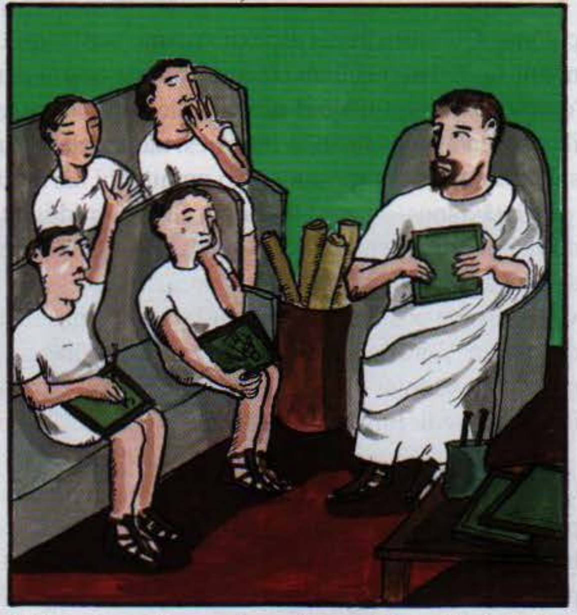
magister 'cūr sērō advēnistis, puerī?' inquit. (magister puerōs rogāvit cūr sērō advēnissent.)



magister 'quid facis, Decime?' inquit; 'cūr nōn labōrās?' (magister Decimum rogāvit quid faceret et cūr nōn labōrāret.)



magister 'quid facis, Sexte?' inquit; 'cūr nōn litterās scrībis?' (magister Sextum rogat quid faciat et cūr litterās nōn scrībat.)

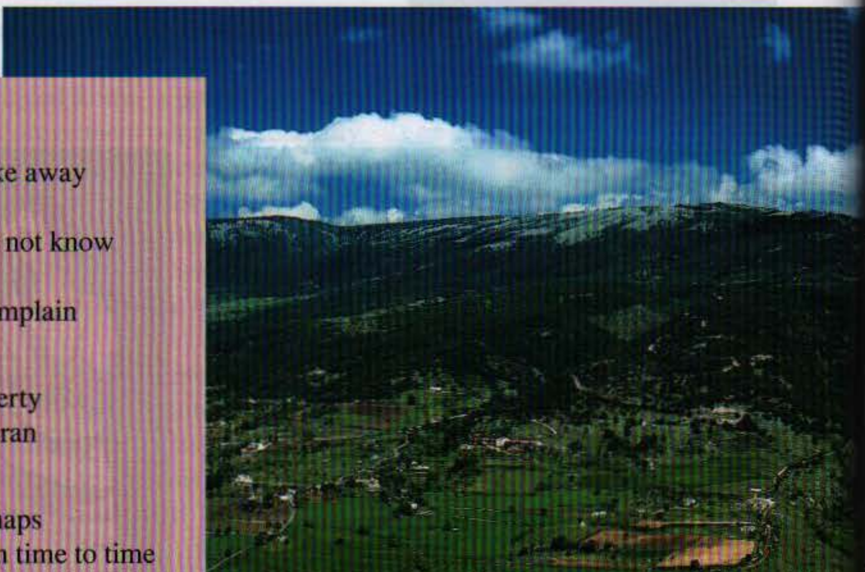


Gāius 'quandō, magister,' inquit, 'nōs dīmittēs?' (Gāius magistrum rogāvit quandō sē dīmissūrus esset.)

In the cartoon captions, first the master's words are quoted as he actually spoke – *direct questions*; then (in parentheses) his words are reported – *indirect questions*. You will see that in indirect questions Latin (unlike English) uses the subjunctive.

Vocabulary 39

verbs	
adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptum	I take away
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum	I do not know
queror, querī, questus sum	I complain
nouns	
paupertās, paupertātis, f.	poverty
veterānus, -ī, m.	veteran
adverb	
forsitan (+ subjunctive)	perhaps
interdum	from time to time
num	whether (introducing indirect questions)


A southern Italian landscape

Quīntus Venusiam revīsit

colōnus Quīntum trīstis aspexit. 'nōnne scīs' inquit 'quid acciderit? nōnne audīvistī quantam clādem colōnia nostra passa sit?' Quīntus 'quid dīcis?' inquit; 'quid accidit? dīc mihi ubi parentēs meī sint.' ille 'parentēs tuōs hīc nōn inveniēs. namque abiērunt. age, Quīnte, sub arbore sedē et mē audī. ego omnia tibi nārrābō.

'Octāviānus, cum ad Italiam ā Graeciā rediisset, legiōnēs dīmisit; necesse erat agrōs mīlitibus veterānīs dare. cōnstituit igitur agrōs adimere eīs cīvitātibus quae suās partēs nōn adiūverant veterānīsque eōs dīvidere. nōs nihil sciēbāmus dē hīs rēbus dōnec decemvirī Venusiam advēnērunt ut agrōs nōbīs adimerent. cīvēs nostrī vehementer querēbantur; decemvirōs ē colōniā expulimus. illī tamen rediērunt cum mīlitibus, quibus resistere nōn poterāmus.

plūrimī cīvēs agrōs perdidērunt, inter quōs erat pater tuus, Quīnte. aliī hīc mānsērunt, agrīs prīvātī, vītam miseram in paupertāte agentēs, sīcut ego, quī nōn dīves eram sed satis habēbam; nunc nihil possideō nisi hunc agellum, saxīs carduīsque plēnum. aliī abiērunt ut meliōrem vītam alibī quaererent, sīcut pater tuus. trīstia tibi nārrō sed vēra. tōta Italia ēversa est; nec iūs nec lēgēs valent. squālent arva, abductīs colōnīs. veterānī nōlunt agrōs colere sed dīvitiās ōtiōsī dissipant.'

Quīntus, angōre commōtus, senem interpellāvit; 'dīc mihi' inquit 'ubi parentēs inventūrus sim. scīsne quō abierint?' senex 'numquam parentēs tuōs inveniēs, Quīnte. tōta Italia plēna est cīvibus egēnīs hūc illūc errantibus.'

A Roman farmer

prīvātī (+ abl.) deprived of
possideō I possess
agellum little field; **carduīs** thistles
alibī elsewhere

arva the fields; **squālent** are filthy
dissipant squander
angōre by anguish
interpellāvit interrupted

egēnīs needy

hīs audītīs Quīntus summā dēspērātiōne affectus est. diū in terrā sedēbat, lacrimīs per genās cadentibus. tandem senem valēre iussit, quī eum rogāvit quō itūrus esset. ille 'nesciō quo itūrus sim,' inquit; 'hoc sōlum sciō, parentēs tōtam per Italiam quaeram.'

genās cheeks

surrēxit collemque dēscendit. sed cum ad portās colōniae advēnisset, cōnstitit. nōluit colōniam intrāre domumque vidēre ab advenīs occupātam. sē vertit et viam iniit quae Rōmam ferēbat.

advenīs strangers

Respondē Latīnē

1. cūr parentēs Quīntī Venusiā abiērunt?
2. quālem vītam agēbat senex?
3. cum Quīntus senem audīvisset, quid facere cōnstituit?
4. cūr nōluit Quīntus colōniam intrāre?

Quīntus parentēs suōs quaerit

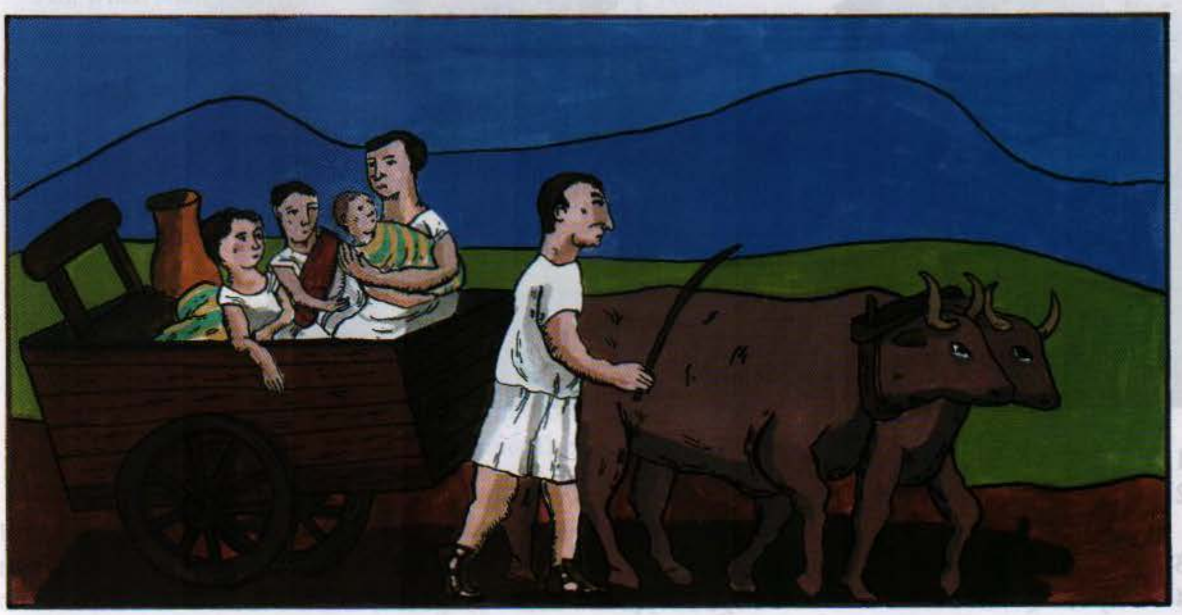
Translate the first two paragraphs of the following passage and answer the questions on the rest

Quīntus iter, quod decem abhinc annōs cum patre tam celeriter fēcerat, iam lentissimē faciēbat. in omnibus vīcīs diū manēbat ut parentēs quaereret. interdum Venusīnīs in viā occurrit quōs ānxiē rogābat num parentēs suōs vīdissent, sed nēmō eī dīcere poterat ubi eōs inventūrus esset.

decem abhinc annōs ten years ago
vīcīs villages
Venusīnīs people of Venusia

cum Capuam accēderet, veterī amīcō occurrit; Gāius, quōcum ad lūdum Flāviī ībat, plaustrum dūcēbat quod trahēbant duo bovēs; plēnum erat bonīs omnis modī, super quae sedēbant Gāiī uxor duoque parvī puerī.

plaustrum a wagon; **bovēs** oxen
omnis modī of every kind



Gaius plaustrum ducebat quod trahebant duo boves

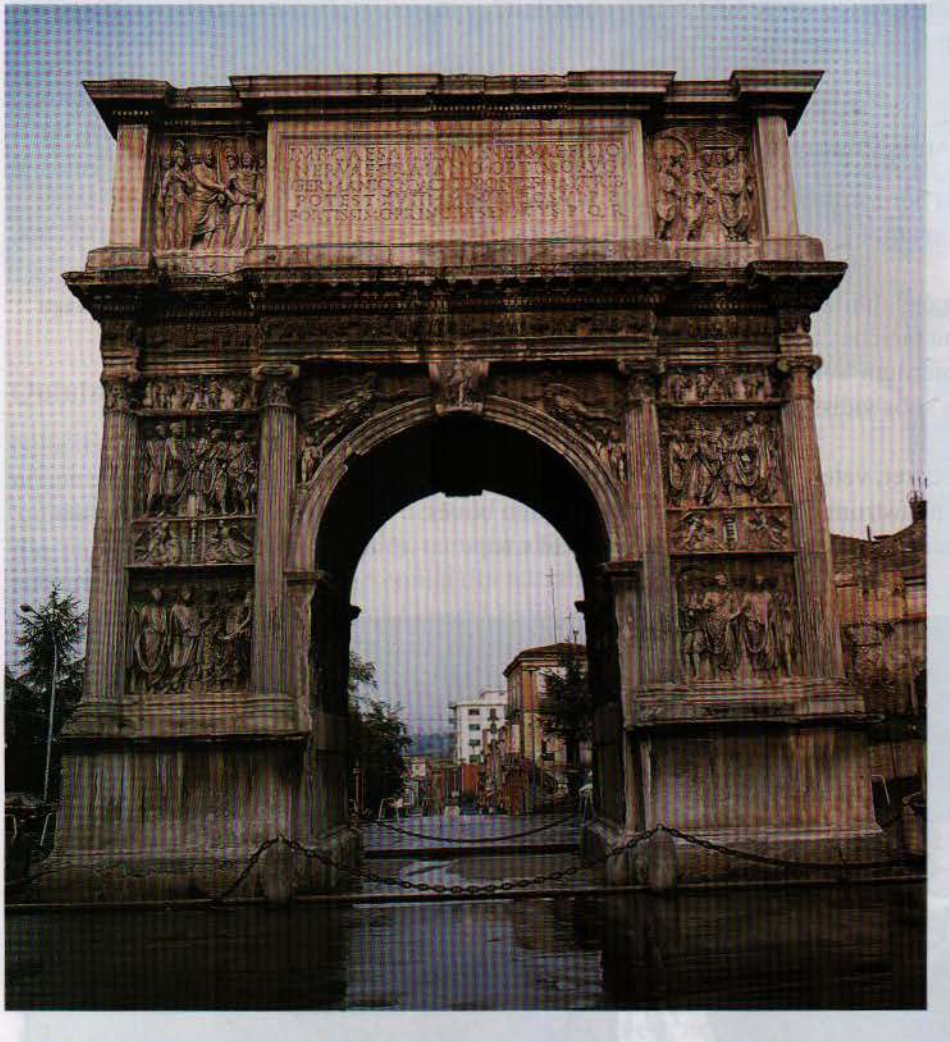
Quīntus accurrit Gāiumque salūtāvit. ille, Quīntum intuitus, 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'vix tē agnōvī; nam tē nōn vīdī ex quō Rōmam cum patre profectus es. quid agis? cūr Capuam contendis?' Quīntus omnia eī exposuit Gāiumque rogāvit num parentēs suōs vīdisset. ille respondit, 'nesciō ubi parentēs tuī iam sint. cum decemvirī nōs ex agrīs expulissent, Flaccus Scintillaque nōbīscum Venusiā profectī sunt. sed cum Beneventum advēnissēmus, nōs paulum ibi morātī sumus, illī Capuam prōcessērunt. itaque sī Capuam festīnāveris, forsitan eōs ibi inveniās.'

Quīntus grātiās eī dedit. 'tū prīmus' inquit 'aliquid speī mihi praebuistī. vōs Capuam comitābor ut parentēs meōs ibi quaeram.

ex quō since (of time)

aliquid speī some(thing of) hope

comitābor I shall accompany



The triumphal arch at Beneventum

1 When did Gaius last see Quintus? [2]

2 What had Quintus' parents done, when they were driven from their farm? [2]

3 How did Gaius lose touch with them? [2]

4 Why did Quintus thank Gaius? What did he plan to do next? [2 + 2]

THE CONFISCATIONS

In these last two chapters Quintus and his family have become the victims of the confiscations which tore the fabric of Italian country life apart. These were begun by the triumvirs after the battle of Philippi in 42 BC and continued right through the thirties into the twenties. Quintus' friend, the poet Virgil, may well have lost his family estate near Mantua. He certainly wrote two poems which convey the desolating sense of loss experienced by the dispossessed.

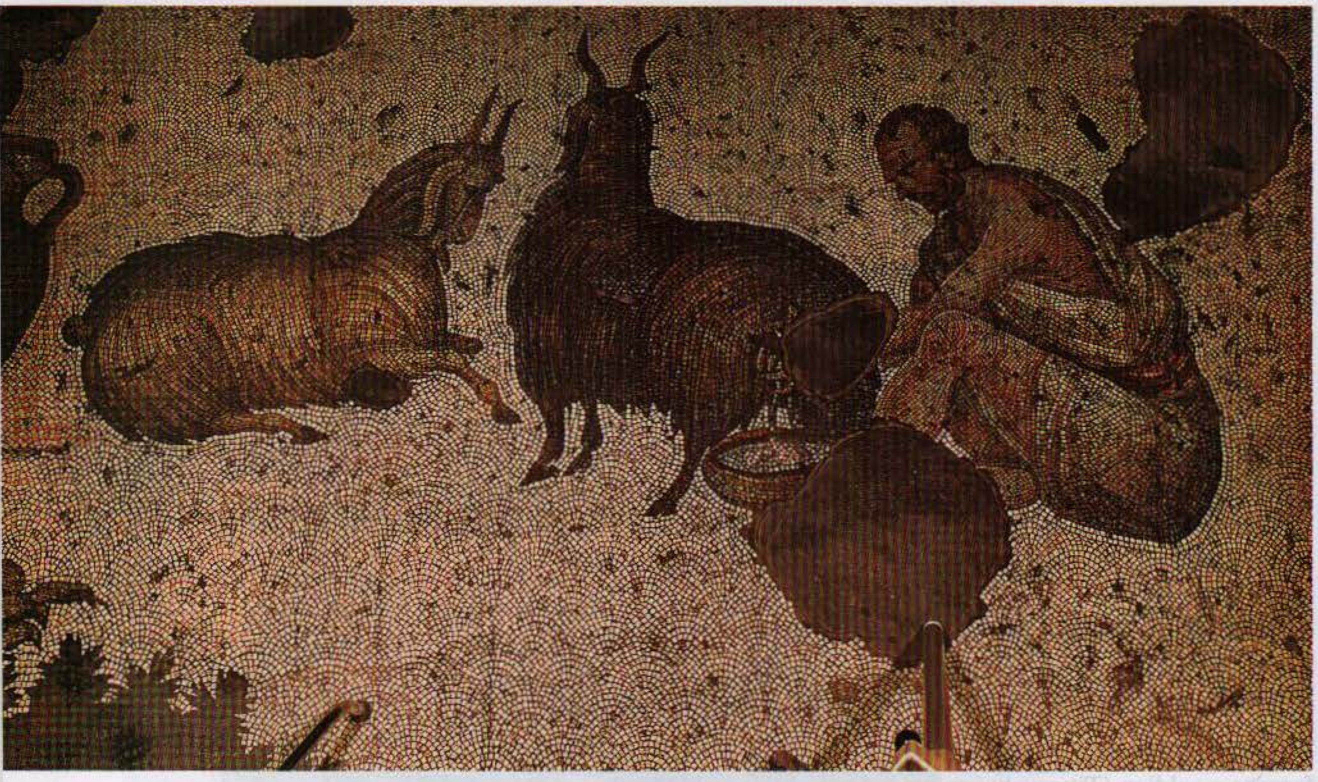
In one of them Moeris complains to his friend Lycidas that he is now having to work for the new possessor of the farm which he used to own:

> Oh, Lycidas, that I should have lived to see an outsider
> Take over my little farm – a thing I had never feared –
> And tell me, 'You're dispossessed, you old tenants, you've got to go.'
> We're down and out. And look how Chance turns the tables on us –
> These are *his* goats (rot them!) you see me taking to market.

In the other poem, Meliboeus laments to Tityrus his loss of his farm to a soldier. (Tityrus has managed to hold on to his land thanks to the intervention of a 'young god' in Rome, presumably Octavian.)

> But the rest of us must go from here and be dispersed –
> To Scythia, bone-dry Africa, the chalky spate of the Oxus,
> Even to Britain – that place cut off at the very world's end.
> Ah, when shall I see my native land again? after long years,
> Or never? – see the turf-dressed roof of my simple cottage,
> And wondering gaze at the ears of corn that were all my kingdom?
> To think of some godless soldier owning my well-farmed fallow,
> A foreigner reaping these crops! To such a pass has civil
> Dissension brought us: for people like these we have sown our fields.
> Move onward, little she-goats, onward, once-happy flock!
> No more shall I, stretched out in some green dingle here,
> Watch you poised far off on the bushy brows of a hillside.
> No more singing for me, no taking you to browse,
> My little goats, on bitter willow and clover flower.

The confiscations caused devastating unrest. As we saw in the last chapter, a protest backed by Antony's wife and brother led to their occupation of Rome. Octavian drove them out and besieged them in the hill-town of Perusia (Perugia), which was driven by starvation to surrender at the end of the winter of 41/40 BC.



A goatherd milking

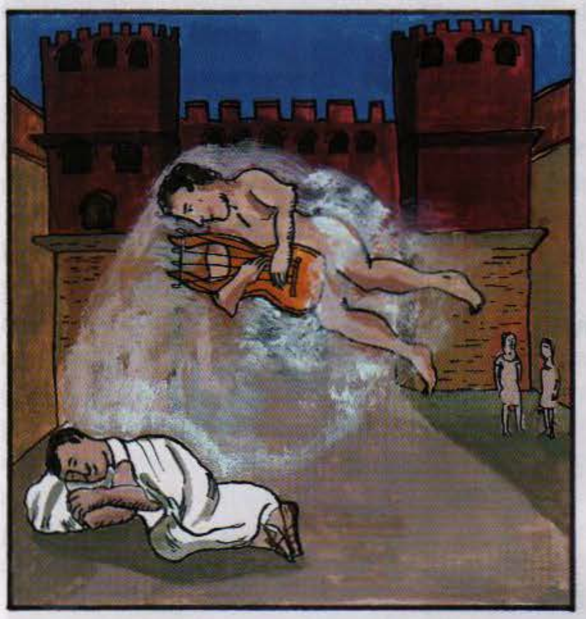
Octavian behaved with characteristic ruthlessness to its citizens.

However, when Octavian emerged ten years later as the sole ruler of Italy, which now included Cisalpine Gaul, he saw himself as its patron. He reduced brigandage and improved the roads. The alarming chaos of the civil wars was over, and Italy entered a period of safety and prosperity. All roads may still have led to Rome, but many of the city's leading figures in politics and the arts – the poets Virgil and Horace and the historian Livy among them – came from Italian towns.

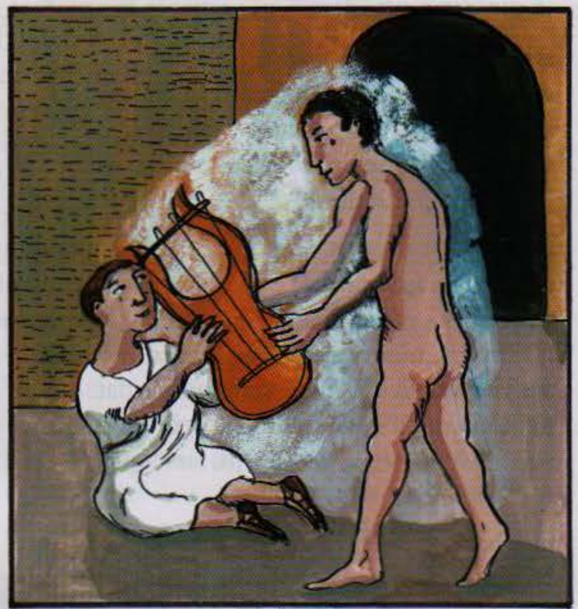
Think of a modern situation where considerable numbers of people have been dispossessed. Write ten lines describing the thoughts of one of them as they travel from their homes.

silent lēgēs inter arma *('the laws are silent amid weapons'), wrote Cicero. What do you think he meant?*

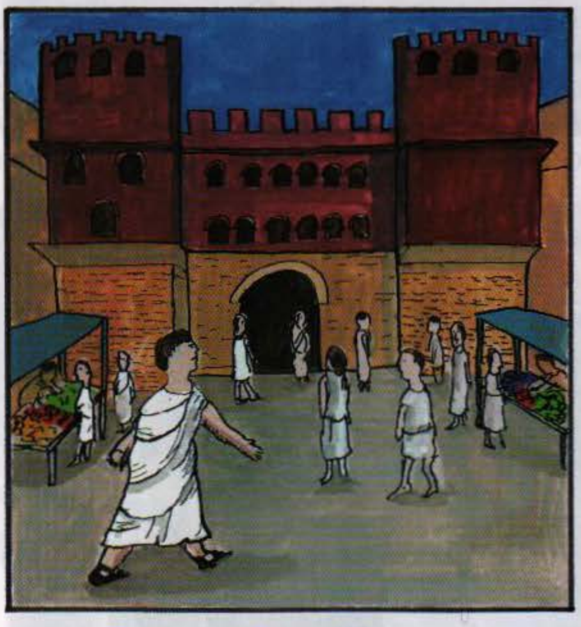
Chapter 40 Quintus amico veteri occurrit



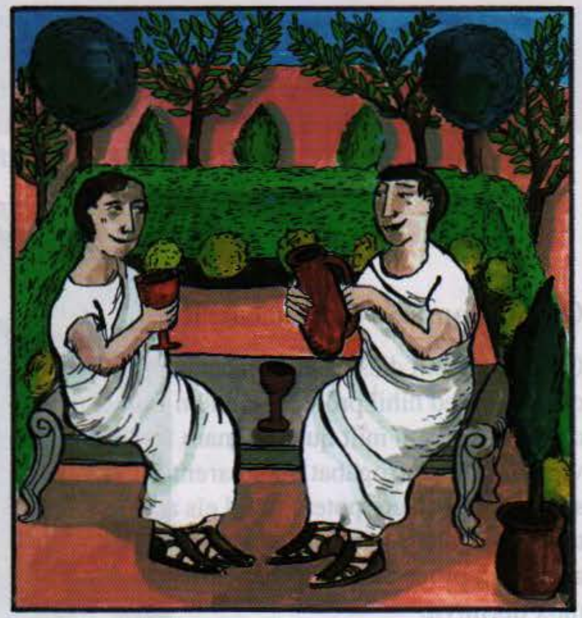
dum Quīntus dormit, deus Apollō vīsus est eī astāre.



Apollō 'nōlī timēre, Quīnte; ego tē cūrābō,' inquit, et haec locūtus lyram suam eī trādidit.



Apollinī cōnfīsus,* Quīntus Rōmam intrāre ausus* est.



Marcus Quīntusque in hortō sedēre solēbant* vīnum bibentēs.

*see vocabulary

Vocabulary 40

semi-deponent verbs

these verbs are active in form in the present, imperfect and future, but passive in form (but active in meaning, like deponent verbs) in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum	I dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	I rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum	I am accustomed to
cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum + dative	I trust in
fīō, fierī, factus sum	I become, am made

verbs

aestimō, aestimāre	I value
contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptum	I despise
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum + dat.	I pardon, forgive
serviō, servīre, serviī, servītum + dat.	I serve
prōficiō, prōficere, prōfēcī, prōfectum	I make progress, accomplish
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptum	I undertake
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum + abl.	I use

nouns

lyra, -ae, f.	lyre
aerārium, -ī, n.	the treasury
fātum, -ī, n.	fate, destiny
respōnsum, -ī, n.	reply, answer
somnium, -ī, n.	dream

adjectives

mīrus, -a, -um	wonderful
turpis, turpe	disgraceful, ugly

adverb

posthāc	after this, hereafter

pronoun

quis, quis, quid	anyone, anything (after **sī, nisi, nē, num**)

deus Apollo

Quīntus amīcō veterī occurrit

Quīntus decem diēs Capuae manēbat parentēs quaerēns, sed nihil prōfēcit. tandem Capuā trīstis discessit et viam iniit quae Rōmam ferēbat. in viā viātōrēs semper rogābat num parentēs vīdissent, sed nēmō eī dīcere poterat quid eīs accidisset. tandem Rōmam accessit sed urbem intrāre nōn ausus est; prope viam sedēbat cūrīs cōnfectus; mox dormīvit.

in somnō deus Apollō vīsus est eī astāre; lyram in manibus ferēbat vultūque benignō Quīntum aspexit. 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'mē audī. parentēs posthāc numquam vidēbis; nōlī fātō repugnāre. tempus est novum cursum vītae inīre. dēbēs mihi servīre

repugnāre fight against

Mūsīsque. mihi cōnfīsus Rōmam fortis intrā. ego tē cūrābō.' haec locūtus lyram Quīntō trādidit; quō factō ēvānuit.

ēvānuit he vanished

Quīntus, cum ēvigilāvisset, somniō gaudēbat. surrēxit urbemque iniit. nescīvit quid Rōmae factūrus esset, sed Apollinī cōnfīsus dē futūrīs nōn diūtius timēbat.

paucīs post diēbus forum trānsībat cum iuvenis quīdam eum vocāvit. sē vertit et Marcum Cicerōnem vīdit ad sē accurrentem. ille Quīntum complexus 'salvē, Quīnte,' inquit; 'quid agis? ergō tandem Rōmam redīre ausus es. venī mēcum atque omnia mihi nārrā quae tibi accidērunt ex quō Philippīs victī sumus.'

ex quō since

Marcus eum domum dūxit et cum in hortō sedērent vīnum bibentēs, 'nārrā mihi' inquit 'quōmodo ē proeliō effūgerīs et quid posteā fēcerīs.' Quīntus omnia eī nārrāvit; Marcus eum intentē audiēbat, deinde rogāvit quid iam factūrus esset. Quīntus trīstis respondit; 'nesciō quid factūrus sim. paupertāte marcēscō. opus quoddam suscipere dēbeō ut pānem mihi comparem.' Marcus paulīsper tacēbat, deinde 'Quīnte, audī mē,' inquit; 'cōnsilium optimum habeō. nūper quaestor aerāriī factus sum. vīsne mē adiuvāre? vīsne scrība aerāriī fierī? officia nōn gravia sunt et satis pecūniae accipiēs. auxiliō tuō, Quīnte, libenter ūtar. sī crās ad aerārium secundā hōrā vēneris, tē scrībam creābō.'

marcēscō I'm wasting away

pānem bread

quaestor aerāriī quaestor of the Treasury

scrība secretary

Quīntus Marcī fīdūciā gāvīsus eī grātiās ēgit. 'ō amīce cārissime, tū mihi novam spem praebuistī. mihi valdē placēbit tē in aerāriō adiuvāre. crās prīmā lūce aderō.' Marcum valēre iussit domumque festīnāvit ut sē ad nova officia parāret.

fīdūciā confidence, trust

postrīdiē prīmā lūce aerāriō adfuit. ā scrībā prīncipālī cōmiter acceptus est, quod amīcus Marcī erat. ille Quīntō exposuit quid facere dēbēret. officia, sīcut Marcus dīxerat, nōn gravia erant; tabellās pūblicās cūrāre dēbēbat; respōnsa magistrātibus reddēbat sī quid rogābant de rē quādam pūblicā. cotīdiē prīmā lūce aerāriō aderat; merīdiē negōtiīs cōnfectīs domum redīre solēbat.

prīncipālī chief

tabellās pūblicās the public records

The tabularium (Public Record Office), Rome

Respondē Latīnē

1 cuī cōnfīsus Quīntus Rōmam intrāre ausus est?
2 cum Quīntus Marcō occurrisset, quid Marcus eum rogāvit?
3 quōmodo Marcus Quīntum adiūvit?
4 quae officia dēbēbat Quīntus in aerāriō perficere?

senator arrogans

Quīntus ā senātōre malignō vexātur

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage and answer the questions on the rest

Quīntus in aerāriō labōrābat, cum senātor quīdam ingressus eum magnā vōce arcessīvit. Quīntus, negōtiīs occupātus, nōn statim ad eum accurrit. ille, vir nōbilī genere nātus, obēsus erat et arrogāns; querēbātur quod Quīntus nōn statim negōtiīs relictīs ad eum responderat. 'festīnā, scrība,' inquit; 'nōlī morārī. nōn possum tōtum diem cessāre.' Quīntus ad eum festīnāvit; 'salvē, mī senātor,' inquit; 'ignōsce mihi. negōtiīs occupātus eram. quid vīs?'

ille Quīntum malignē aspiciēns rogāvit quis esset et quō patre nātus esset. Quīntus eī respondit: 'nōmen mihi est Quīntus Horātius Flaccus. pater meus, quī Venusiae habitābat, mortuus est.' hōc audītō ille 'iam meminī,' inquit. 'tū amīcus es Marcī Cicerōnis. nōnne lībertō nātus erās? et tū, fīlius lībertī, tribūnus mīlitum factus es in Brūtī exercitū tōtīque legiōnī imperāre ausus es? nōn mīrum est quod Brūtus victus est, sī fīliōs lībertōrum tribūnōs facere coāctus est.'

Quīntus, quī tālem contumēliam audīre solitus est, nihil ad haec respondit sed iterum eum rogāvit quid vellet. ille 'nōlō rem agere cum lībertī fīliō. vocā alium scrībam.' Quīntus alium scrībam arcessīvit, quī cum senātōre rem ēgit. ipse in tabulārium recessit, īrātus quod sīc contemptus erat ā tālī virō.

obēsus	fat
malignē	maliciously
meminī	I remember
nōn mīrum est quod	it is no wonder that
contumēliam	insult(s)
rem agere	to do business
tabulārium	record office

1 What did the senator ask Quintus? [3]
2 How did he react to Quintus' answer? [7]
3 What did the senator then tell Quintus to do, and why? [3]
4 How did Quintus feel about the senator's behaviour? [2]
5 Sum up the senator's character in a few words. [4]

Fābella

Persōnae: Quīntus, Sextus (scrība prīncipālis), Metellus (senātor arrogāns), Rūfus (comes eius)

Quīntus in aerāriō labōrat. tabulās pūblicās in ōrdinem dispōnit.

Quīntus: quot tabulae in cōnfūsiōne iacent! nesciō quō hās tabulās pōnere dēbeam. necesse est scrībam prīncipālem cōnsulere. (*clāmat*) Sexte, vīsne mē adiuvāre? quō dēbeō hās tabulās pōnere?

in cōnfūsiōne in a muddle

cōnsulere consult

Sextus ad eum accēdit.

Sextus: ecce, Quīnte, hās tabulās in illum pluteum pōnere dēbēs, ubi locantur cēterae tabulae quae ad respōnsa cēnsōria attinent.

pluteum shelf

ad respōnsa cēnsōria attinent concern the replies of the censors

intrant Metellus Rūfusque.

Metellus: scrība! scrība! venī hūc. volō tē cōnsulere.

Quīntus, quī tabulās in pluteum dispōnit, paulīsper morātur.

Metellus: festīnā, scrība. nōlī cessāre. heus, iuvenis! nōn possum tē tōtum diem expectāre.

Quīntus ad Metellum festīnat.

Quīntus: salvē, mī senātor. ignōsce mihi. negōtiīs valdē occupātus eram. quōmodo tē adiuvāre possum?

Metellus: ad aerārium saepe venīre soleō sed tē numquam anteā vīdī. dīc mihi quis sīs et quō patre nātus.

Quīntus: nōmen mihi est Quīntus Horātius Flaccus, mī senātor; pater meus, quī Venusiae habitābat, mortuus est.

Metellus: iam meminī. aliquis mihi omnia dē tē dīxit. tū amīcus es Marcī Cicerōnis. nōnne lībertō nātus es? dī immortālēs, pater tuus servus erat!

Quīntus: pater meus vir bonus erat et honestus. numquam eius mē paenitēbit.

numquam eius mē paenitēbit I shall never be ashamed of him.

Metellus: et tū, fīlius lībertī, tribūnus mīlitum factus es in exercitū Brūtī!

Quīntus: ita vērō, mī senātor. tribūnus mīlitum factus sum Philippīsque legiōnī praefectus.

ita vērō yes

Metellus: nōn mīrum est quod Brūtus victus est sī fīliōs lībertōrum legiōnibus praefēcit. Rūfe, venī hūc. ecce, hic scrība lībertīnō patre nātus est. quid sentīs? nōnne turpe est tabulās pūblicās lībertī fīliō committere?

Rūfus: nōn est cūr eum sīc contemnās. sine dubiō iuvenis est strēnuus et ingeniōsus. quid interest sī pater eius lībertus est? cīvis Rōmānus est atque officia bene perficit.

nōn est cūr there is no reason why

quid interest? what does it matter?

Metellus: nōlī nūgās nārrāre, Rūfe. rēs turpissima est et contrā mōrem maiōrum facta. ego rem cum fīliō lībertī agere nōlō. vocā scrībam prīncipālem.

Sextus ad Metellum festīnat. Quīntus in aerārium recēdit, valdē īrātus.

LATIN POETRY

In this chapter Apollo, god of poetry, has appeared in a dream to Quintus and told him of his poetic mission. In the next chapter you will be reading some of his poetry. It may be of help if we now explain how Latin poetry had developed up to Quintus' time.

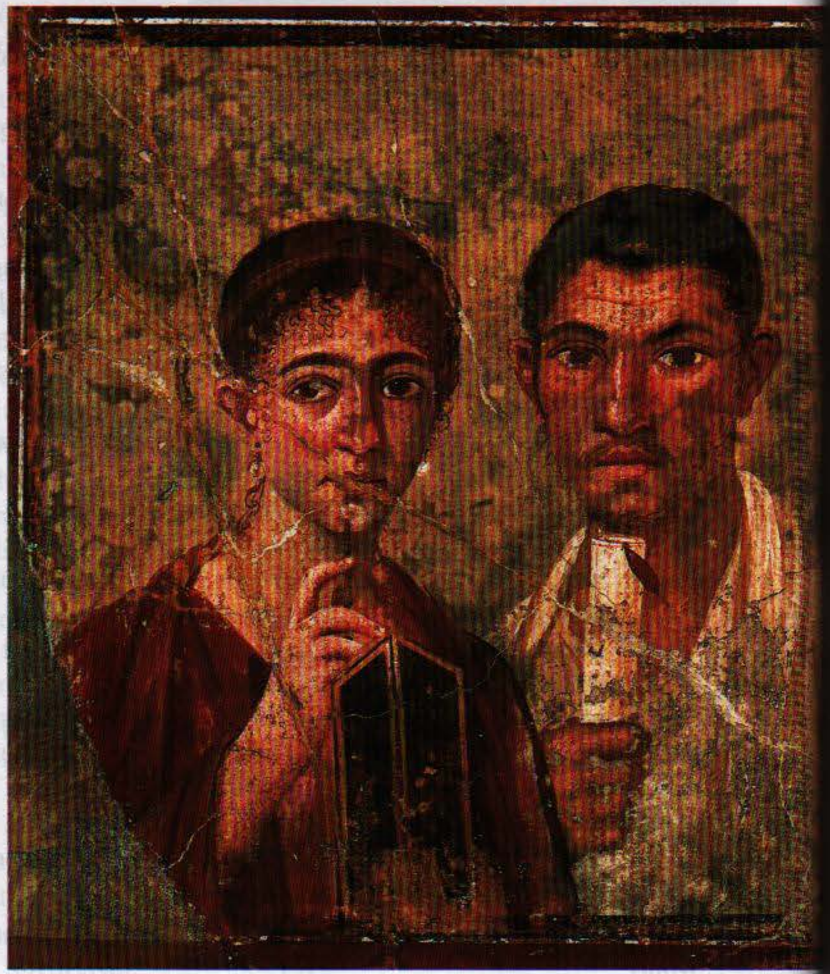
The Romans were slow starters as far as literature was concerned. For the first five hundred years of their history they produced nothing which we would recognize as poetry. Only a few hymns, charms and spells survive. Here is a specimen, a lullaby:

> lalla, lalla, lalla.
> ī, aut dormī aut lactā.
> (Lullaby, lullaby, lullaby.
> Come, either sleep or drink your milk.)

It is not unattractive but hardly ranks as poetry.

It was not until it came under the influence of the Greek writers that Roman literature got off the ground. At Orbilius' school Quintus would have had to struggle through the poems of Livius Andronicus (c. 284–204 BC). He was a Greek war-captive and slave and founded the Latin literary tradition by translating Homer's *Odyssey* and Greek tragedies and comedies into Latin. These two forms of literature, epic (long narrative poems on elevated themes) and drama, were developed by a succession of Roman writers over the next two hundred years.

Tragedies and comedies were performed at the festivals which occurred at intervals throughout the year. Rome, where there were five major drama festivals taking up fourteen days in all, produced at least one really great dramatist, Plautus (c. 254–184 BC). Twenty comedies by him, all of them with Greek settings, survive. They are still performed today and remain very funny, containing a large element of knock-about farce and a splendid gallery of characters. Ennius was another writer for whom the Romans, including Virgil, had great respect. He lived from c. 239 to 169 BC and has been



called 'the father of Roman poetry'. As well as tragedies and comedies, he wrote an epic – in the same metre as Homer had used – on the history of Rome.

To begin with, the Roman tradition was limited to forms of poetry intended for public performance. Poetry was not considered a vehicle for the expression of personal feelings, which is what most of us expect of it now. Catullus (c. 84–54 BC) was the first great writer to use poetry to express his thoughts and emotions on every subject which occurred to him, from the trivial to the profound. He is the first love poet in Roman literature. He too found his inspiration in Greek models when he broke with the old Roman tradition of epic and drama. He was influenced by the early Greek lyric poets of the seventh century BC and even more by the highly sophisticated Greek poets who founded a new tradition in Alexandria four hundred years later. Neither he nor the other great Roman poets imitated Greek models slavishly. He and the circle of young poets he wrote for, the *poētae novī*, as Cicero contemptuously called them, were highly original. They found in the Greek poets they looked back to an inspiration which freed them from the old Roman tradition, and enabled them to produce an intensely personal type of poetry.

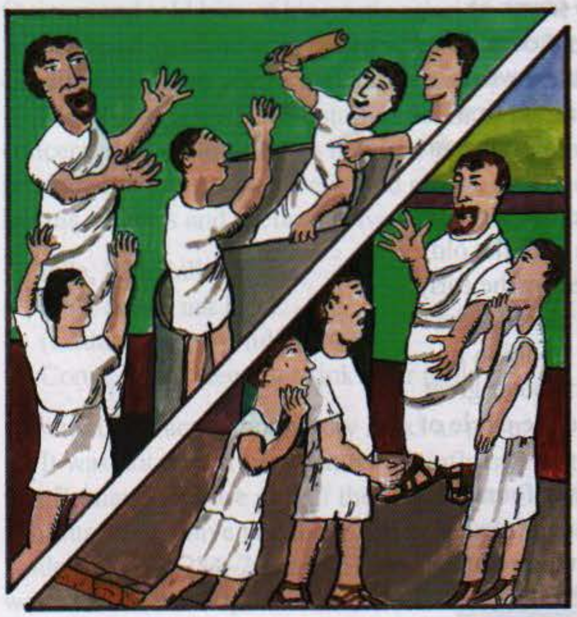
We have mentioned epic, drama and lyric. Another important genre is didactic poetry. Didactic poems aim to teach their readers something. The earliest surviving didactic poem is by a Greek called Hesiod who lived around the same time as Homer. He wrote about farming. Virgil says that Hesiod's poem was the model for his *Georgics*, the poem on farming which he talks about when he appears in our next chapter. The first Roman didactic poem was written by a contemporary of Catullus called Lucretius (c. 98–c. 55 BC) who wrote an amazing poem in six books called *The Nature of the Universe* (*De Rerum Natura*) in which he gives a scientific exposition of Epicurus' philosophy (see Part II, background section to chapter 29). Lucretius intended the pleasure given by poetry to help to 'sell' his useful philosophical message. Horace gives his approval when he says that 'the poet who has mixed the useful with the pleasurable wins every vote, by delighting and advising the reader at one and the same moment'. But such a comment is an inadequate response to the tremendous excitement of Lucretius' poetry. More than any other Roman poet, he overwhelms by the sheer force of his poetic inspiration.

Name one or more English-speaking poets who wrote in the following genres (types of literature) and name some of their poems or plays: epic, drama, lyric, didactic.

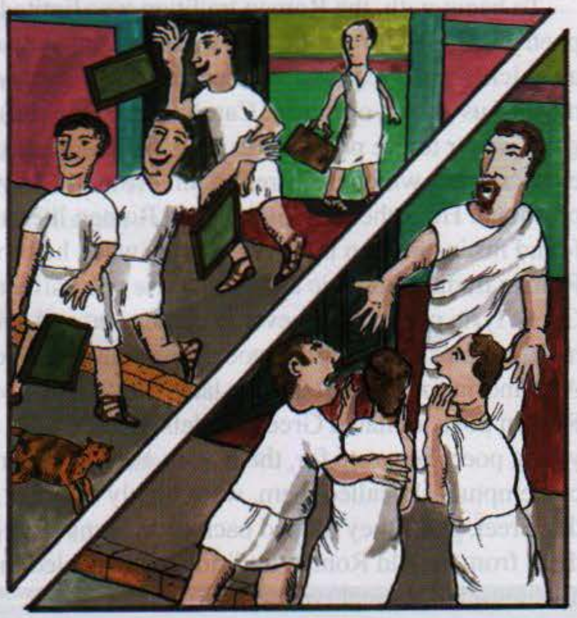
If you were a poet, what sort of subjects would you choose to write about?

Chapter 41

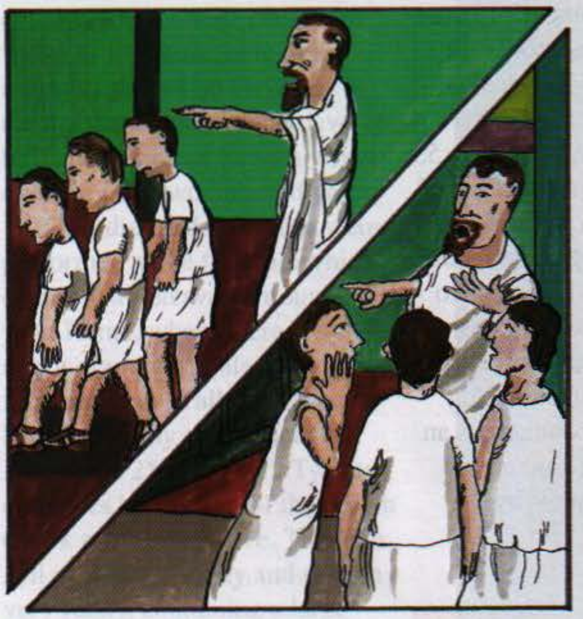
Quintus carmina facit



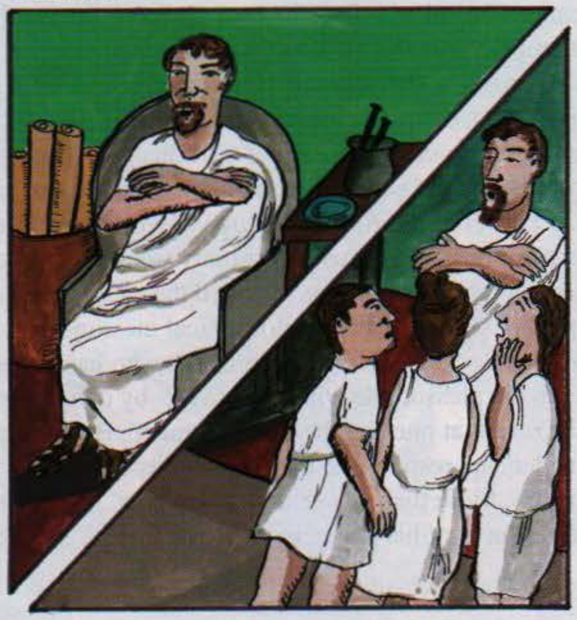
puerī malī sunt.
magister parentibus dīcit puerōs malōs esse.



puerī tabulās abiēcērunt.
magister parentibus dīcit puerōs tabulās abiēcisse.



puerī domum remissī sunt.
magister parentibus dīcit puerōs domum remissōs esse.



magister puerōs pūniet.
magister parentibus dīcit sē puerōs pūnītūrum esse.

The cartoon captions above first quote the master's words as he actually spoke and then report the same words after **dīcit** (he says that . . .). How does Latin express such reported statements?

Vocabulary 41

verbs

negō, negāre	I deny, say that . . . not
probō, probāre	I approve of
prōspectō, prōspectāre	I look out at
vītō, vītāre	I avoid
horreō, horrēre, horruī	I tremble at, fear
condō, condere, condidī, conditum	I store away; I found
admīror, admīrārī, admīrātus sum	I wonder at, admire
colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum	I talk with
colloquium, -ī, n.	conversation
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum + abl.	I enjoy

nouns

amīcitia, -ae, f.	friendship
aurum, -ī, n.	gold
avis, avis, f.	bird
ovis, ovis, f.	sheep
vallis, vallis, f.	valley

adjectives

beātus, -a, -um	blessed, happy
īnfirmus, -a, -um	weak
levis, leve	light
mortālis, mortāle	mortal

adverbs

modo . . . modo	now . . . now
paulātim	little by little

Quīntus carmina facit

Quīntus iam satis pecūniae accipiēbat ut modicē vīveret; satis ōtiī fruēbatur ut carmina compōneret. sīc duōs annōs contentus perēgit. Marcō Cicerōnī saepe occurrēbat quī cognōvit eum carmina compōnere; ille eum rogāvit ut carmina sibi recitāret. cum ea audīvisset, dīxit Quīntum poētam optimum esse. amīcīs suīs dīcēbat sē poētam novum invēnisse; illī carmina audīre cupiēbant. sīc fāma Quīntī paulātim ēmānābat. Quīntus spērābat sē tōtum librum carminum mox cōnfectūrum esse.

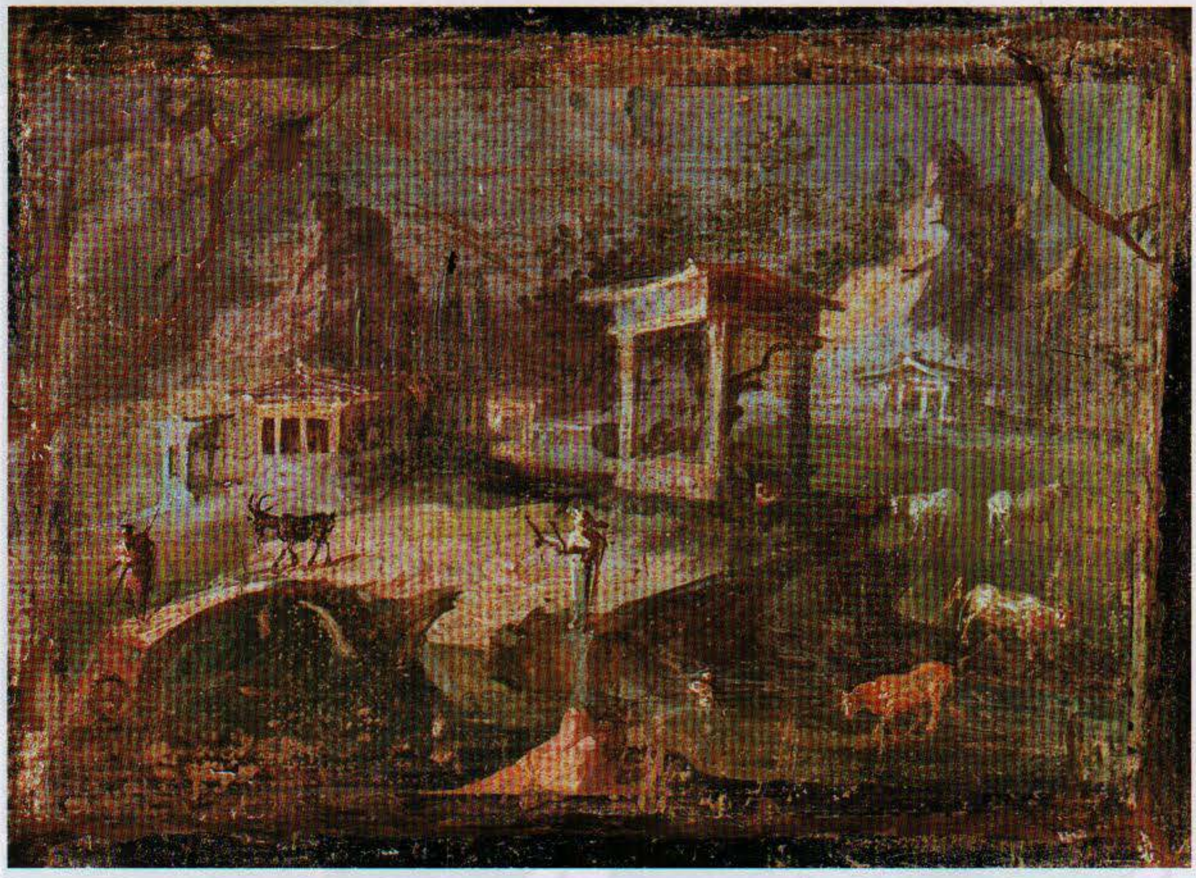
ex hīs carminibus ūnum hīc ascrībimus, in quō vītam colōnī rūsticī laudat:

ut so that; **modicē** modestly
perēgit passed
ēmānābat was spreading abroad

NB In verse, adjectives are often separated from the nouns they agree with; you must therefore pay very close attention to word endings to see which word agrees with which.

'beātus ille, quī procul negōtiīs,
ut prīsca gēns mortālium,
paterna rūra bōbus exercet suīs,
solūtus omnī faenore.
neque excitātur classicō mīles trucī
neque horret īrātum mare,

beātus ille supply **est**
ut prīsca gēns mortālium like the ancient race of men
paterna rūra his ancestral farm
bōbus . . . suīs with his oxen
faenore from debt
classicō . . . trucī by the harsh trumpet
mīles as a soldier



A pastoral scene

forumque vītat et superba cīvium
  potentiōrum līmina.
aut in reductā valle mūgientium
  prōspectat errantēs gregēs,
aut pressa pūrīs mella condit amphorīs
  aut tondet īnfirmās ovēs.
libet iacēre modo sub antīquā īlice,
  modo in tenācī grāmine.
lābuntur altīs interim rīvīs aquae,
  queruntur in silvīs avēs,
fontēsque lymphīs obstrepunt mānantibus,
  somnōs quod invītet levēs.'

reductā	withdrawn, remote
mūgientium	of lowing (cattle)
gregēs	herds
pressa . . . mella	the pressed honey(s)
amphorīs	in jars
tondet	shears
libet	he delights to
īlice	holm oak
tenācī grāmine	the clinging grass
rīvīs	streams
lymphīs . . . mānantibus	with flowing water
obstrepunt	murmur
quod	(a thing) which

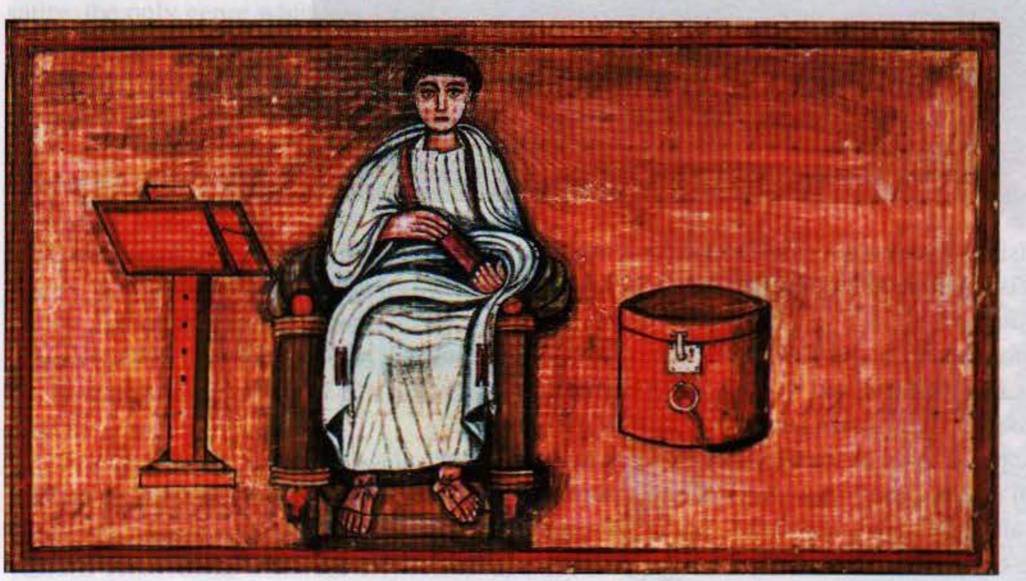
The poem continues for another forty lines, praising the tranquillity and simplicity of country life; it ends:

haec ubi locūtus faenerātor Alfius,
  iam, iam futūrus rūsticus,
omnem redēgit Idibus pecūniam,
  quaerit Kalendīs pōnere.

locūtus	supply **est**
faenerātor	the money-lender
redēgit	called in
Idibus	on the fifteenth (of the month)
Kalendīs	on the first
pōnere	to lend it out (again)

1. Notice that all the poem except the last four lines is in inverted commas; what does this tell you?
2. How do the last four lines change your impression of the first part of the poem?
3. What would be meant by saying that line 4 (**solūtus omnī faenore**) was ironical?
4. What sort of man was Alfius? Did he really want to become a countryman? What is the significance of **iam, iam futūrus**? (Why is **iam** repeated?)
5. Do you think that there are men like Alfius in the contemporary world? What would be meant by saying that the poem is *satirical*?
6. Whom or what is Horace satirizing?

omnem redegit
Idibus pecuniam



Virgil

Vergilius amīcitiam Quīntī petit

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage and answer the questions on the rest

diē quōdam Quīntus, cum aerāriō discessisset, in tabernā sub arbore sedēbat, cum iuvenis eī nōn nōtus accessit. 'salvē, Horātī,' inquit; 'tē diū quaerō. ego sum Pūblius Vergilius Marō. amīcus quīdam mihi dīxit tē carmina facere. diū cupiō tē cognōscere.' Quīntus surrēxit eumque salūtāvit; respondit sē carmina Vergiliī lēgisse atque ea valdē admīrārī.

Vergilius eī arrīsit; 'gaudeō,' inquit, 'tē mea carmina probāre. sed quid hodiē factūrus es? an ōtiōsus es? vīsne domum mēcum venīre?'

Quīntus gaudēbat Vergilium amīcitiam suam petere eumque domum secūtus est. ad multam noctem in hortō sedēbant inter sē colloquentēs. Quīntus eī recitāvit poēma quod de Alfiō nūper scrīpserat.

ad multam noctem	until late at night
poēma (n.)	poem

A pastoral landscape

Vergilius rīsit et 'ego quoque' inquit 'poēma compōnere cōnor dē rēbus rūsticīs. ea quae tū iocōsē tractās ego sēriō expōnō; nam de colōnōrum labōribus canō, de rūris pulchritūdine, dē vītā rūsticōrum innocentī et tranquillā.' Quīntus eum rogāvit ut aliquid huius carminis sibi recitāret, sed ille negāvit sē carmen eī recitāturum esse; 'vix quicquam perfēcī,' inquit; 'nēminī haec recitābō dōnec perfecta erint.' tandem Quīntus surrēxit et dīxit sē dēbēre domum redīre. Vergilius, cum Quīntum valēre iubēret, dīxit sē colloquiō valdē gāvīsum esse; 'spērō', inquit 'tē saepe hūc ventūrum esse et carmina tua mihi recitātūrum.'

iocōsē	in jest, humorously
tractās	you are treating
sēriō	seriously

1. What did Quintus recite to Virgil? [2]
2. What was the poem Virgil was composing about?
   In what way does it differ from Quintus'? Find out what Virgil's poem is called. [2 + 2 +1]
3. Why would Virgil not recite any of this poem to Quintus? [2]
4. What did he say to Quintus when they parted? [3]

HORACE

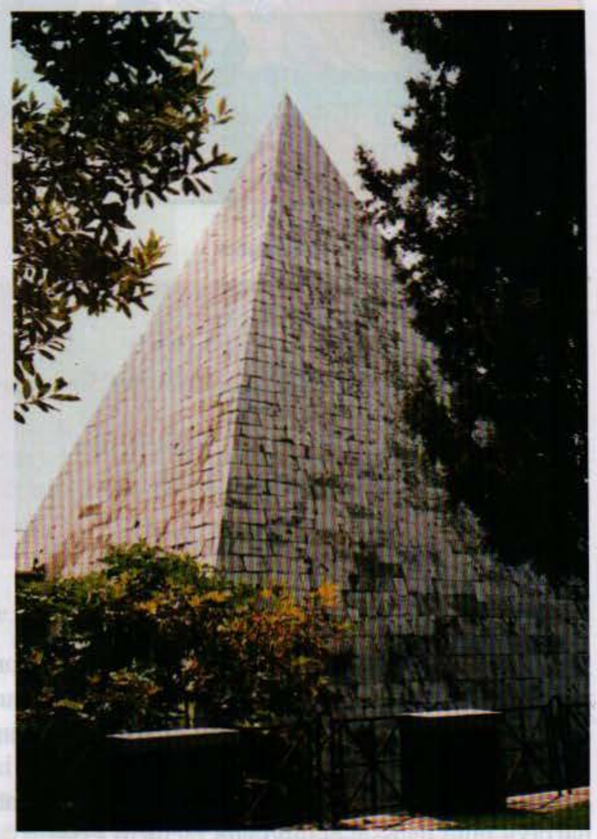
In the last chapter we looked at the literary tradition which Horace was heir to. Now we must look at his own contribution to this tradition.

Disregarding Catullus' achievement, Horace claims to be the first Roman poet to have 'naturalized' Greek lyric poetry, bringing Greek metres and feelings to Italy. Lyric poetry orginally meant poetry sung to the accompaniment of the lyre, which was not unlike our guitar. The early Greek lyric poets had literally sung their poems on love and war and wine to their friends, often at dinner parties. Horace used the metres of these poets, and many of the same themes, but he lived six hundred years later in very different conditions. His poems were intended to be read in private rather than sung to friends on particular occasions, and in this respect they are much more like modern poetry. Just as Catullus was, he was much influenced by the Alexandrian writers.

Horace's first two works, the *Epodes* (from which *Beātus ille* in this chapter comes) and the two books of *Sermones* (= conversation pieces), were published in 35 and 30 BC. The *Epodes* are a collection of poems on love, politics, war and the art of living, while the *Sermones* belong to a genre of literature called satire, the only genre which the Romans invented themselves. In satire, writers in prose or verse or a mixture of the two laugh at the follies and vices of mankind. Horace is highly original in the *Sermones* (which he also called the *Satires*), often laughing at himself as well as others (as in the satire about the bore; see chapter 45). Some years later he wrote the two books of *Epistles* which can be seen as a continuation of the *Satires* and contain his *Art of Poetry*, a didactic poem. A wonderful sense of his highly individual response to life in ancient Rome is conveyed in these works, and at times we have the breathtaking impression of a man talking to us directly across two millennia.

His major work, however, is his *Carmina*, the four books of *Odes*, the first three published in 23 BC, the fourth in 13 BC. Here, as he handles his various verse forms with masterly technical skill, he mingles personal poems on such themes as love, friendship, life and death, poetry, the countryside and the delights of wine, with political poems that reflect his deep anxiety and grateful optimism in a period of considerable uncertainty. He had a passionate belief in the value and permanence of poetry and, as we saw in Part I (chapter 1), proudly claimed that his own work would last for ever:

> I have raised a monument more lasting than bronze and higher than the ruins of the royal pyramids . . . Not all of me shall die.



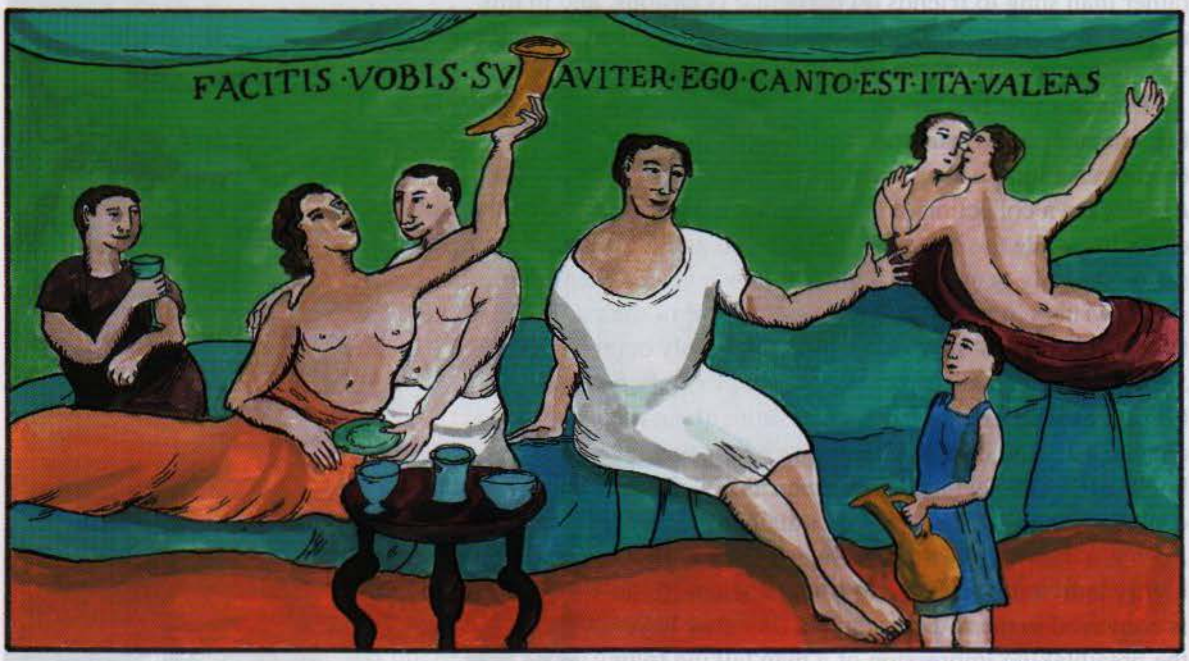
The pyramid of Sestius

Think of three modern TV programmes which you might describe as 'satirical'. What do they have in common?

What sort of person do you think might disapprove of satire?

Chapter 42 Pompeius ad patriam revenit

Vocabulary 42



recepto dulce mihi furere est amico

verbs		*nouns*	
renovō, renovāre	I renew	**convīva, -ae**, c.	guest
habeō, prō certō habeō	I am sure that	**convīvium, -ī**, n.	dinner party
carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum	I pluck, pick	**corōna, -ae**, f.	garland, crown
ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum	I slip out	**venia, -ae**, f.	pardon
		silentium, -ī, n.	silence
		reditus, -ūs, m.	return

Pompēius ad patriam revenit

paucīs post diēbus Quīntus alterī amīcō veterī in forō occurrit. nam Pompēium cōnspexit ad palātium festīnantem. accurrit eumque salūtāvit. 'Pompēī,' inquit, 'tandem in patriam revēnistī? venī mēcum et mihi nārrā ubi fuerīs, quid fēcerīs, quid iam factūrus sīs.' tabernam ingressī vīnum rogāvērunt. cum sēdissent, Pompēius nārrāvit quid fēcisset et quid iam factūrus esset.

palātium the Palatium (Octavian's house on the Palatine)

dīxit sē cum cēterīs ē campō Philippōrum effūgisse; diū in montibus silvīsque sē celāvisse; tandem cōnstituisse ad Sextum Pompēium īre bellumque prō rēpūblicā renovāre. 'ille in Siciliā erat; magnā cum difficultāte eō advēnī. duōs annōs cum eō mīlitābam, sed ille nihil prōficiēbat prō rēpūblicā, nihil cūrābat nisi ut aurum argentumque sibi comparāret. dēnique, cum Octāviānus veniam inimīcīs suīs prōmīsisset, ego ē castrīs Pompēiī ēlāpsus ad Italiam nāvigāvī. iam Rōmam tandem regressus ad Octāviānum festīnō ut veniam petam.'

Quīntus 'euge!' inquit; 'gaudeō tē tandem ad patriam revēnisse. prō certō habeō Octāviānum veniam tibi datūrum esse. nam valdē cupit omnēs inimīcōs sibi conciliāre Italiamque in pācem et ōtium redūcere. sed dīc mihi, amīce, quid crās factūrus sīs. vīsne mēcum cēnāre? convīvium faciēmus ut reditum tuum celebrēmus.'

Pompēius respondit sē ad cēnam libenter ventūrum esse abiitque ad Palātium ut Octāviānum quaereret. Quīntus domum festīnāvit ut omnia ad convīvium parāret. multōs amīcōs ad cēnam invītāvit multāsque puellās pulcherrimās. servīs imperāvit ut cibum vīnumque optimum parārent; aliōs ēmīsit quī flōrēs carperent corōnāsque facerent.

convīvium magnificum erat; omnēs convīvae gaudēbant Pompēium incolumem Rōmam rediisse; ille laetissimus erat quod Octāviānus veniam sibi dederat. omnēs admodum ēbriī factī sunt. tandem Quīntus, silentiō factō, carmen recitāvit quod composuerat ut reditum amīcī celebrāret.

conciliāre conciliate, win over

quī . . . carperent to pick

admodum ēbriī extremely drunk

Vocabulary 42a

dōnō, dōnāre	I give
redōnō, redōnāre	I give back
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsum + dat.	I spare
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum	I touch
mīlitia, -ae, f.	military service, army
patrius, -a, -um	of one's father(s)

Quīntus Pompēiī reditum carmine celebrat

The following is a prose paraphrase of Horace's ode:

ō Pompei, saepe mēcum tempus in ultimum dēducte, Brūtō mīlitiae duce, quis tē redōnāvit Quirītem dīs patriīs Italōque caelō, Pompei, prīme meōrum sodālium? cum quō saepe diem morantem merō frēgī, capillōs nitentēs mālabathrō Syriō corōnātus.

tēcum Philippōs et celerem fugam sēnsī, parmulā nōn bene relictā, cum virtūs frācta est, et minācēs solum mentō turpe tetigērunt. sed Mercurius celer mē paventem per hostēs āëre dēnsō sustulit; tē unda in bellum rūrsus resorbēns fretīs aestuōsīs tulit.

ergō Iovī redde dapem obligātam latusque (tuum) longā mīlitiā fessum sub laurū meā dēpōne, nec parce cadīs tibi dēstinātīs . . . amīcō receptō dulce est mihi furere.

tempus in ultimum into the last time, i.e. danger of death

dēducte voc., agreeing with **Pompei**

Quirītem as a Roman citizen (i.e. no longer a soldier)

sodālium of my comrades

merō with undiluted wine

capillōs nitentēs . . . corōnātus having crowned my shining hair

mālabathrō Syriō with Syrian perfume

parmulā my little shield

nōn bene not well = dishonourably

virtūs virtue = the cause of Virtue, Brutus' fight for freedom

minācēs threatening, i.e. those who had threatened; **solum** the ground

mentō with their chin(s)

turpe disgracefully, i.e. in disgrace

paventem trembling

āëre dēnsō in a thick mist

resorbēns sucking back

fretīs aestuōsīs on stormy seas

Iovī . . . dapem obligātam the feast owed to Jupiter

cadīs tibi dēstinātīs the (wine) jars marked out for you

furere to run mad

*Now read the original poem and answer the questions below. The main difficulty is in the word order, e.g. the first line opens '**ō**', but the vocative* ***Pompei*** *does not come until line 5. Remember to read by the punctuation, not by the line; sense may carry over from line to line and even from one stanza to the next.*

ō saepe mēcum tempus in ultimum
dēducte Brūtō mīlitiae duce,
quis tē redōnāvit Quirītem
dīs patriīs Italōque caelō,

Pompei, meōrum prīme sodālium?
cum quō morantem saepe diem merō
frēgī, corōnātus nitentēs
mālabathrō Syriō capillōs.

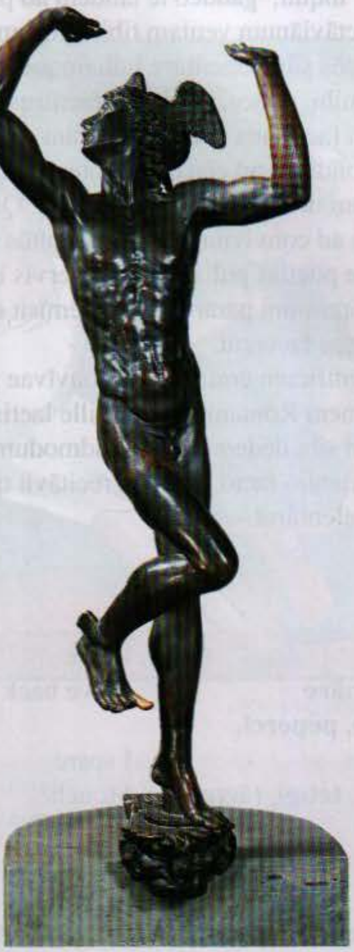
tēcum Philippōs et celerem fugam
sēnsī, relictā nōn bene parmulā,
cum frācta virtūs, et minācēs
turpe solum tetigēre mentō.

sed mē per hostēs Mercurius celer
dēnsō paventem sustulit āëre:
tē rūrsus in bellum resorbēns
unda fretīs tulit aestuōsīs.

ergō obligātam redde Iovī dapem
longāque fessum mīlitiā latus
dēpōne sub laurū meā, nec
parce cadīs tibi dēstinātīs . . .

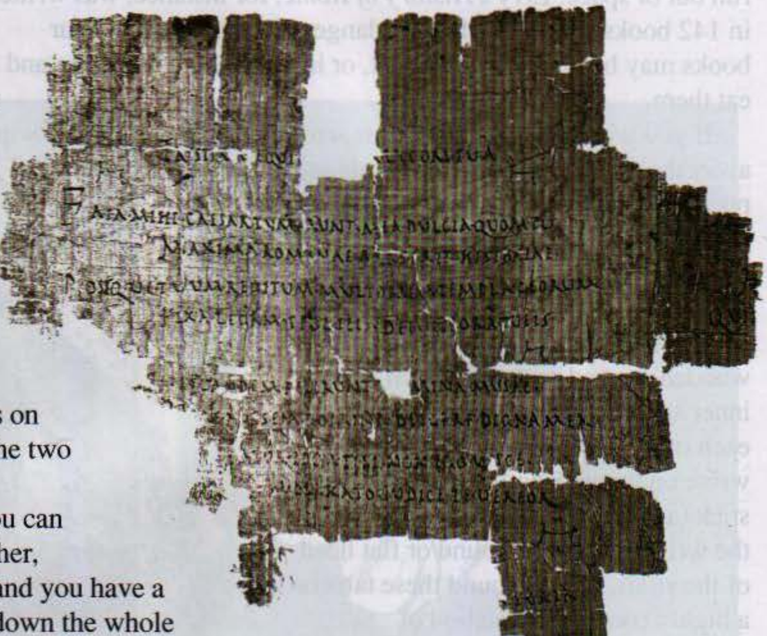
receptō
dulce mihi furere est amīcō.

tetigēre = tetigērunt


Mercurius celer

1. **quis tē redōnāvit?** Horace does not answer this question; can you suggest an answer?
2. **morantem**: why is the day described as 'lingering'? How did they fill their time?
3. How does Horace belittle his own performance in the battle?
4. In chapters 35–6 you read of Quintus' actual escape from the battle. How does he describe his escape in the ode? Why do you suppose he does this?
5. What image does he use to describe Pompeius' fortunes after Philippi? How appropriate is it?
6. **obligātam Iovī dapem**: explain what is meant by this phrase.
7. What is Horace's invitation to Pompeius in the fifth stanza? What is implied by the phrase **cadīs tibi dēstinātīs**?
8. What feelings towards Pompeius does Horace convey in the poem as a whole?

BOOKS



A papyrus fragment

When we talk about a book in the Roman world, we generally mean a papyrus roll. The papyrus reed is rare today but used to grow in abundance on the banks of the Nile.

How would you convert it into the ancient equivalent of paper? Cut the pith on the papyrus stem into strips and put them side by side horizontally. Wet the layer you have formed with water and add a little glue. Place another set of strips on top of this at right angles to it. Press the two layers together. Allow to dry.

You now have a sheet on which you can write. Next join several of these together, smoothing down the joints carefully, and you have a continuous strip of papyrus. Smooth down the whole surface with pumice; otherwise the ink will blot. All you need to turn it into a book is a pair of cylindrical wooden rollers, preferably with ornamental knobs on, which you fix to each end left and right.

Now it can be written on. You, your secretary or one of your slaves must pick up a pen (either a pointed reed or a sharpened goose quill such as was used until the nineteenth century) and dip it in ink, a black substance made of soot and glue and then diluted. You write from left to right in columns about thirty-five letters wide. You write in capital letters with no word division and little punctuation. Your first task, if you are reading a book, is *ēmendāre* (to correct errors) and *distinguere* (to separate words and punctuate). The papyrus can be as long or as short as you like, but in Horace's day the average length of a book of papyrus was 700 to 900 lines. Presumably this was considered a reasonable size for a scroll.

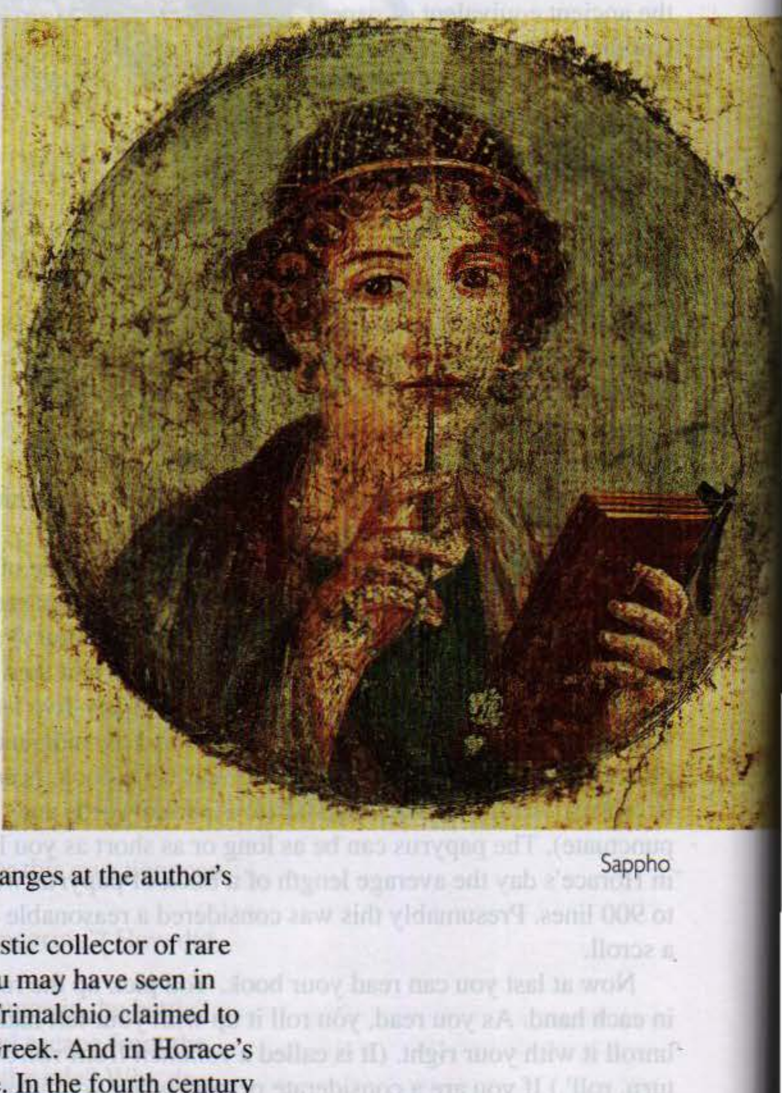
Now at last you can read your book. You pick up the rollers one in each hand. As you read, you roll it up with your left hand and unroll it with your right. (It is called a *volūmen* from *volvō* = 'I turn, roll'.) If you are a considerate person, when you have finished the book you will re-roll it, since the next reader cannot start on it until the beginning faces outwards again.

You now have the problem of storing the book. You either lay it on a shelf or put it in a cylindrical box, first having made sure that a strip of parchment giving the title is stuck to it. This will either hang down from the shelf or stick out from the box, depending on your method of storage. It is extremely likely to come off. There will be serious difficulty in consulting documents. You can't simply flick through a book as you can today. And you may soon run out of space. Livy's *History of Rome*, for instance, was written in 142 books! There are further dangers in your library. Your books may become damp and rot, or insects may get at them and eat them.

If you wish to re-use a papyrus scroll, a damp sponge will wipe away the ink. The emperor Caligula is said to have forced bad poets to lick out their work with their tongues!

Schoolchildren and adults who wanted to jot down short notes would write not on papyrus but on wax tablets. These consisted of two or more wooden-framed rectangles with waxen inner sections. The frames were tied to each other with leather thongs. You wrote on the wax with a thin pointed stick (a *stīlus*). Later you could rub out the writing using the round or flat head of the *stīlus*. Lovers found these tablets a highly convenient method of communication. Can you suggest why?

There was no real distinction between the roles of publisher and bookseller in the Roman world. Many scribes would be employed as copyists in the large number of bookshops at Rome. If they were dealing with a best-seller, the text would be dictated to a group of scribes and the book would be mass-produced. Cicero's friend Atticus was a famous publisher, running a factory with many slaves who were well trained in all aspects of book production, including making last-minute changes at the author's request.

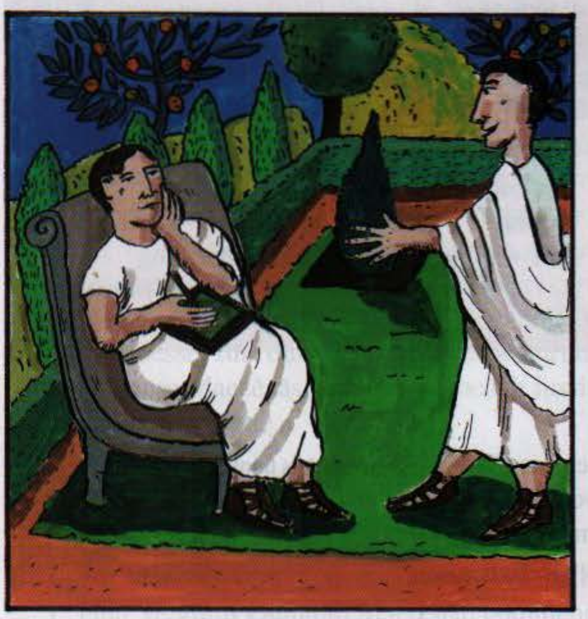

Sappho

Wealthy Romans like Cicero, an enthusiastic collector of rare books, had excellent private libraries. As you may have seen in Part II, Petronius' *nouveau riche* freedman Trimalchio claimed to have two libraries, one in Latin and one in Greek. And in Horace's day the first public libraries opened in Rome. In the fourth century AD there were twenty-nine public libraries in the city. Libraries were available even in the baths for the pleasure of the bathers.

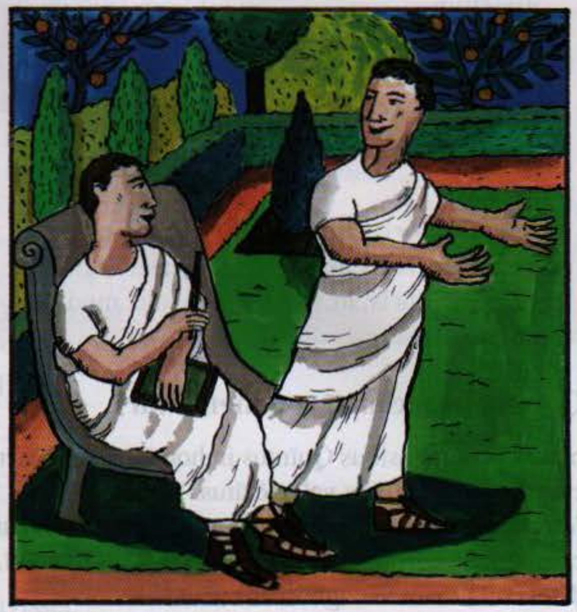
What were the main difficulties which faced a reader in the Roman world?

Compare book production in the modern world with that practised in Horace's day.

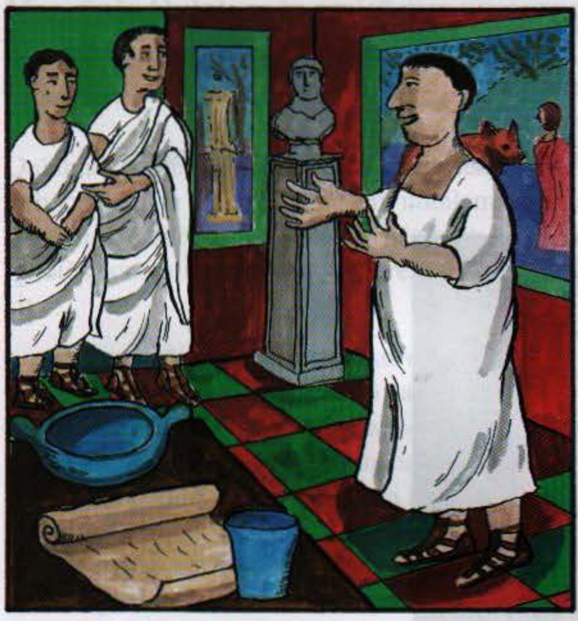
Chapter 43 Quintus Maecenati commendatur



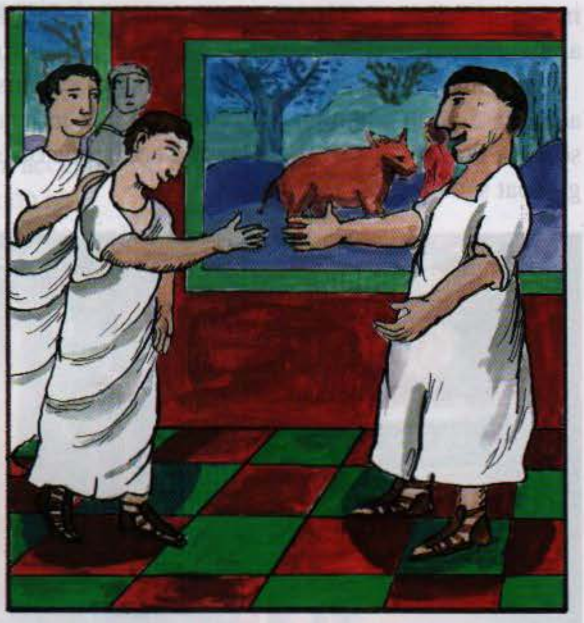
Quīntus in hortō sedēbat carmen meditāns cum incurrit Vergilius.



ille 'venī mēcum, Quīnte,' inquit, 'ad Maecēnātem. tua carmina eum adeō dēlectant ut tē cognōscere cupiat.'



Maecēnās 'salvē, Horātī,' inquit; 'Vergilius dē tē totiēns mihi dīxit ut tua carmina audīre cupiam.'



Quīntus tam verēcundus (*shy*) erat ut vix quicquam dīcere posset.

Cartoons 2, 3 and 4 contain clauses introduced by **ut** + subjunctive; what are these clauses expressing?

Vocabulary 43

verbs	
dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum	I love
for, fārī, fātus sum	I speak, say
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum	I am born
dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī + dat.	I fail
nouns	
ars, artis, f.	art, skill
honor, honōris, m.	honour, office
pectus, pectoris, n.	breast, heart
pudor, pudōris, m.	shame, modesty

adjectives	
indignus, -a, -um + abl.	unworthy (of)
prīvātus, -a, -um	private
adverbs	
adeō	to such an extent, so
ita	in such a way, so, thus
conjunctions	
quia	because
ut + subjunctive	that (expressing consequence or result)

Quīntus Maecēnātī commendātur

paucīs post mēnsibus Quīntus in hortō sedēbat carmen meditāns, cum irrūpit Vergilius valdē ēlātus. 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'venī mēcum; festīnā. Maecēnās tē exspectat. eī dīxī tē optima carmina compōnere; carminum tuōrum plēraque eī recitāvī, quae eum adeō dēlectant ut iam tē cognōscere velit.'

meditāns thinking over, composing
ēlātus excited

Maecēnās erat vir īnsignis, vetus amīcus Octāviānī; dīves erat atque nōbilis, quī dīcēbat sē rēgibus Etrūscīs ortum esse. numquam honōrēs petīverat sed, quamquam eques prīvātus erat, Octāviānus eum tantī aestimābat ut semper eum cōnsuleret dē rēbus maximī mōmentī. Mūsās colēbat litterīsque studēbat. multōs poētās adiūverat, quōrum nōnnūllōs in numerum amīcōrum accēperat.

eques prīvātus a private knight, i.e. he held no office
tantī so highly; **cōnsuleret** consulted
maximī mōmentī of the greatest importance

Quīntus Vergilium secūtus ad aedēs Maecēnātis celeriter advēnit. cum in tablīnum intrāvissent, Maecēnās ad mēnsam sedēbat librum legēns. brevī statūrā erat atque obēsus; nōn togam gerēbat sed tunicam solūtam.

statūrā stature; **obēsus** fat
solūtam loose

A luxurious Roman villa

Vergilius ad eum accessit et 'Maecēnās,' inquit, 'velim commendāre amīcum meum Quīntum Horātium Flaccum. poēta est facētus, ut tibi dīxī, et doctus.' ille Quīntum vultū benignō īnspiciēns 'salvē, Horātī,' inquit; 'Vergilius mihi dē tē totiēns dīxit ut diū tē cognōscere cupiam. dīc mihi aliquid dē parentibus tuīs tuōque cursū vītae.'

velim commendāre I should like to introduce
facētus witty

Quīntus tam verēcundus erat ut vix fārī posset. pauca tamen verba singultim locūtus, nōn dīxit sē clārō patre nātum esse, sed quod erat nārrāvit. ille pauca respondit Quīntumque mox dīmīsit. Quīntus dolēbat quod sibi ita dēfuisset ut sē indignum amīcitiā tantī virī praebēret. octō mēnsēs praeteriērunt. Maecēnās eum nōn revocāvit. Quīntus putābat sē Maecēnātī nōn placuisse; sed Vergilius dīcēbat Maecēnātem eum dīlēxisse et carmina eius probāre; sed negōtiīs tam occupātum esse ut amīcōs neglegeret; diū Rōmā abesse; sine dubiō Quīntum revocātūrum esse.

verēcundus shy
singultim haltingly
quod erat what was (the truth)
dolēbat was upset

nōnō mēnse Maecēnās Quīntum revocāvit iussitque in amīcōrum numerō esse.

Respondē Latīnē

1 quālis erat Maecēnās?
2 cūr Maecēnās Quīntum cognōscere volēbat?
3 cum Vergilius Quīntum Maecēnātī commendāvisset, quōmodo sē gessit Quīntus?
4 cūr putābat Quīntus sē Maecēnātī nōn placuisse?

Maecēnās Quīntum in amīcōrum numerum accipit

Read the following passage and with the help of your teacher translate it

Quīntus ipse dēscrībit quōmodo ā Maecēnāte prīmum acceptus sit; in hōc poēmate dīcit Maecēnātem nōbilem esse sed nōn sē contemnere quod lībertīnō patre nātus sit. 'multī' inquit 'hominēs ignōtōs contemnunt. sī quis honōrēs petit, quaerunt quō patre nātus sit . . .

nunc ad mē redeō lībertīnō patre nātum,
quem rōdunt omnēs lībertīnō patre nātum,
nunc quia sim tibi, Maecēnās, convīctor, at ōlim
quod mihi pārēret legiō Rōmāna tribūnō . . .
ut vēnī cōram, singultim pauca locūtus,
īnfāns namque pudor prohibēbat plūra profārī,
nōn ego mē clārō nātum patre . . .
sed quod eram dīcō. respondēs, ut tuus est mōs,
pauca: abeō; et revocās nōnō post mēnse iubēsque
esse in amīcōrum numerō. magnum hoc ego dūcō
quod placuī tibi . . .
nōn patre praeclārō sed vītā et pectore pūrō.

rōdunt disparage, run down
convīctor friend
cōram into your presence
īnfāns dumb; **profārī** to say
nātum supply esse
magnum hoc ego dūcō I consider this a great thing
nōn patre praeclārō not because of a famous father

addit haec:

"sī bonum ingenium habeō,
causa fuit pater hīs, quī macrō pauper agellō,
nōluit in Flāvī lūdum mē mittere, magnī
quō puerī, magnīs ē centuriōnibus ortī,
ībant . . .
sed puerum est ausus Rōmam portāre, docendum
artēs quās doceat quīvīs eques atque senātor
sēmet prōgnātōs.

Quīntus patrem suum adeō amābat ut eum semper laudāret grātiāsque eī ageret. cum amīcus esset multīs virīs īnsignibus atque ipsī prīncipī, patris tamen numquam eum paenitēbat.

causa . . . hīs	the reason for this
macrō . . . agellō	with a poor little farm
puerum	me as a boy
docendum	to be taught
quīvīs	any
doceat	would have taught to
sēmet prōgnātōs	(children) born from himself = his own children
prīncipī	the emperor
eum paenitēbat	was ashamed of

MAECENAS

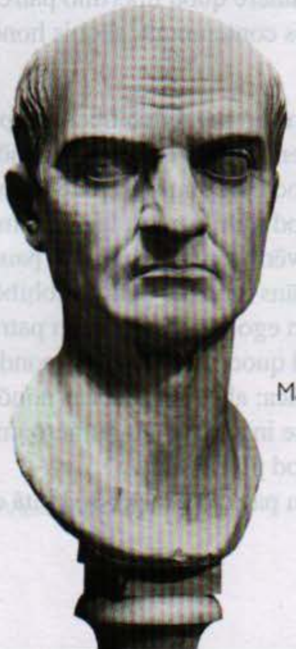
A Roman garden

Caius Cilnius Maecenas was a key figure in the history of these times. He was probably a few years older than Octavian, born into an equestrian family descended from the Etruscan king Lars Porsinna.

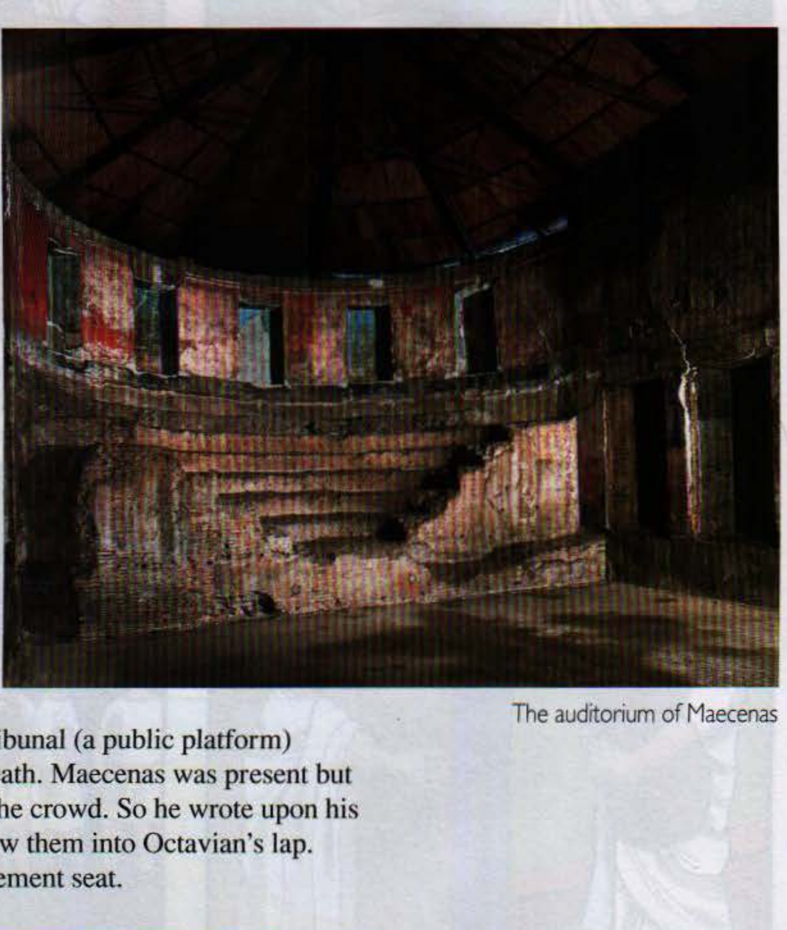
We have no idea how he came to know Octavian. He must have become his trusted friend by 40 BC, for in that year Octavian asked him to negotiate his first marriage, to Scribonia, sister-in-law of the piratical Sextus Pompeius.

Maecenas showed his diplomatic skills in the same year when he helped to bring about the Peace of Brundisium between Antony and Octavian (see background section to chapter 38) and continued to act as a diplomat on Octavian's behalf throughout the next decade. As you will see in the next chapter, he again tried to bring about peace between Octavian and Antony in 38 BC. Horace says that it was his custom to reconcile quarrelling friends.

But it was not just in personal relationships that he proved helpful to Octavian. He was a shrewd statesman and a resolute leader, and when Octavian went abroad, he left Maecenas behind as his substitute to administer not only Rome but the whole of Italy. He performed this task well. Octavian valued his advice highly, and it is said that it was Maecenas who advised him not to restore the republic but to keep power in his own hands. Maecenas had learned the lesson that the republic could no longer exist without the constant danger of civil war.


Maecenas

The services to Octavian which we have mentioned make it clear that he was a remarkable man. And yet it is not for these reasons that his name is still so famous. When we call someone a 'Maecenas', we mean he is a great patron of the arts, and that Maecenas undoubtedly was. He gathered around himself some of the most talented poets the world has ever known. He encouraged and fostered the genius of such men as Virgil and Horace, and helped to bring out their gifts, but he also tactfully persuaded them to write in support of Octavian and to suggest that he was bringing a new Golden Age to Rome.



The auditorium of Maecenas

Octavian too was very interested in literature. He was a friend of the poets of Maecenas' circle, he carefully wrote out his own speeches and letters, and he produced many works in prose and some in verse. He frequently attended poetry readings.

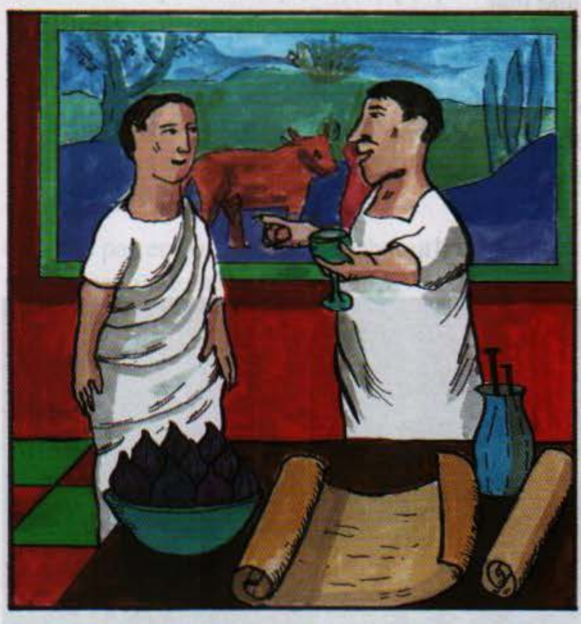
Maecenas was an extremely wealthy man. He had a splendid house high on the Esquiline hill. His tastes were wildly extravagant. He delighted in silks, gems and perfumes – and good food: he tried to introduce the flesh of young donkeys onto Roman menus! He loved the theatre and the ballet, wrote bad verses and introduced heated swimming baths to Rome.

His civilizing influence was remarkable. The story goes that Octavian was once sitting on the tribunal (a public platform) sentencing numbers of people to death. Maecenas was present but could not get near him because of the crowd. So he wrote upon his tablets, 'Get up, you killer' and threw them into Octavian's lap. Octavian immediately left the judgement seat.

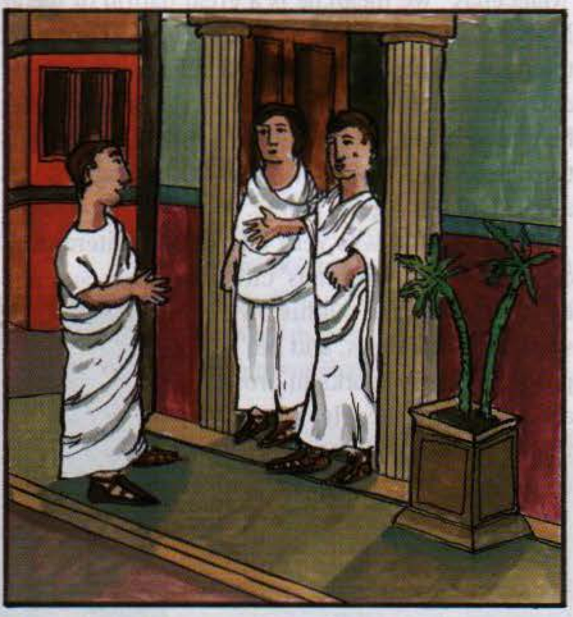
Octavian started work on a tragedy about the Greek hero Ajax, who committed suicide by falling on his sword. When asked how he was getting on with the play, he replied, 'Ajax has wiped himself out on my sponge.' What do you think he meant by that?

Maecenas has been called Octavian's Minister of Propaganda. What do you understand by 'propaganda', and do you think Maecenas deserved the title?

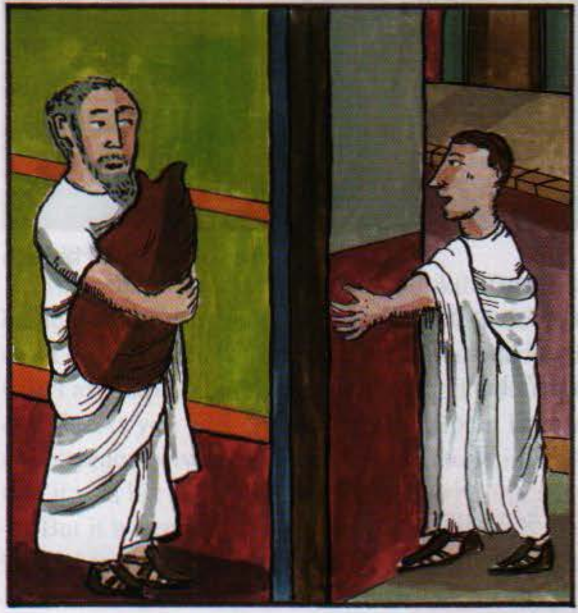
Chapter 44 Quintus iter Brundisium facit



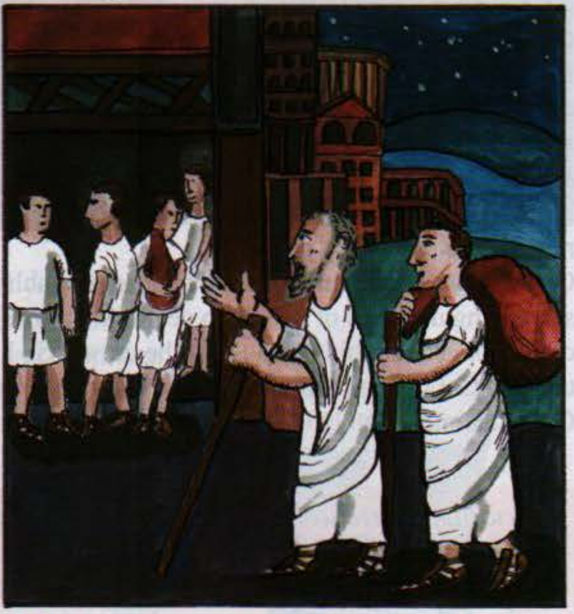
Maecēnās Quīntum rogāvit num iter Brundisium sēcum facere vellet. 'sī festīnābis,' inquit, 'cum Vergiliō proficīscī poteris.'



Quīntus cognōvit Vergilium iam Brundisium profectum esse. sī mātūrius (*earlier*) vēnisset, iter cum Vergiliō fēcisset.



Quīntus Hēliodōrō dīxit, 'nē hodiē proficīscāmur. sī crās profectī erimus, Arīciam merīdiē adveniēmus.'



Arīciam vespere advēnērunt. sī celerius contendissent, merīdiē eō advēnissent.

Notice that in the conditional clauses of captions 1 and 3 the *indicative* is used, in those of captions 2 and 4 the *subjunctive*; how does this affect the meaning of these sentences?

Vocabulary 44

verbs

cantō, cantāre	I sing (of)
careō, carēre, caruī + abl.	I lack, am without
āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum	I turn aside
discurrō, discurrere, discurrī, discursum	I run this way and that
revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum	I turn back
revertor, revertī, reversus sum	I return
comitor, comitārī, comitātus sum	I accompany

nouns

auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.	influence, authority
imber, imbris, m.	rain
mēns, mentis, f.	mind
Oriēns, Orientis, m.	the East
nīl = nihil	

adjective

absēns, absentis	absent

adverb

quidem	indeed (emphasizing previous word)

conjunction

namque = nam

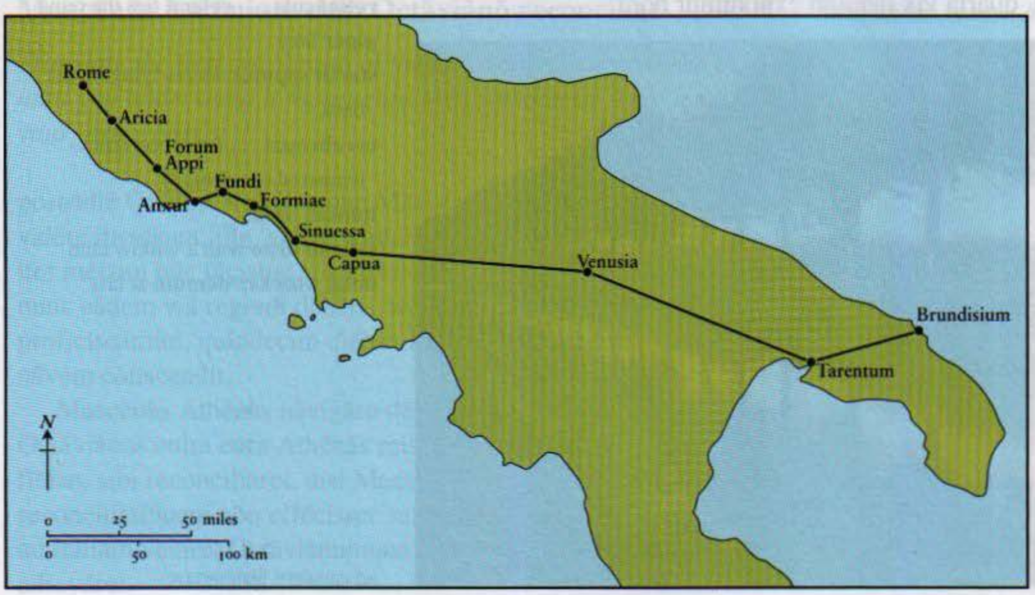
Quīntus iter Brundisium facit

diē quōdam Maecēnās Quīntō arcessītō dīxit, 'ego iter facere dēbeō Brundisium. vīsne tū mē comitārī? Vergilius aderit aliīque amīcī. sī tū statim proficīsceris cum Vergiliō, ego vōbīs Anxure occurram. nam tot negōtiīs occupātus sum ut hodiē proficīscī nōn possim.'

Anxure at Anxur (see map)

Quīntus ad Vergiliī aedēs festīnāvit sed cum advēnisset, cognōvit eum aliīs cum amīcīs iam profectum esse. ad Hēliodōrum igitur prōcessit; cognōverat enim eum quoque iter factūrum esse. sed nisi festīnāvisset, sērō advēnisset; namque Hēliodōrum invēnit

sērō too late



iter Brundisium

iam profectūrum. 'Hēliodōre,' inquit; 'paene merīdiēs est. sī statim discēdāmus, nōn longē ante noctem prōgrediāmur. sī crās māne profectī erimus, Arīciam merīdiē adveniēmus.' cōnstituērunt igitur posterō diē proficīscī.

Rōmā igitur māne ēgressī Arīciam contendērunt noctemque in hospitiō modicō mānsērunt. postrīdiē, cum Forum Appī advēnissent, viās invēnērunt nautīs differtās. Hēliodōrus 'cūr tot nautae' inquit 'hūc illūc discurrunt? quid faciunt?' Quīntus 'sine dubiō' inquit 'illī nautae lintrēs regunt per canālem.' ille 'quid dīcis, Quīnte?' inquit; 'ubi est ille canālis? ego valdē fessus sum. sī pedibus prōcēdēmus, labōre moriar. ad canālem festīnēmus. sī lintrem cōnscendāmus, iter multō facilius faciāmus.' cōnstituērunt igitur lintrem cōnscendere, ut dormīre possent dum mūla lintrem per canālem traheret.

Arīciam . . . Forum Appī see map
hospitiō modicō a modest inn
differtās (+ abl.) packed with
lintrēs barges; **regunt** steer, guide
canālem canal
mūla mule

Horātius ipse iter sīc dēscrībit:

ēgressum magnā mē accēpit Arīcia Rōmā
hospitiō modicō: rhētor comes Hēliodōrus,
Graecōrum longē doctissimus; inde Forum Appī,
differtum nautīs . . . iam nox indūcere terrīs
umbrās et caelō diffundere signa parābat
. . . dum aes exigitur, dum mūla ligātur,
tōta abit hōra. malī culicēs rānaeque palūstrēs
āvertunt somnōs, absentem ut cantat amīcam
multā prōlūtus vappā nauta atque viātor
certātim: tandem fessus dormīre viātor
incipit, ac missae pāstum retinācula mūlae
nauta piger saxō religat stertitque supīnus.
iamque diēs aderat, nīl cum prōcēdere lintrem
sentīmus, dōnec cerebrōsus prōsilit ūnus
ac mūlae nautaeque caput lumbōsque salignō
fuste dolat. quārtā vix dēmum expōnimur hōrā.

inde Forum Appī then (we walked) to Forum Appi
diffundere to scatter
signa the constellations
aes exigitur the fare is collected
ligātur is attached
culicēs mosquitoes
rānae palūstrēs marsh frogs
ut as, while
multā prōlūtus vappā plastered with lots of cheap wine
certātim in rivalry
missae pāstum sent to graze
retinācula . . . religat ties the reins
piger lazy
stertit supīnus snores lying on his back
cerebrōsus . . . ūnus one quick-tempered (passenger)
lumbōs backs
salignō fuste with a willow club
dolat whacks; **dēmum** at last

ad canalem festinemus

Quīntus, cum in terram expositus esset, 'hoc iter lentē quidem cōnfēcimus, Hēliodōre,' inquit, 'sed facile. sī canālis longior esset, ego in lintre māllem prōcēdere quam pedibus. nunc dēbēmus Anxur labōriōsē ascendere.' Anxur, quod in summō colle saxīs candidīs fulgentī situm est, lentē ascendērunt ubi Maecēnātī occurrērunt. inde Sinuessam festīnāvērunt:

lentē quidem slowly indeed

fulgentī shining

postera lūx oritur multō grātissima; namque
Plōtius et Varius Sinuessae Vergiliusque occurrunt.

multō grātissima much the most welcome

longum iter atque labōriōsum eōs adhūc manēbat. modo viīs pessimīs ūtēbantur, modo maximōs imbrēs patiēbantur. Hēliodōrus labōre paene cōnfectus est; sī nōn adiūvisset eum Quīntus, ille itinere dēstitisset. Venusiam praeteriērunt; Quīntus intrāvisset domumque veterem vīsisset, sī nōn cognōvisset colōniam iam advenīs plēnam esse amīcīsque carentem. tandem Brundisium advēnērunt, portum maximum tōtīus Italiae.

dēstitisset (+ abl) he would have given up; **advenīs** incomers, strangers

Respondē Latīnē

1 cūr Quīntus cum Vergiliō nōn profectus est?
2 quis erat Hēliodōrus?
3 quōmodo Quīntus Hēliodōrusque iter fēcērunt ā Forō Appī ad Anxur?
4 quibus occurrit Quīntus Sinuessae?
5 cūr Quīntus Venusiam nōn intrāvit?

The White Rocks, Anxur

Maecēnās Antōnium cum Octāviānō reconciliat

reconciliat reunites, reconciles

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage; read the rest until you understand it thoroughly, then summarize what it says in your own words

postrīdiē Quīntus Vergiliusque Maecēnātem ad portum comitātī valēre iussērunt; ille 'valēte, amīcī,' inquit; 'grātiās vōbīs agō quod iter mēcum hūc fēcistis; sī sōlus iter fēcissem, taediō periissem. nunc eādem viā regredī dēbētis. nōlīte cessāre. sī statim proficīscāminī, quīndecim diēbus Rōmam perveniātis.' haec locūtus nāvem cōnscendit.

taediō from boredom

Maecēnās Athēnās nāvigāre dēbuit ut Antōniō convenīret. Octāviānus enim eum Athēnās mīserat ut Antōnium, quī inimīcus fīēbat, sibi reconciliāret. nisi Maecēnās rem summā arte gessisset, reconciliātiōnem nōn effēcisset. tandem tamen Antōniō persuāsit ut ad Italiam venīret Octāviānumque contrā Sextum Pompēium adiuvāret.

summā arte with the greatest skill

mox tamen Antōnius, ad Orientem reversus, uxōrem suam Octāviam, Octāviānī sorōrem, in Italiam remīsit, Cleopātram, Aegyptī rēgīnam, in Syriam arcessīvit. Octāviānus, sorōre sīc contemptā, tantā īrā commōtus erat ut bellum in Antōnium īnferre cōnstituerit.

dum Antōnius cum Cleopātrā in Aegyptō cessat et rēs pūblicās neglegit, Octāviānus ad bellum sē parābat; tōtum populum Italiae sibi conciliābat atque auctōritātem suam paulātim augēbat. in diēs potentior fīēbat.

conciliābat won over
in diēs day by day

Translate the following sentences

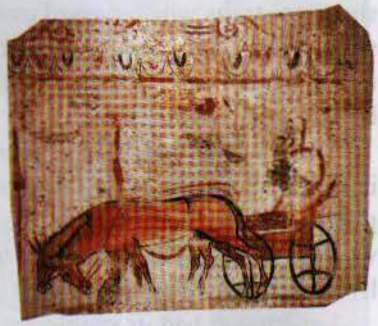
1 sī sōlus iter fēcissem, taediō periissem.
2 sī statim proficīscāminī, quīndecim diēbus Rōmam perveniātis.
3 nisi Maecēnās rem summā arte gessisset, reconciliātiōnem nōn effēcisset.

TRAVEL

Quintus and Heliodorus set off along the queen of roads (*rēgīna viārum*), the Appian Way. This, the first of the great Roman roads, was planned by the blind Appius Claudius in 312 BC. Originally it went from Rome to Capua (132 Roman miles) but fifty or so years later it was extended to Brundisium (a further 234 miles). You can still walk down its first ten miles, passing by many family tombs as you go.

The Appian Way

In Horace's day, a network of major roads led to all parts of Italy. It would soon grow to cover the vast expanse of the empire. Roman legions – and Roman civilization – could move fast. How did the Romans build their roads? First of all they established a course for a section of the road. (In some places each of the sections was a mile long.) Their roads are famous for their straightness, especially in Britain and France. They took sightings from one high place to another or, in wooded or flat country, they lit fires, the smoke from which served as a guide to the surveyors.



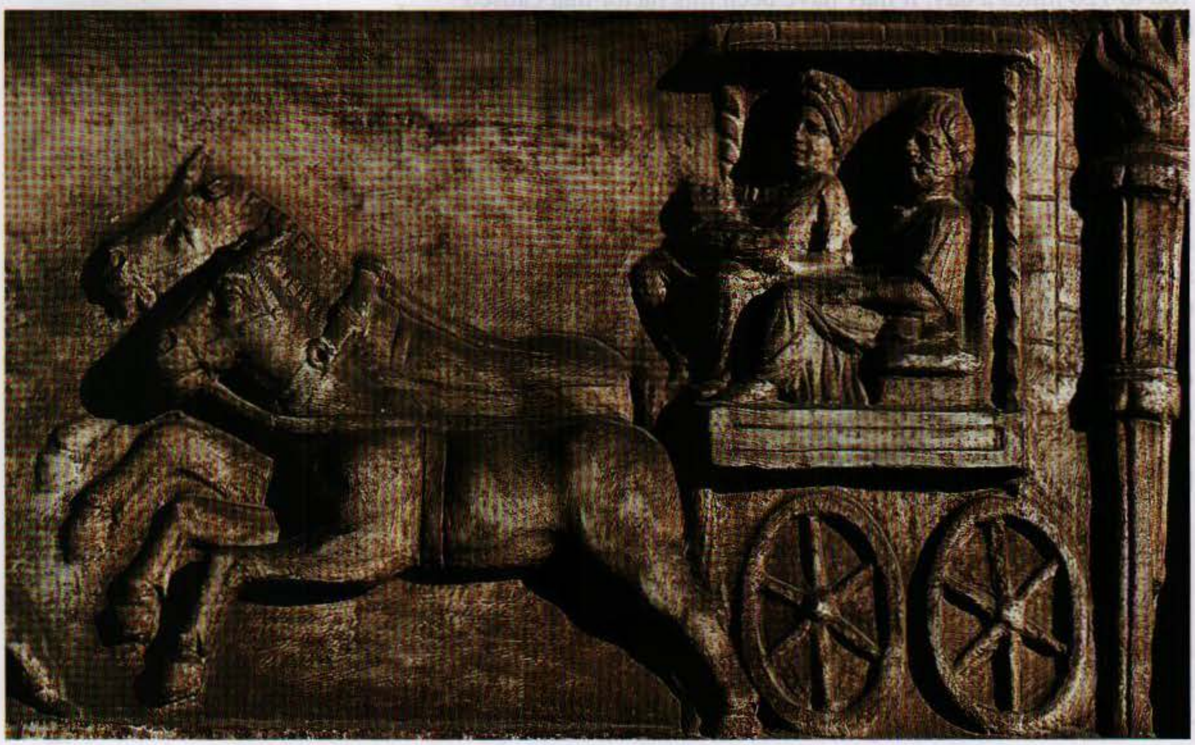
A donkey-drawn vehicle

Once they had marked out the course, they dug a trench about a metre deep. Having beaten the earth hard flat, they crammed large stones together at the bottom. They set a layer of pebbles, sometimes binding them with cement on top of these; above the pebbles they laid sand. The upper layer could now be set on these firm foundations. If the road was not paved with stone, this might consist of gravel or small flints. Much would depend on what material was locally available.

The surfacing was given a fairly steep camber (of up to 30 cm in 240 from the centre of the road to the edge) to assist drainage, and the water would usually run off into ditches dug at both sides. An embankment (*agger*) would be made where necessary, for example if a road had to be raised above a marsh. Roman roads were built to last – and last they did.

There were four ways of travelling by road. You walked. Or you rode a horse or mule. Or you went in a wheeled vehicle. The commonest of these, the four-wheeled *raeda*, was not particularly

A raeda



quick. On his journey to Brundisium, Quintus covered only twenty-four miles on the day when he took one. The *cisium*, a light two-wheeled vehicle drawn by two horses, was not so comfortable but went much faster. If you changed horses, you could try to beat the record of two hundred miles in twenty-four hours.*

The fourth and most comfortable means of tranport was the litter (*lectīca*), a portable couch with curtains carried by up to eight slaves. This was used mostly for short journeys in town. It was slung on straps which passed over the bearers' shoulders. The straps were easily detachable in case you wanted to beat an incompetent bearer! *Lectīcae* were so comfortable that they could be used as ambulances.

There were hotels on the main routes. Quintus had no difficulty in finding a smallish one (*modicum hospitium*) in Aricia. But the grasping hotel keepers whom he tells us he found in Forum Appi were typical of their kind. With any luck a friend of yours would live on or near the road and you could stay the night with him.

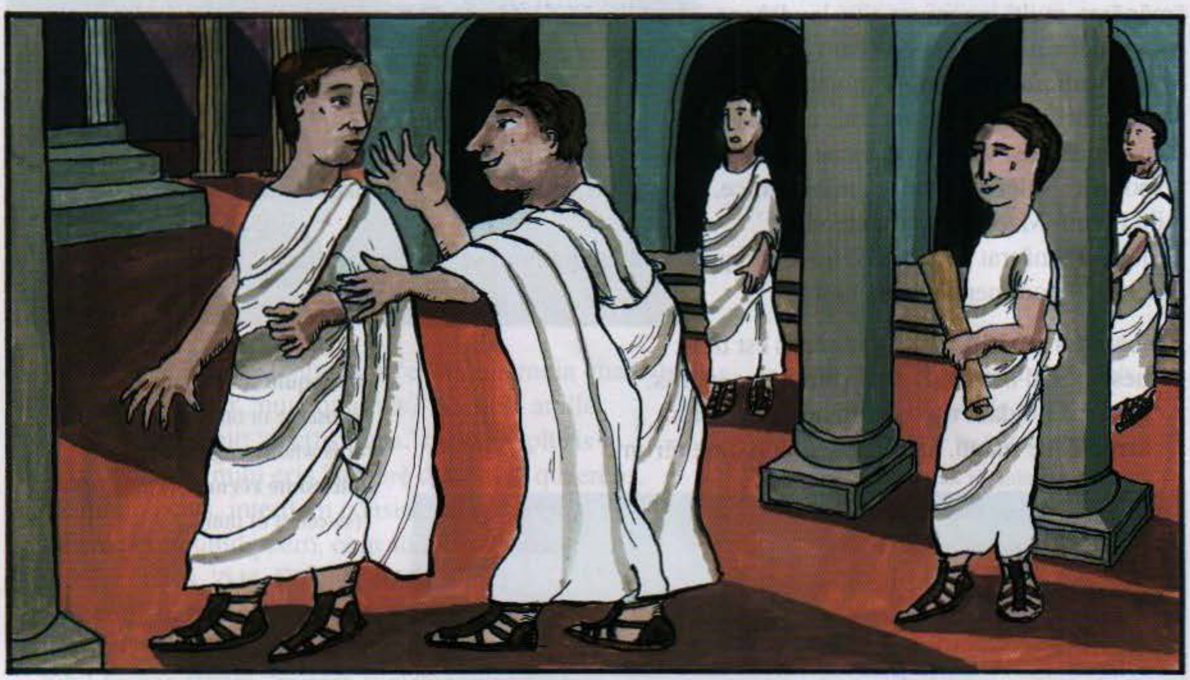
Land travel had its problems, but most Romans preferred it to a sea voyage. For one thing, in most ships it was only safe to sail on the Mediterranean between March and November, and Seneca complains vigorously about being sea-sick. Passengers would go to a harbour and ask if any ship was sailing to their destination or near by. They would have to be prepared to travel on deck since the smaller ships had cabin space only for the captain and his mate. Even if they had to wait for suitable winds before they set sail, once they were on the move they could travel extremely fast, up to 100 to 120 miles a day. It may have been this factor that caused Octavian to travel by sea whenever he could.

The speed of travel did not change much between Roman times and the nineteenth century when the steam engine was invented. You could travel by land no faster than a horse, and the roads in the Roman empire were better than those in Britain until Victorian times. It took Horace just under a fortnight of admittedly rather leisurely travel to get from Rome to Brundisium, a distance of some 340 miles. Now you can do this comfortably in a day. It took Cicero a day and two nights to sail from Corfu in Greece to Brundisium. The hydrofoil now takes three hours. Longer distances were formidable. It took Cicero the better part of three months to get from Rome to his province of Cilicia (southern Turkey). This journey today might take only two or three days by boat and car, or just a few hours by plane.

List the inventions which have made travel so much faster today. Do you think the world has gained or lost by the increasing speed and its consequences?

*A Roman mile is slightly shorter than our mile. It is about 1.5 km while ours is 1.6 km (1760 yards).

Chapter 45 Quintus a molesto quodam vexatur



ībam forte Viā Sacrā . . .

Vocabulary 45

verbs

simulō, simulāre	I pretend
āiō (imperf. **āiēbam**)	I say
omittō, omittere, omīsī, omissum	I let go, neglect
arripiō, arripere, arripuī, arreptum	I snatch up
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum	I snatch away, rescue
meditor, meditārī, meditātus sum	I think about, meditate
persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum	I follow after, pursue

nouns

invidia, -ae, f.	envy, spite, malice
iūdicium, -ī, n.	law-court, judgement
aestās, aestātis, f.	summer
auris, auris, f.	ear
onus, oneris, n.	burden

adjectives

improbus, -a, -um	wicked, immoral, bad
intimus, -a, -um	innermost, closest

adverbs

iamdūdum	long ago
quōcumque	(to) wherever
tantum	only

pronoun

nescioquis, nescioquid	someone/ something or other

conjunction

at	but

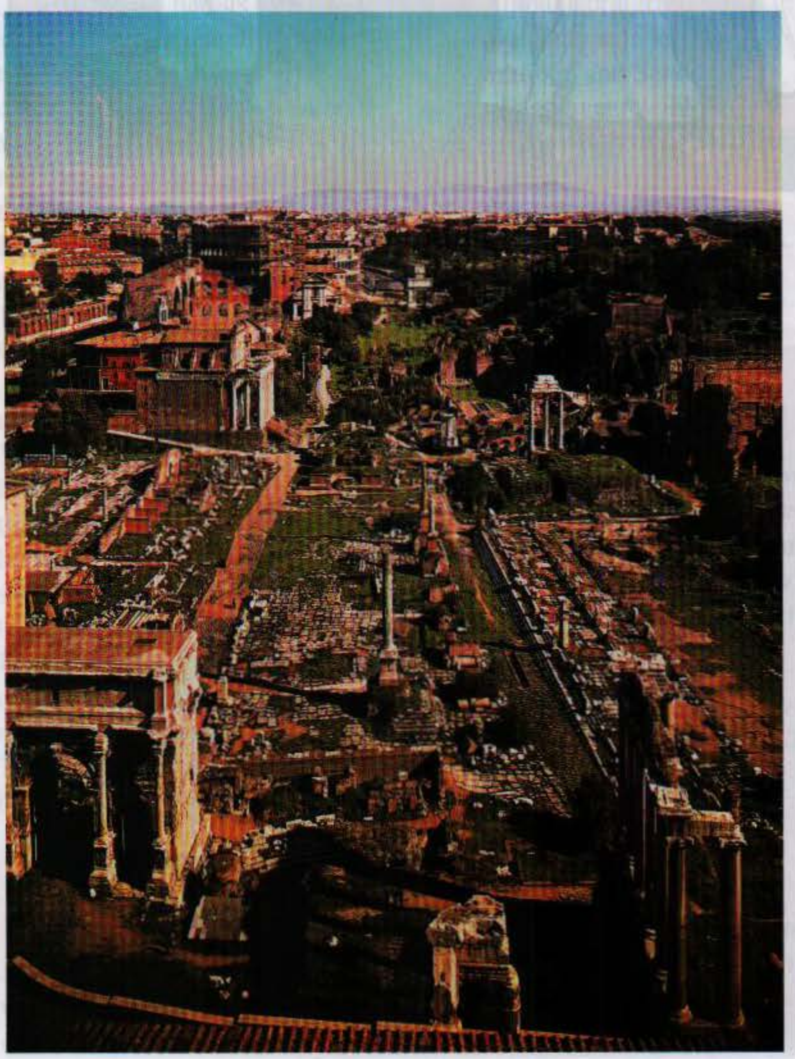
Quīntus ā molestō quōdam vexātur

intereā Quīntus Rōmae habitābat sorte contentus. officia in aerāriō dīligenter perficiēbat. tot carmina iam scrīpserat ut fāma eius lātius ēmānāret. multī ingenium eius laudābant. paucī, invidiā adductī, eum rōdēbant. aliī eum colēbant quod spērābant eum sē adiūtūrum esse. sīc aliquis eī dīceret, 'utinam in numerum amīcōrum Maecēnātis accipiar! tū intimus amīcus es eius. possīs igitur mē eī commendāre, sī velīs. age, vīsne mē ad eum dūcere?' Quīntus respondēre solēbat, 'ignōsce mihi, amīce. nōn ausim hominem vix mihi nōtum Maecēnātī commendāre.'

fābulam nārrat dē molestō quōdam quī spērābat Quīntum sē Maecēnātī commendātūrum esse:

> ībam forte Viā Sacrā, sīcut meus est mōs,
> nescioquid meditāns nūgārum, tōtus in illīs.
> accurrit quīdam nōtus mihi nōmine tantum
> arreptāque manū, 'quid agis, dulcissime rērum?'

molestō a bore
sorte with his lot
ēmānāret spread abroad
rōdēbant carped at him
dīceret might say; **utinam** I wish!
ausim I would dare
nescioquid . . . nūgārum some nonsense or other
tōtus wholly engrossed
dulcissime rērum my dear fellow (sweetest of things)

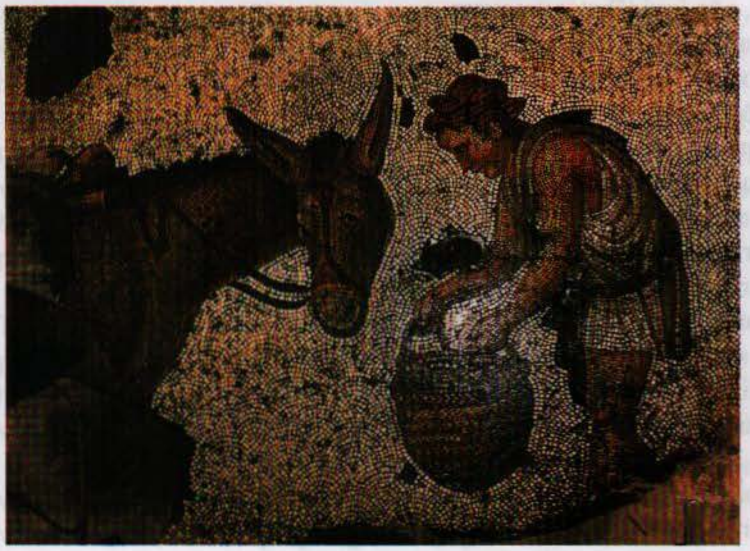


The Via Sacra

trans Tiberim ibo

'suāviter, ut nunc est,' inquam, 'et cupiō omnia quae vīs.'
cum adsectārētur, 'num quid vīs?' occupō. at ille
'nōris nōs,' inquit; 'doctī sumus.' hīc ego, 'plūris
hōc,' inquam, 'mihi eris.' miserē discēdere quaerēns,
īre modo ōcius, interdum cōnsistere, in aurem
dīcere nescioquid puerō, cum sūdor ad īmōs
mānāret tālōs. 'ō tē, Bōlāne, cerēbrī
fēlīcem!' āiēbam tacitus, cum quidlibet ille
garrīret, vīcōs, urbem laudāret. ut illī
nihil respondēbam, 'miserē cupis' inquit 'abīre.
iamdūdum videō; sed nīl agis; usque tenēbō;
persequar hinc quō nunc iter est tibi.' 'nīl opus est tē
circumagī: quendam volo vīsere nōn tibi nōtum:
trāns Tiberim longē cubat is, prope Caesaris hortōs.'
'nīl habeō quod agam et nōn sum piger: usque sequar tē.'
dēmittō auriculās, ut inīquae mentis asellus,
cum gravius dorsō subiit onus.

suāviter, ut nunc est	very nicely at present (pleasantly as it is now)
adsectārētur	he followed
occupō	I break in, interrupt
nōris nōs	(I want you) to get to know me;
hīc	here, at this point
plūris mihi . . . eris	you will be worth more in my eyes
hōc	because of this
īre . . . cōnsistere . . . dīcere	I went . . . I stopped . . . I said
ōcius	more quickly
puerō	to his boy = to his slave
sūdor	sweat
ad īmōs . . . tālōs	to the bottom of my ankles;
mānāret	was flowing
ō tē . . . fēlīcem	O Bolanus, lucky in your quick temper! (Bolanus was a man notorious for his quick temper)
quidlibet . . . garrīret	was talking some nonsense or other
vīcōs	the streets
nīl agis	you're doing nothing = you're getting nowhere
usque	the whole way
circumagī	to be taken out of your way
cubat	he is in bed (sick)
quod agam	to do (which I must do)
piger	lazy
auriculās	my ears
inīquae mentis	bad-tempered (of bad mind)
dorsō subiit	descends on his back



iniquae mentis asellus

molestus ille, sīcut dīxerat, Quīntum usque persequēbātur. Quīntus cōnātus est eum dīmittere sed nīl ēgit. puerō 'utinam molestum hunc dīmittere possim,' inquit, 'sed ille usque mē tenet. quid faciāmus? domum quam prīmum festīnēmus.' deinde ille cōnābātur Quīntō persuādēre ut sē Maecēnātī commendāret. cum Quīntus negāvisset sē hoc facere posse, 'nōn tibi crēdō,' inquit; 'ad eum continuō eāmus. nōlim tālem occāsiōnem omittere.'

eō ipsō tempore Quīntī amīcus quīdam eīs occurrit. Quīntus eum salūtāvit signumque dedit, oculōs distorquēns, ut sē ēriperet; at ille, quī tōtam rem sēnsit, simulāvit sē nōn intellegere; Quīntum valēre iussit; fūgit improbus Quīntumque relīquit in manibus molestī.

nōlim	I wouldn't want
occāsiōnem	opportunity
distorquēns	twisting, rolling

Quīntus ad summam dēspērātiōnem adductus erat, cum molestī adversārius quīdam ad eum accurrit magnāque vōce clāmāvit, 'quō īs, turpissime? venī in iūs.' in iūdicium eum rapuit. Quīntus 'sīc' inquit 'mē servāvit Apollō.'

adversārius	adversary (at law)
turpissime	you villain! (most base person)

Respondē Latīnē

1 quid spērābant multī eōrum quī Quīntum colēbant?
2 cūr Quīntus eōs Maecēnātī commendāre nōlēbat?
3 cum Quīntus amīcō signum dedisset ut sē ēriperet, quid fēcit amīcus ille?
4 quōmodo Quīntus tandem servātus est?

Quīntus urbis strepitum effugere cupit

strepitum	din, racket

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage and answer the questions below on the second

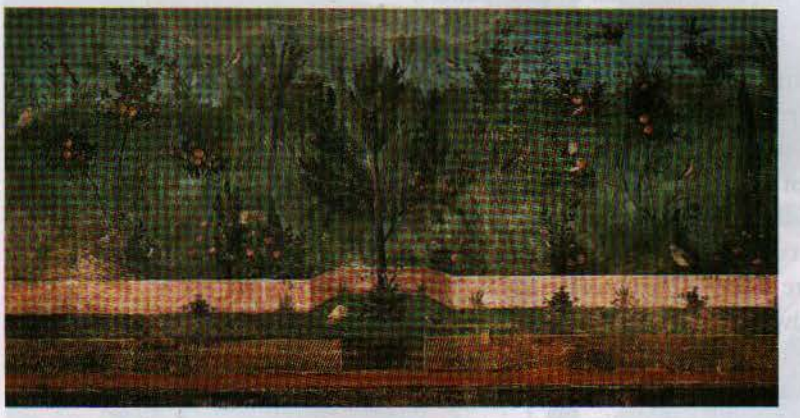
Quīntus, sorte contentus, vītam modestam agēbat. virīs dīvitibus potentibusque, quibus iam amīcus erat, nōn invidēbat. numquam sibi dīcēbat, 'utinam genere nōbilī nātus essem; utinam senātor essem!' nōbilēs enim semper negōtiīs officiīsque obstrictī erant, ipse ōtiō ita ūtēbātur ut carmina compōnere posset cūrīs solūtus. illōs, cum per viās urbis ad negōtium quoddam festīnārent, semper comitābātur turba clientium servōrumque; ipse sōlus incēdēbat quōcumque īre volēbat. nōnnumquam ad tabernās ībat quaerēbatque quantī essent holus ac fār; vespere Circum pererrābat et Forum; adsistēbat dīvīnīs quae fortūnās praedīcēbant. inde domum sē referēbat ad cēnam modestam. deinde ībat dormītum, nōn sollicitus quod crās dēbēbat māne surgere. posterō diē in lectō iacēbat ad quārtam hōram; cum surrēxisset, aliquid aut legēbat aut scrībēbat. 'haec est vīta' inquit 'solūtōrum miserā ambitiōne gravīque.'

obstrictī	tied up in
quantī	how much?
holus ac fār	cabbage(s) and flour
adsistēbat	(+ dat.) he stood by
dīvīnīs	the fortune-tellers
sē referēbat	he returned (took himself back)
dormītum	to bed
solūtōrum	of men free from

sed quamquam contentus erat, strepitū fūmōque urbis saepe vexābātur. saepe sibi dīcēbat, 'utinam in rūris tranquillitāte habitārem! sic carmina facilius compōnere possem.' nōnnumquam

cum vēr adesset, amīcōs vocāvit et 'age,' inquit; 'urbis mē taedet; in agrōs discēdāmus ut vēris amoenitāte fruāmur.' aliās 'calōrēs aestātis' inquit 'ferre nōn possum. quid faciam? velim urbem effugere rūrisque sōlitūdine gaudēre. in collēs festīnābō.'

mē taedet (+ gen.) I'm tired of
amoenitāte beauty
aliās at other times
calōrēs the heat(s)



ruris tranquillitas

1 What spoiled Quintus' content? [3]
2 What did he wish, and why? [4]
3 What did he say to his friends in spring? [3]
4 Why did he want to escape the city in summer? [2]
5 Translate the following phrases and explain the uses of the subjunctive:
   (a) **utinam habitārem!**
   (b) **discēdāmus**
   (c) **quid faciam?**
   (d) **velim effugere** [8]
6 What do you learn about Quintus' character in this chapter? [4]

PATRONS AND CLIENTS

As we saw in chapter 23, a Roman who wanted to move up the social scale had to attach himself to a man of some eminence. He had in fact to become a client (*cliēns*) to a patron (*patrōnus*).

Soon after sunrise, during the first and second hours of the day, the great men of Rome held a *salūtātiō*, a ceremony of greeting when his clients would gather outside their patron's house eager to be admitted. It was not altogether a one-sided affair since the patron would gain prestige from the number of morning callers.

To begin with, the *salūtātiō* had been a meaningful business. The client asked for advice and help from his patron, and the patron planned political manoeuvres and assessed the strength of his backing with his clients. Later, however, it became a matter simply of status, and callers were strictly graded.

Clients would often have to get up before daylight to make their way through the filthy streets to their patron's house. Here they would wait outside, hoping to give enough satisfaction at the *salūtātiō* to receive at least the *sportula*, originally a 'little basket' containing food but now a kind of dole, a gift in money of 25 asses (6¼ sesterces), in the afternoon. They were forced to wear the toga, that expensive form of dress so ludicrously unsuited to the Italian climate. They were received with contempt by slaves whom they often had to bribe, and they might fail even to speak to their patron, as Seneca complains:

> How often will clients find themselves shoved out of the way because a patron is either asleep or amusing himself – or is just plain rude! How many patrons will inflict a long torture of waiting on their clients and then rush past them pretending to be in a great hurry! How many of them will avoid exiting through a hall crammed with clients and run off through a secret back-entrance – as if it were not more offensive to deceive them than to shut them out altogether! How many are still half-asleep with a stupefying hangover after the night before! Their poor clients have broken their own sleep to attend somebody else's, but the patrons can scarcely be bothered to raise their lips in an insolent yawn and only get the name right after it has been whispered to them a thousand times.

If clients did make contact with their patron, they might be expected to escort him to the forum or the baths. And if they were invited to dinner – an invitation, writes Juvenal, that only comes once every two months or more – they were only too likely to be placed apart from their patron and his real friends and served with inferior food and drink: while he has mullet and lamprey, you have eel and pike fed on sewage.

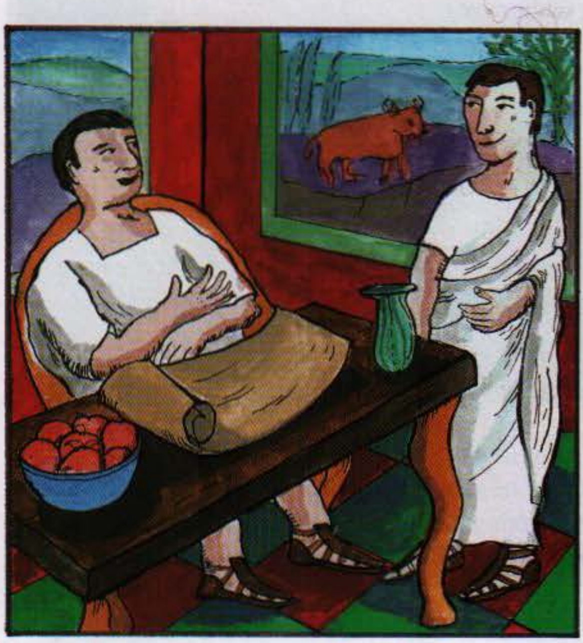
Yet the patron was uneasily aware that his clients did not necessarily have any affection for him as a person. As Seneca writes, 'None of them is interested in you, just in what he can get out of you. It used to be friendship they were after; now it's plunder. If a lonely old man changes his will, next day the callers will make for another address.'

Exactly how widespread this degrading ritual was we cannot know. Much of our evidence comes from the satirical poets Juvenal and Martial, and satirists are in the business of exaggeration. It is hard to believe that Maecenas expected Virgil or Horace to gyrate on this merry-go-round of greetings. Certainly from their perspective of more than a century later, the satirists looked back on Maecenas as a model of what a patron should be. Martial writes, 'If you have a Maecenas, you'll have Virgils too.'

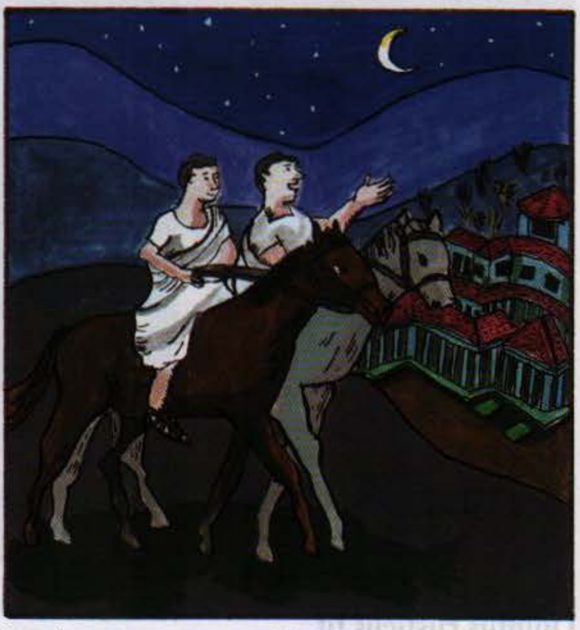
Write an imaginary account of a day in a client's life, making as much use as possible of the information given in this background section and in the chapter as a whole.

Can you think of any good aspects of the patron–client system? Are there any similarities to this system in present-day society?

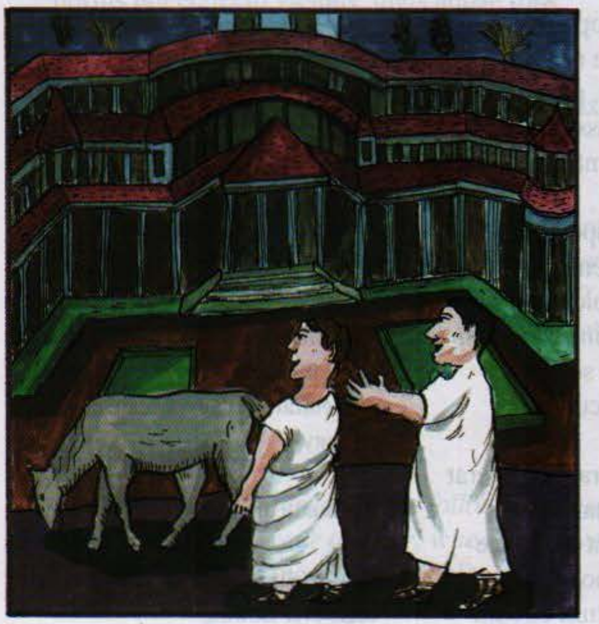
Chapter 46 Quintus rusticus fit



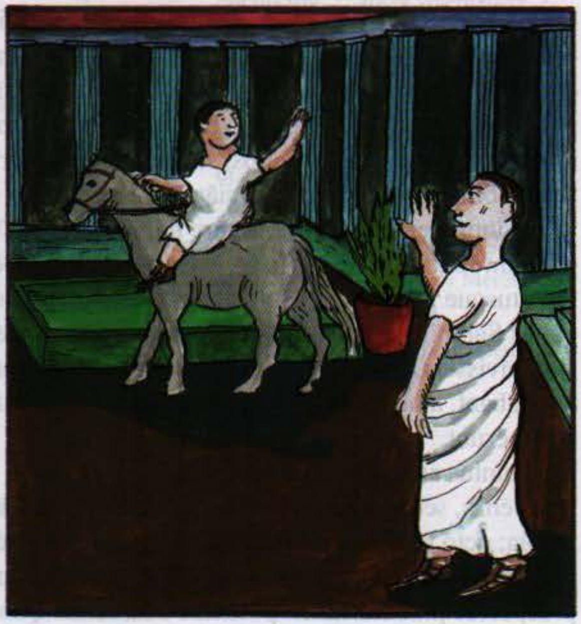
Maecēnās ‘Quīnte,’ inquit, ‘sī crās ōtiōsus eris, venī mēcum ad collēs Sabīnōs.’



nox iam vēnerat cum ad fundum tandem advēnērunt. sī festīnāvissent, ante sōlis occāsum advēnissent.



Maecēnās ‘sī celerius equitāvissēmus,’ inquit, ‘tōtum fundum iam vidēre possēs.’



posterō diē Maecēnās Quīntum valēre iussit; sī ōtiōsus fuisset, cum Quīntō in fundō mānsisset.

Vocabulary 46

verbs	
optō, optāre	I wish for, pray for
mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum	I deserve, earn
possideō, possidēre, possēdī, possessum	I possess
fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum	I flow
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum	I offer
nouns	
fundus, -ī, m.	farm
taurus, -ī, m.	bull, ox
vōtum, -ī, n.	vow, prayer
frīgus, frīgoris, n.	cold
mūnus, mūneris, n.	gift
pecus, pecoris, n.	herd, flock
seges, segetis, f.	corn crop

adjectives	
amplus, -a, -um	large
vīcīnus, -a, -um	near, neighbouring
fīdēlis, fīdēle	faithful, loyal
lēnis, lēne	gentle
adverbs	
aliquamdiū	for some time
simul	together
preposition	
circā + acc.	around, about

Quīntus rūsticus fit

paucīs post mēnsibus Maecēnās Quīntum arcessīvit. Quīntus, cum advēnisset, in tablīnum ductus est. Maecēnās sōlus erat. surrēxit eīque arrīsit. 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'tē arcessīvī quod dōnum quoddam tibi offerre velim. iam poēta īnsignis factus es. tibi opus est ōtiō, ut carmina compōnere possīs fūmō strepitūque Rōmae remōtus. sī domicilium rūre possideās, tranquillitāte fruī possīs. parvum fundum igitur tibi dōnāre cōnstituī. trīgintā mīlia passuum urbe abest, in collibus Sabīnīs situs. sī crās revēneris prīmā hōra, eō simul ībimus ut fundum īnspiciāmus.'

Quīntus semper optāverat rūre habitāre sed vix spērābat sē unquam fundum possessūrum esse. postrīdiē Maecēnās Quīntusque prīmā hōrā profectī sunt ut fundum īnspicerent. in collēs Sabīnōs prōgressī, tandem vallem Dīgentiae iniērunt et sī festīnāvissent, ante noctem ad fundum advēnissent. sed lentē equitābant, amoenitāte rūris gāvīsī. nox iam aderat cum advēnērunt.

Quīntus attonitus erat; nam nōn fundus parvus erat, ut dīxerat Maecēnās, sed rūs modicum. in latere collis vīlla sita est satis ampla; octō servī aderant quī Quīntum cūrātūrī erant agrōsque cultūrī. tēctō vīcīnus erat fōns aquae iūgis. locus amoenus erat, prōspectus pulcherrimus. postrīdiē Maecēnās Quīntum circum omnia dūxit, gāvīsus eum adeō dēlectātum esse.

dēnique 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'sī ōtiōsus essem, hīc manērem tēcum, sed negōtiīs tam occupātus sum ut crās Rōmam redīre dēbeam. tibi autem licet, sī vīs, hīc manēre.' ille adeō dēlectātus erat ut vix fārī

domicilium	a house
Dīgentiae	of the river Digentia (where the villa lay)
amoenitāte . . . gāvīsī	rejoicing in the beauty
rūs modicum	a little estate
tēctō vīcīnus	near to the house
iūgis	ever-flowing
prōspectus	the view
tibi . . . licet	you may

Horace's Sabine farm

posset. 'amīce cārissime,' inquit, 'numquam poterō tibi grātiās dignās reddere. mihi dedistī id quod maximē optāvī.' Maecēnās eī arrīsit; 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'omnia haec bene meruistī; amīcus fīdēlis es ac modestus. nisi tē Rōmae retinēre cupīvissem, fundum tibi iamdūdum dedissem.'

posterō diē Quīntus, cum Maecēnātem valēre iussisset, omnia iterum īnspexit; hortum ingressus sub arbore sēdit et hōs versūs composuit:

hoc erat in vōtīs: modus agrī nōn ita magnus,
hortus ubi et, tectō vīcīnus, iūgis aquae fōns
et paulum silvae super hīs foret. auctius atque
dī melius fēcēre. bene est. nīl amplius ōrō,
Māiā nāte, nisi ut propria haec mihi mūnera fāxīs.

modus agrī plot of land
hortus ubi . . . foret where there would be a garden
iūgis aquae of ever-flowing water
paulum silvae a little (of) woodland
auctius more generously
dī = deī (subject of **fēcēre = fēcērunt**)
nīl amplius nothing more
Māiā nāte son of Maia = Mercury, god of good luck
propria my own, i.e. permanent
fāxīs = faciās

Respondē Latīnē

1. cūr Maecēnās cōnstituit fundum Quīntō dōnāre?
2. cum ad fundum advēnissent, cūr attonitus erat Quīntus?
3. cūr dēbuit Maecēnās Rōmam statim redīre?
4. cum Quīntus Maecēnātī grātiās redderet, quid respondit Maecēnās?

Fōns Bandusiae

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage. Study the poem with the help of your teacher; when you have thoroughly understood it, answer the questions below

Quīntus surrēxit; vīlicum vocāvit et 'sī ōtiōsus es,' inquit, 'velim fundum īnspicere.' ille eum dūxit prīmum ad vīnētum, deinde ad olīvētum. dēnique, cum servōs aliquamdiū spectāvissent segetēs metentēs, collem ascendērunt ad fontem. gelida aqua, splendidior

vīlicum farm manager
vīnētum vineyard
olīvētum olive grove
metentēs reaping; **gelida** cold

fons Bandusiae

vitrō, ē cavīs saxīs dēsiliēbat in lacūnam, unde rīvus lēnī murmure in vallem fluēbat. super fontem erat īlex alta quae umbram grātam praebēbat et hominibus et pecoribus. hōc locō Quīntus valdē dēlectātus est. ad vīlicum versus, 'quam amoenus est hic locus!' inquit; 'quod nōmen est huic fontī?' ille 'nōmen fontī' inquit 'est Bandusia. placetne tibi?' Quīntus 'mihi valdē placet. hīc paulīsper manēbō.'

Quīntus in rīpā sedet; aquam spectat in lacūnam dēsilientem caprōsque in umbrā īlicis iacentēs dum haedī in grāmine lūdunt. amoenitāte locī excitātus, hoc carmen compōnit:

ō fōns Bandusiae, splendidior vitrō,
dulcī digne merō nōn sine flōribus,
crās dōnāberis haedō,
cui frōns turgida cornibus

prīmīs et Venerem et proelia dēstinat;
frūstrā: nam gelidōs īnficiet tibi
rubrō sanguine rīvōs
lascīvī subolēs gregis.

tē flagrantis atrōx hōra Canīculae
nescit tangere, tū frīgus amābile
fessīs vōmere taurīs
praebēs et pecorī vagō.

fīēs nōbilium tū quoque fontium,
mē dīcente cavīs impositam īlicem
saxīs, unde loquācēs
lymphae dēsiliunt tuae.

splendidior vitrō more sparkling than glass; **cavīs** hollow
dēsiliēbat was leaping down
lacūnam pool; **rīvus** stream
īlex (f.) holm oak
quam amoenus how delightful!
caprōs goats; **haedī** kids
crās tomorrow (when there will be a festival in honour of the spring; springs were sacred)
dōnāberis you will be presented with, offered
cui . . . prīmīs whose forehead, swelling with its first horns
et Venerem . . . dēstinat marks him out for both love and battles = battles of love (goats were notoriously lustful)
īnficiet will stain; **rubrō** red
lascīvī subolēs gregis the child of the playful herd
tē . . . tū . . . tū Horace invokes the spring
flagrantis . . . Canīculae the cruel hour of of the burning Dogstar (the Dogstar rose in late July)
nescit tangere knows not how to touch = cannot touch
amābile welcome to
fessīs vōmere worn out by (tired from) the plough
pecorī vagō the wandering herd
nōbilium . . . fontium (one of) the famous springs
loquācēs chattering
lymphae water(s)

1 Describe in your own words the scene Quintus is watching as he composes this poem.
2 What offerings will the spring be given at tomorrow's festival?
3 **frūstrā:** what is the effect of this word in this position?
4 The water is described as **splendidior vitrō** (line 15); what is going to happen to it tomorrow?
5 What seems to be Horace's attitude to the kid?
6 Why was the shade **amābile** to oxen and herds?
7 Horace says the **fōns Bandusiae** will become one of the famous springs (like Castalia, for instance); how will this come about?
8 What do you think the poem is about apart from the spring itself? Is it simply a descriptive nature poem or has it some other dimensions?

HOUSES

We have already taken you to an *īnsula*, one of those squalid, overcrowded blocks of flats where most people had to live in Roman cities. Not surprisingly, the rich lived in very different surroundings.

The wealthy Roman's town house became a by-word for luxury, but to begin with its design had been based on the first Roman dwellings. These were humble one-roomed huts with a hole in the middle of the roof to let in the light and let out the smoke. The chief room of the later houses was called the *ātrium*, the black (i.e. sooty) room.

In earlier days the *ātrium* was the centre of a family's life. Here they ate, and the women spun and did their weaving. Here the family strong-box stood, and the *larārium*, the home of the household gods. The *ātrium* roof sloped downwards and inwards to a rectangular hole (the *compluvium*). There was a pool (the *impluvium*) beneath this to catch the rain and supply the household with water. The room would be pleasantly shady and cool. When darkness fell, it was lit by oil lamps, often on tall bronze stands. Charcoal braziers of bronze, iron or terracotta provided the heat when necessary.

This simple form of house developed into the slightly more elaborate arrangement shown in the House of Sallust at Pompeii (see Plan 1). No two Roman houses were quite the same, but this one is fairly characteristic of its time. Soon, however, the spread of Greek ideas transformed the Italian house. A whole new section was added at the back. This consisted of a pillared courtyard (the *peristӯlium*) enclosing a garden and surrounded by further rooms. Olives, lemons, pomegranates, walnuts, chestnuts and vines, as well as large trees and vegetables, grew in the garden, which contained impressive statues (see Plan 2 for a house of this kind).

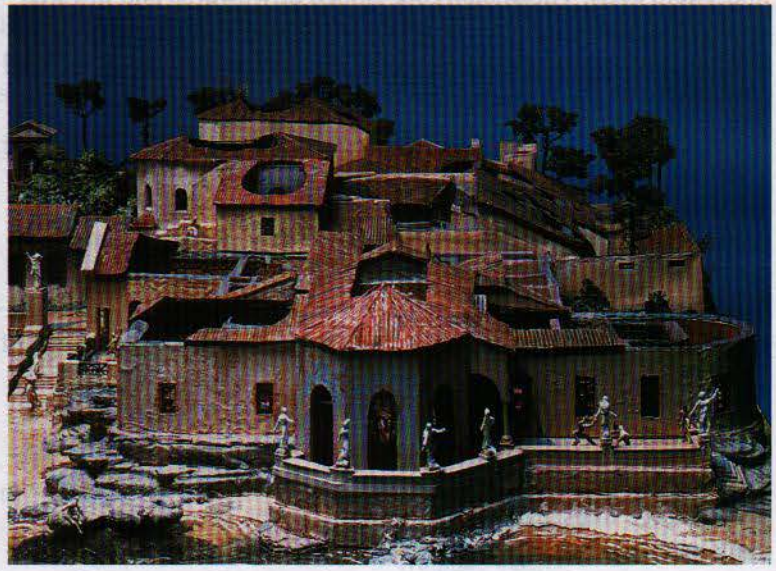
A peristylium

There was also the *tablīnum*, a kind of reception room or study for the master of the house between the *ātrium* and the *peristȳlium*.

The *peristȳlium* area came to be the private part of the house and the statues of the gods moved back here with the family. The *ātrium* became comparatively unimportant and in some country houses ceased to exist altogether.

The outside of Roman houses tended to be dull, even forbidding, since they did not look outwards onto the street but inwards onto their beautiful gardens. But the standard of interior decoration was extremely high, with fine frescoes, stucco and mosaics. (Plan 3 brings together all the usual features of the layout of a Roman house.)

The Romans had a deep love of landscape. The country villas of the extremely rich would break away from the normal pattern, with terraces and garden rooms designed to face outwards towards the view. The seaside pleasure villas around the Bay of Naples, the playground of the rich, were elaborately and extravagantly built to take full advantage of their situation. The luxury villas of the very wealthy, with their beautiful gardens and breathtaking views, were delightful and relaxing. A substantial villa has been excavated which may have been Horace's. It had twelve rooms, including a hall, two dining-rooms and a bath with a hypocaust (underground heating system). The walls still stand up to two feet high in places. It had a walled garden, covering about half an acre, which had a pool in the middle and a colonnade round the sides. The estate supported



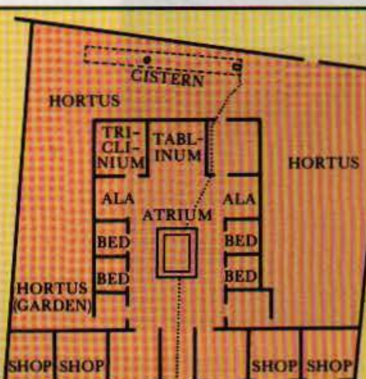
A reconstruction of a luxury villa

five families and the farm was worked by eight slaves under the supervision of a farm manager (*vīlicus*). There is a spring which can be identified with the *fōns Bandusiae*, and a stream.

Most country villas, however, were working farms. When the owner visited from the city, he would have to fit in as well as he could. The *vīlla rūstica* at Boscoreale is characteristic of such buildings (see Plan 4). Here there were wine and oil presses and a threshing floor. The wine was taken from the presses to ferment in great vats (3 on the plan) which were open to the sun and air.

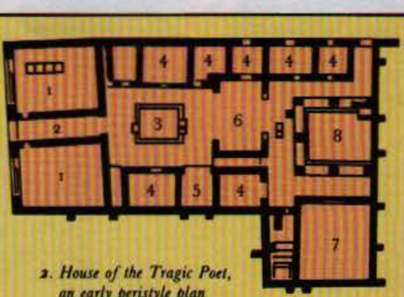
What room is there in the vīlla rūstica *which you would expect to find in a normal house but cannot in our plans?*

Discuss some of the differences between the ways the very rich and the very poor lived in Italy. How far has the situation changed in the modern world? There is no need to limit the discussion to Italy.


CISTERN
HORTUS
TRI-CLI-NIUM
TABL-INUM
HORTUS
ALA
ATRIUM
ALA
BED
BED
BED
BED
HORTUS (GARDEN)
SHOP
SHOP
SHOP
SHOP

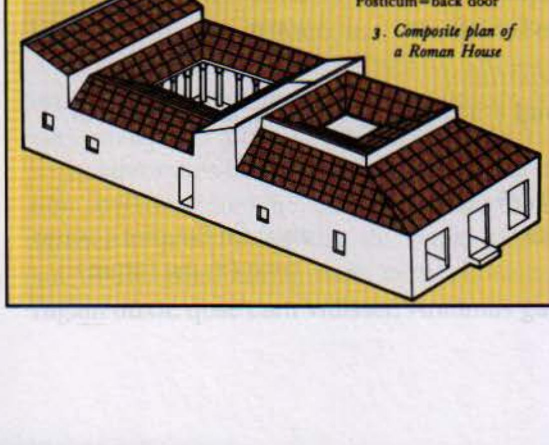
1. House of Sallust, second century BC
(Note the course for the water piping)

Tablīnum = reception room
Triclīnium = dining room
Ala = side-room


1
2
1
3
4
4
4
4
4
6
8
4
5
4
7

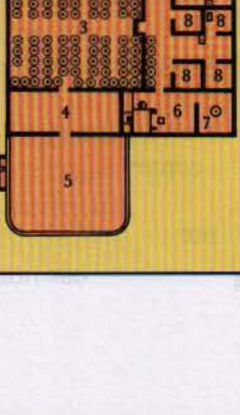
2. House of the Tragic Poet, an early peristyle plan

1 Shops
2 Faucēs (entrance passage)
3 Atrium
4 Bedrooms
5 Ala (side-room)
6 Tablīnum (reception room)
7 Summer dining room
8 Peristȳlium


ALA
GARDEN ROOM
PERISTYLIUM
TABLINUM
A T R-
IMPLUVIUM
I U M
FAUCES
VESTI-BULUM
POSTICUM
ALA

Vestibulum = porch
Posticum = back door

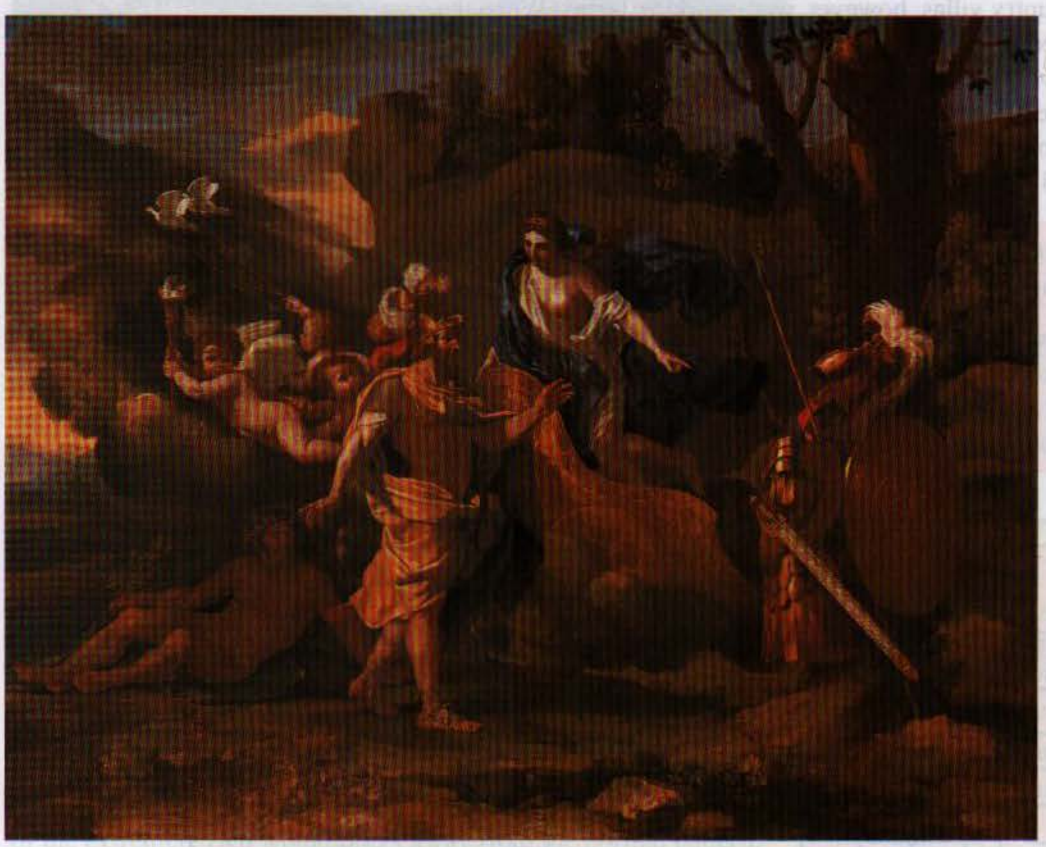
3. Composite plan of a Roman House


14
13
12
11
10
8
8
9
1
1
2
3
8
8
8
8
4
6
7
5

4. Plan of a villa rūstica at Boscoreale

1 Courtyard
2 Wine presses
3 Wine vats
4 Barn
5 Threshing floor
6 Oil press
7 Olive crushing room
8 Bedrooms
9 Kitchen
10–12 Baths
13 Bakery
14 Dining room

Chapter 47 Actium



'Venus, mother of Aeneas, presenting him with arms forged by Vulcan', Nicholas Poussin

Vocabulary 47

verbs	
accūsō, accūsāre	I accuse
collocō, collocāre	I place, position
equitō, equitāre	I ride (a horse)
putō, putāre	I think
obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessum	I besiege
cōnfugiō, cōnfugere, cōnfūgī	I flee for refuge
trāiciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectum	I throw across
dominor, dominārī, dominātus sum + dat.	I am master of, I control
conjunction	
autem	but
nouns	
clēmentia, -ae, f.	mercy, clemency
morbus, -ī, m.	disease
odium, -ī, n.	hatred
classis, classis, f.	fleet
famēs, famis, f.	hunger
mulier, mulieris, f.	woman
scelus, sceleris, n.	crime
fluctus, -ūs, m.	wave
preposition	
apud + acc.	at, in, at the house of, with
adverb	
ōlim	once (in the past); some time (in the future)

Actium

dum Quīntus in fundō Sabīnō quiēscit, rēspūblica in bellum cīvīle iterum rapiēbātur. Octāviānus Antōniusque, cum alter alterum scelerum accūsāret gravissimōrum, plūs odiī inter sē in diēs concipiēbant. tandem Octāviānus ad bellum apertē sē parāvit. tōta Italia in verba eius iurāvit atque eum ducem bellī poposcit. eī senātōrēs quī Antōniō favēbant Rōmā ēgressī ad Antōnium cōnfūgērunt.

cum since; **alter alterum** the one the other, i.e. each other
concipiēbant harboured, felt
in verba eius iurāvit swore allegiance to him

Antōnius autem Octāviam, quam iamdūdum Rōmam remīserat, repudiāvit et Cleopātram uxōrem suam esse prōnūntiāvit. quae cum cognōvissent senātōrēs, statim bellum Cleopātrae indīxērunt.

repudiāvit divorced
indīxērunt declared

Antōnius sine morā plūrimās cōpiās collectās ad Graeciam dūxit ut Octāviānō occurreret. Octāviānus autem, Maecēnāte Rōmae relictō quī Italiam administrāret, Brundisium profectus est cum Agrippā, quī optimus erat ducum suōrum. cum cōpiās trāns mare in Graeciam trāiēcisset, castra apud Actium collocāvit haud procul ab Antōniī castrīs.

trāiēcisset had taken across, transported

Actium

Agrippa, proeliō cum Antōniī classe commissō, hostēs ita vīcit ut marī dominārētur. Antōnius, cum mīlitēs eius terrā marīque obsessī et famē et morbō morerentur, tandem ērumpere coāctus est. legiōnibus ūndēvīgintī in lītore relictīs ut castra dēfenderent, classem ē portū dūxit, Cleopātrā sequente.

ērumpere to break out
ūndēvīgintī nineteen

quattuor diēs tantae tempestātēs erant ut proelium committere nōn possent. quīntō diē, cum mare esset tranquillum, classis utraque ad proelium prōdiit. diū aequō Marte pugnābant, cum subitō Cleopātra nāvem suam vertit classemque Aegyptiam in fugam dūxit. quae cum vīdisset, Antōnius gubernātōrī suō

aequō Marte on equal terms
gubernātōrī helmsman

A Roman warship from Actium

imperāvit ut rēgīnam sequerētur. tantō amōre Cleopātrae ardēbat ut honōrem suum salūtemque suōrum minōris aestimāret quam ūnam mulierem.

dum Antōnius cum Cleopātrā fugit, classis eius cōpiaeque pedestrēs, cum ā duce dēsertī essent, fortiter tamen hostibus restitērunt; sed tandem spē dēpositā Octāviānō sē dēdidērunt. ille captīvōs hūmānē tractāvit. putābat enim neque Antōnium nec Cleopātram sibi diūtius resistere posse; sē tōtum orbem terrārum iam regere. clēmentiam igitur praebuit ita ut omnēs quī sē dēdiderant līberātōs in exercitum suum accēperit.

salūtem suōrum the safety of his men
minōris aestimāret valued less
cōpiae pedestrēs land forces
cum although

hūmānē tractāvit treated humanely

Gods fight alongside Roman soldiers in a sea battle

Respondē Latīnē

1. cūr rēspūblica in bellum cīvīle iterum lābēbātur?
2. cūr senātōrēs bellum Cleopātrae indīxērunt?
3. cūr Antōnius ā proeliō fūgit?
4. quōmodo Octāviānus captīvōs tractāvit?

Vergilius Actium proelium dēscrībit

With the help of your teacher read, understand and translate the following passage

hoc proelium, quō fātum imperiī Rōmānī dēcrētum est, Vergilius in Aenēide sīc dēscrībit:

dēcrētum est was decided

The scene is represented on a magic shield, which Vulcan had made for Aeneas; around this shield was engraved a series of scenes foreshowing the history of Rome, and in the centre the battle of Actium, which decided the fate of the Roman empire.

in mediō classēs aerātās, Actia bella,
cernere erat, tōtumque īnstrūctō Marte vidērēs
fervere Leucātēn aurōque effulgere fluctūs.

classēs aerātās the bronze-beaked fleets (ancient warships had a bronze beak at the bows, which was used for ramming)

hinc Augustus agēns Italōs in proelia Caesar
cum patribus populōque, penātibus et magnīs dīs,
stāns celsā in puppī . . .
parte aliā ventīs et dīs Agrippa secundīs
arduus agmen agēns . . .
hinc ope barbaricā variīsque Antōnius armīs
Aegyptum vīrēsque Orientis et ultima sēcum
Bactra vehit, sequiturque (nefās) Aegyptia coniūnx.
ūnā omnēs ruere . . .

cernere erat	it was possible to see
tōtum . . . Leucātēn	Leucate is the promontory to the south of Actium; Vergil means the whole sea round Actium
īnstrūctō Marte	with warships in formation (literally 'with Mars (= war) drawn up')
vidērēs	you might see
fervere	seething (literally 'to seethe')
effulgere	gleaming
hinc	on this side
Augustus . . . Caesar	Octavian, who later took the name Augustus
cum patribus	with the fathers of the state, i.e. the senators
penātibus et magnīs dīs (= **deīs**)	the native gods of Rome and the great (Olympian) gods
celsā in puppī	on the high poop
arduus	high, i.e. he stands out prominently
agmen agēns	leading his line (of ships)
hinc	on that side
ope barbaricā	with barbarian help, i.e. with the help of barbarians
Aegyptum . . . vehit	carries (= brings) Egypt (= Egyptian forces)
vīrēs Orientis	the strength of the East
ultima . . . Bactra	Bactra is modern Afghanistan; it represents the Far East
(nefās)	what wickedness!
ūnā . . . ruere	are rushing together

Here is Cecil Day Lewis' translation of the passage:

Centrally were displayed two fleets of bronze, engaged in
The battle of Actium; all about Cape Leucas you saw
Brisk movement of naval formations; the sea was a blaze of
gold.
On one side Augustus Caesar, high on the poop, is leading
The Italians into battle, the Senate and People with him,
His home-gods and the great gods.
Elsewhere in the scene is Agrippa – the gods and the winds
fight for him –
Prominent, leading his column . . .
On the other side, with barbaric wealth and motley equipment,
Is Antony . . .
Egypt, the powers of the Orient and uttermost Bactra
Sail with him; also – a shameful thing – his Egyptian wife.
The fleets are converging at full speed.

How does Virgil convey the impression that this battle was the culmination of a righteous war in which Rome defeated the forces of barbarism?

DIVORCE

Antony's divorce of Octavia had shattering historical consequences but was nothing very exceptional in the Roman world. In Horace's lifetime we frequently hear of senators who have married three or four times, and women might have children by a succession of husbands. One Vistilla had six different sons and one daughter by six different fathers. (Four of the sons became consuls while the daughter married an emperor.) At the age of fifty-seven Cicero threw aside Terentia, his wife of twenty-three years, in order to rebuild his finances by marrying the young and rich Publia. Terentia bore this with apparent equanimity. She married again twice and died aged more than a hundred.

Just as it was extremely easy to get married – to live together as man and wife was enough and you did not have to go through the

A Roman wedding scene

elaborate wedding ceremony by which Horatia married Decimus (see Part II, chapter 30) – so it was very straightforward to get divorced. You could leave your partner without discussion or consent. It may have been conventional – and prudent – to give reasons for doing so but there was no legal necessity. When Caesar divorced his wife merely because Publius Clodius had disguised himself as a woman to participate in a religious gathering – the Bona Dea festival, at which she was present – he simply proclaimed, 'Caesar's wife must be above suspicion.' Earlier noblemen had divorced their wives for such frivolous reasons as being seen with a freedwoman, attending the games and even for appearing in public uncovered.

As for possessions, there was no such thing as joint marital property. If a wife was under the *manus* of her husband (*manus* = the power and protection of a male), everything she had was his. But most wives had exclusive rights to their own property, though they normally had to have a male *tūtor* (= guardian) to see to any legal contract that had to be made. By custom the wife would bring a dowry to her husband, but this normally had to be returned in the case of divorce. These factors might have led husbands to think twice about treating their wives too harshly.

In many ways women were disadvantaged in the Roman world. Yet no Roman woman – or man – found themselves under religious or legal constraints to remain together. Traumatic and costly divorce cases in the courts were not necessary. The financial issues were crystal clear. And there were no painful conflicts over custody of the children, who were automatically under their father's control. A woman could simply walk out of her marriage.

Yet, as we have seen, it was equally easy for her husband to tell her to go: *uxor, vāde forās* ('wife, leave the house'). If he did so, she would have to leave behind her marriage and her children. Even so, the Romans, with their remarkable ability for double-think, professed the ideal of fidelity and life-long commitment and, as inscriptions prove to us, many marriages did last till death.

Would you have preferred to have been a wife (or a husband) in the Roman world or today?

'If you were to find your wife in the act of adultery, you could freely kill her without a trial, whereas if you were to commit adultery, she would not dare lift a finger against you, nor would it be right.' What do you think of this statement, addressed to Roman men?

Chapter 48 Bellum Alexandrinum

Cleopātra, verita nē in manūs Octāviānī incideret, mortem sibi cōnscīvit (*inflicted*).

Vocabulary 48

verbs

lateō, latēre, latuī	I lie hidden
comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum	I seize
dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmissum	I send down, let down
īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum + dat.	I become angry
suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum	I suspect

nouns

dolus, -ī, m.	trick
triumphus, -ī, m.	triumph
venēnum, -ī, n.	poison
adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m.	young man
carcer, carceris, m.	prison
dēdecus, dēdecoris, n.	disgrace
serpēns, serpentis, m.	serpent
turris, turris, f.	tower

adjective

captīvus, -a, -um	captive

Bellum Alexandrīnum

Octāviānus, postquam Antōnius cum Cleopātrā in Aegyptum fūgit, eōs lentissimē per Orientem secūtus est. proximō annō dum classis Alexandrīam nāvigat, ipse exercitum per Syriam dūxit in Aegyptum. Antōnius adeō dēspērābat ut nōn cōnātus sit Octāviānō resistere Aegyptum ingredientī. proelia prope Alexandrīam terrā marīque commissa sunt. Antōniī classis mediō in proeliō ad Octāviānum trānsfūgit; in terrā exercitus eius facile victus est.

trānsfūgit deserted

tum dēmum Antōnius timēbat nē, sī in manūs hostium caderet, captīvus Rōmam dūcerētur. armigerō 'utinam moriar' inquit 'antequam tāle dēdecus patiar. sed vereor nē Cleopātra ab hostibus capiātur. ad urbem festīnēmus.' Alexandrīam regressō eī nūntiātum est Cleopātram mortuam esse suā manū. quibus audītīs armigerō suō imperāvit ut sē occīderet. ille autem, adulēscēns fīdēlis, gladiō strictō nōn Antōnium sed sē ipsum occīdit. Antōnius adulēscentem intuitus in terrā iacentem, 'bene fēcistī,' inquit; 'exemplum mihi praebuistī. utinam nē ignāvior sim quam tū.' quō dictō gladium suum strictum in ventrem pepulit.

tum dēmum then at last
eī nūntiātum est it was announced to him
armigerō his armour bearer
gladiō strictō his sword having been drawn
ignāvior more cowardly
ventrem his belly

ad terram cecidit graviter vulnerātus sed nōndum mortuus. dum ibi iacet, accurrit Cleopātrae scrība nūntiāvitque rēgīnam adhūc vīvere. quō cognitō, Antōnius mīlitibus imperāvit ut sē ad Cleopātram ferrent. illa in altā turre sē inclūserat, quam relinquere nōlēbat, verita nē Octāviānō prōderētur. cum mīlitēs eō advēnissent Antōnium ferentēs, servōs iussit fūnēs dē fenestrā dēmittere Antōniumque ad sē tollere. sīc Antōnius in gremiō Cleopātrae mortuus est.

scrība secretary
fūnēs ropes; **fenestrā** window
in gremiō in the lap

eō ipsō tempore nūntius advēnit ab Octāviānō missus quī Cleopātrae persuādēret ut turre relictā sē dēderet. prōmīsit Octāviānus sē eā ūsūrum esse summā hūmānitāte. illa autem eī nōn crēdidit nec voluit turrem relinquere. timēbat enim nē Octāviānus vellet sē captīvam per viās Rōmae dūcere, cum triumphum ageret; quod dēdecus ferre nōn poterat.

quī . . . persuādēret to persuade
hūmānitāte kindness, humanity

Respondē Latīnē

1 cum Antōnius in proeliō victus esset, quid timēbat?
2 cum Antōnius armigerō imperāvisset ut sē occīderet, quid fēcit ille?
3 Antōniō vulnerātō, quid nūntiāvit scrība Cleopātrae?
4 quōmodo Antōnius ad Cleopātram lātus est?
5 cūr nōlēbat Cleopātra turrem relinquere?

Mors Cleopātrae

Translate the first two paragraphs of the following passage; study the verse with the help of your teacher

Octāviānus, cum urbem Alexandrīam cēpisset, iterum cōnātus est

Cleopātrae persuādēre ut sē dēderet. cum Cleopātra nōluisset turrem relinquere, dolō eam cēpit. nam dum Cleopātra cum nūntiō ab Octāviānō missō colloquitur, duōs hominēs mīsit quī in turrem ascenderent; quī scālā ad turrem admōtā per fenestram perrūpērunt Cleopātramque comprehendērunt.

dolō by a trick

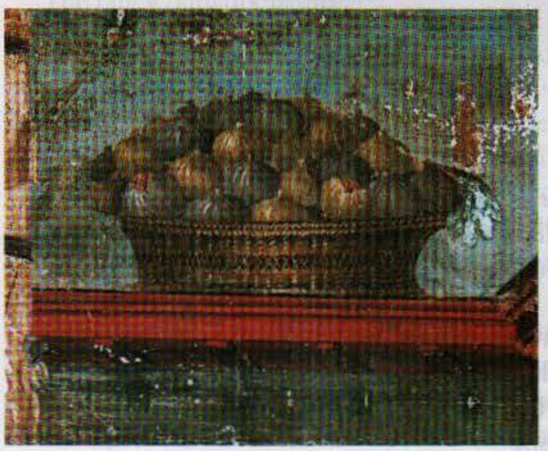
scālā ladder; **fenestram** window

Octāviānus Cleopātram captam summā dīligentiā custōdiēbat veritus nē sē occīderet. illa tamen viam mortis invēnit. senex quīdam carcerem ingressus custōdēs rogāvit ut sē ad rēgīnam admitterent; dīxit sē dōnum aliquod Cleopātrae dare velle; eīs ostendit calathum fīcīs plēnum iussitque eōs fīcōs gustāre. illī, nihil suspicātī, senem ad rēgīnam admīsērunt. Cleopātra dōnō acceptō senem dīmīsit.

viam mortis a way to death

calathum basket; **fīcīs** figs

gustāre to taste



cum sōla esset, calathum dīligenter īnspexit; sub fīcīs latēbant duo parvī serpentēs. omnibus praeter duōs ancillās fīdēlēs dīmissīs, vestīmenta pulcherrima induit omniaque īnsignia rēgālia. deinde serpentēs ē calathō sublātōs ad pectora applicuit. venēnum in corpus celeriter imbibit. sīc mortua est ultima rēgīna Aegyptī, mulier et fōrmā pulcherrimā et animō superbō.

praeter (+ acc.) except

ancillās servants

īnsignia rēgālia royal insignia

applicuit applied to

imbibit imbibed, absorbed

Horace wrote an ode on the death of Cleopatra which begins as a song of triumph in which he calls his fellow Romans to drink and feast in celebration; but it ends in the following lines, expressing admiration for her pride and courage

. . . quae generōsius
perīre quaerēns nec muliebriter
expāvit ēnsem nec latentēs
classe citā reparāvit ōrās;

ausa et iacentem vīsere rēgiam
vultū serēnō, fortis et asperās
tractāre serpentēs, ut ātrum
corpore combiberet venēnum,

quae i.e. Cleopatra

generōsius more nobly

muliebriter like a woman

expāvit feared, trembled at

ēnsem sword; **latentēs** hidden, secret

citā swift; **reparāvit** sped to

ausa supply **est**; **et** even

rēgiam her palace

fortis . . . tractāre brave to handle, i.e. she had the courage to handle

ātrum black; **asperās** savage

combiberet drank down

dēlīberātā morte ferōcior,
saevīs Liburnīs scīlicet invidēns
  prīvāta dēdūcī superbō
    nōn humilis mulier triumphō.

dēlīberātā morte ferōcior	fiercer as she had planned her death
saevīs Liburnīs . . . invidēns . . . dēdūcī	begrudging the fierce Liburnian galleys that she should be led (the swift Liburnian galleys had been responsible for Octavian's victory at Actium; Cleopatra did not intend that they should have the additional satisfaction of capturing her so that she would form part of Octavian's triumphal procession)
scīlicet	surely
prīvāta	deprived (of her status as a queen)
nōn humilis	not humble = extremely proud

AEGYPT
CAPTA

A coin commemorating the capture of Egypt by Octavian

CLEOPATRA

Cleopatra was born in 69 BC. She was to be the last ruler of Egypt descended from Alexander's general Ptolemy. She was lively, charming, intelligent, civilized and a brilliant linguist. Such a combination of qualities proved irresistible.

When she was fourteen, her elder sister seized the throne of Egypt from her father. The Roman army regained it for him, the sister was executed and Cleopatra was now joint heir to the kingdom. When she was seventeen, her father died and she succeeded to his throne together with her brother Ptolemy, who was only ten. They were forced to marry, following their family's custom, but they heartily detested each other. Cleopatra's brother's supporters drove her out of Egypt three years later.

She fled to Syria, gathered an army and returned to Egypt to regain her kingdom. Ptolemy's advisers made a bid for the good will of Julius Caesar, but when Caesar arrived in Alexandria, he quarrelled with them. He soon found himself besieged in the palace by the angry mob. Meanwhile Cleopatra, who wished to put her case to him in person, had herself smuggled to him rolled up in a carpet. Caesar was captivated by the enchanting queen who crawled from the bundle at his feet. They became lovers, he gave her back the throne of Egypt, and before long she bore him a child, known as Caesarion.

The next year (46 BC) Caesar, now back in Rome, summoned Cleopatra and Caesarion to the city and installed them in a villa near the Tiber. He went so far as to have a golden statue of her set up in the temple of Venus. But he did not divorce his wife, and when he was assassinated in 44 BC, Cleopatra found herself without a friend in Rome. She returned to Egypt.

Then in 41 BC Mark Antony called her to meet him at Tarsus (in Cilicia in modern Turkey). It was a fateful occasion, and

Shakespeare describes the magic of Cleopatra as she arrived on her elaborate barge:

> The barge she sat in, like a burnish'd throne,
> Burn'd on the water; the poop was beaten gold,
> Purple the sails, and so perfumed, that
> The winds were love-sick with them; the oars were silver,
> Which to the tune of flutes kept stroke, and made
> The water which they beat to follow faster,
> As amorous of their strokes. For her own person,
> It beggar'd all description; she did lie
> In her pavilion – cloth-of-gold of tissue –,
> O'er-picturing that Venus where we see
> The fancy outwork nature.

Cleopatra

Once again Cleopatra must have felt herself close to real political power. She soon became Antony's mistress and they passed the winter in a round of wild parties and lively pranks. She bore him twins, but it is impossible to say how deep their feelings were for each other at this stage. As we have seen, Antony returned to Italy in 40 BC and married Octavian's sister. Cleopatra did not see him again for nearly four years.

However, in 37 BC Antony abandoned Octavia and renewed his affair with Cleopatra. He was certainly now passionately in love with her. They conducted a marriage ceremony – which had no validity under Roman law – and soon had a third child.

Antony, under the spell of Cleopatra, declared her and her son by Caesar not only rulers of Egypt and Cyprus but 'Queen of Queens' and 'King of Kings'. This may not have meant very much, but Octavian was quick to seize on such un-Roman acts as useful propaganda. Antony, he declared, was 'bewitched by that accursed Egyptian' and wanted to move the capital of the empire from Rome to Alexandria.

Public opinion in Italy rallied behind Octavian and late in 32 BC he declared war on Cleopatra. You have read the rest of the story earlier in Latin. Cleopatra died on 10 August at the age of thirty-nine. Octavian killed Caesarion. It was not safe to allow a possible rival to live.

It has been said that if Cleopatra's nose had been shorter, the whole history of the world would have been different. What do you think this means?

Many people have thought that Antony threw away supreme power over the Roman world because of his love for Cleopatra. If this is true, do you feel that he made the right choice?

Chapter 49 Caesar Augustus

Caesar Augustus

Augustus as priest

Vocabulary 49

verbs	
cōnfirmō, cōnfirmāre	I strengthen, encourage
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum	I destroy
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum	I yield, give way to
restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtum	I restore
adiciō, adicere, adiēcī, adiectum	I add to
minor, minārī, minātus sum + dat.	I threaten
assequor, assequī, assecūtus sum	I pursue, catch up, attain

impersonal verbs (see Grammar)	
mē iuvat, iuvāre, iūvit (+ inf.)	it delights me = I like to
mihi licet, licēre, licuit (+ inf.)	it is allowed to me = I may
mē oportet, oportēre, oportuit (+ inf.)	it behoves me = I ought to
mihi placet, placēre, placuit (+ inf.)	it is pleasing to me = I decide
mē taedet, taedēre, taeduit (+ gen.)	it wearies me = I am tired of
mihi accidit, accidere, accidit (+ **ut**)	it happens to me

nouns	
prōvincia, -ae, f.	province
exsilium, -ī, n.	exile
saeculum, -ī, n.	generation, age
aetās, aetātis, f.	(old) age
gēns, gentis, f.	race, people
cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m.	agreement
fās (indecl.)	right
nefās (indel.)	wrong

pronoun	
quis? quid?	who? what?
quis, quid	anyone, anything (after **sī, nisi, num, nē**)

adjectives	
barbarus, -a, -um	barbarian
ūniversī, -ae, -a	all
validus, -a, - um	strong

prepositions	
ultrā + acc.	beyond
quasi	as if

Caesar Augustus

Antōniō et Cleopātrā mortuīs, Octāviānō placuit in Oriente morārī ut rēs ibi compōneret. nisi haec fēcisset, sine dubiō bella redintegrāta essent. prōvinciās igitur imperiī Rōmānī praesidiīs validīs cōnfirmāvit; foedera cum rēgibus fīnitimīs fēcit, nē bella in fīnibus imperiī fierent. tandem, omnibus rēbus compositīs, eī licuit Rōmam redīre.

senātus populusque eum summō gaudiō summīsque honōribus accēpērunt. omnēs crēdēbant bella cōnfecta esse neque umquam posteā cīvēs cum cīvibus pugnātūrōs esse. multī dīcēbant, 'hic vir, alter Rōmulus, Rōmam dē integrō condidit; hic sōlus imperium nostrum servāvit; nōs oportet eum quasi deum colere.'

illō tempore Octāviānus, sī rēx fierī voluisset, facile hoc assecūtus esset; sed sciēbat nōmen rēgis populō Rōmānō odiō esse; 'rēgēs plūrimōs abhinc annōs expulimus,' inquit; 'nōn nunc nōs oportet rēgēs restituere.' cum omnium rērum iam potītus esset, dīxit tamen in senātū sē velle rempūblicam restituere populōque lībertātem reddere. multīs post annīs, cum aetāte prōvectus moritūrus esset, testāmentum ēdidit, in quō haec verba scrīpsit: 'in cōnsulātū sextō et septimō, postquam bella cīvīlia exstīnxeram, per cōnsēnsum ūniversōrum potītus omnium rērum, rempūblicam ex meā potestāte in senātūs populīque Rōmānī arbitrium trānstulī.'

senātōrēs eī plūrimās grātiās ēgerunt sed eum ōrāvērunt nē reīpūblicae dēesset nēve imperium dēpōneret. plūribus honōribus eum onerāvērunt; inter alia cēnsuērunt ut nōmine Augustō appellāretur; quod nōmen adeō eum dēlectāvit ut ex eō tempore sē

redintegrāta essent would have been renewed
fīnitimīs neighbouring
dē integrō afresh
assecūtus esset would have attained this; **odiō esse** was hateful to
potītus esset (+ gen.) had won control of
aetāte prōvectus advanced in age
testāmentum ēdidit published a will
cōnsulātū sextō et septimō 28/27 BC
exstīnxeram I had extinguished, ended
arbitrium control
onerāvērunt burdened him, heaped on him
cēnsuērunt voted

appellāret Caesarem Augustum. tandem precibus senātōrum cessit imperiumque accēpit quō plērāsque prōvinciās administrāret. numquam tamen sē imperātōrem appellābat sed prīncipem.

verbīs igitur rempūblicam restituit, rē vērā omnibus auctōritāte adeō praestābat ut potentiam semper augēret. plūrimī cīvium hunc statum rērum libenter accēpērunt; bellōrum enim omnēs taeduit et verēbantur nē, nisi ūnus Rōmam regeret, bella cīvīlia iterum fierent. sī quis nōbilium potentiam eius aegrē tulit, aut tacēbat, aut, sī tacēre nōn potuit, in exsilium recēdere eī licuit.

precibus . . . cessit	gave in to the prayers of
imperium	a command
imperātōrem	emperor
prīncipem	leading citizen
praestābat (+ dat.)	he excelled
aegrē tulit	could not bear

sed quamquam, bellīs cīvīlibus exstīnctīs, pācem populō Rōmānō reddiderat, Augustō ipsī nec pāce neque ōtiō ūtī licuit. nam bella multīs cum gentibus externīs suscipere necesse erat. ultrā fīnēs imperiī Rōmānī habitābant gentēs barbarae quae prōvinciīs semper mīnābantur. sēnsit imperium Rōmānum numquam tūtum fore, nisi fīnēs ad flūmina Rhēnum Dānuviumque prōtulisset. ut haec efficeret, multōs annōs aut ipse aut aliī ducēs mīlitābant multāsque gentēs imperiō Rōmānō adiēcit.

externīs	foreign
fore = futūrum esse	
Rhēnum	the Rhine
Dānuvium	the Danube

poētae semper canēbant Augustum et mare trānsitūrum esse ut gentēs Britanniae vinceret et exercitum in Parthōs ductūrum esse, nē clādem ā Crassō acceptam relinqueret inultam. Augustō autem nōn placuit haec facere. numquam dēsiit pācem petere neque ūllum bellum iniit nisi pugnāre necesse erat. in Oriente foedus cum Parthīs fēcit. nūllam clādem accēpit nisi, cum senex esset, in Germāniā, ubi trēs legiōnēs duce Vārō in īnsidiās lāpsae omnīnō dēlētae sunt. hanc clādem semper maerēbat Augustus, quī in somnō, ut dīcunt, saepe clāmābat, 'ō Vāre, legiōnēs redde!'

inultam	unavenged
nisi	except
maerēbat	mourned

Respondē Latīnē

1 cūr Octāviānus in Oriente tam diū morātus est?
2 cum tandem Rōmam rediisset Octāviānus, quōmodo ā senātū populōque acceptus est?
3 cum Octāviānus potentiam suam semper augēret, quōmodo cīvēs hunc statum rērum accipiēbant?
4 cūr ipsī Augustō nōn licuit pāce ūtī?
5 cūr nōlēbat Augustus bellum in Britannōs Parthōsque īnferre?

The breastplate of Augustus

Vergilius Augustum laudat

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage and study the verse passages with the help of your teacher

ēloquentiam studiaque līberālia Augustum ā prīmā aetāte exercēre iuvābat. nōn modo et litterīs studuit et ipse poēmata scrīpsit, sed etiam poētās semper fovēbat, in prīmīs Vergilium, quem in numerō amīcōrum intimōrum habēbat; crēdēbat enim Vergilium sē adiuvāre posse, sī novum statum rērum in carminibus laudāret.

studia līberālia	liberal studies
fovēbat	encouraged

Vergilius autem putābat omnēs bonōs oportēre Augustum laudāre, quod pācem Italiae tandem reddidisset; vīderat enim rempūblicam bellīs continuīs lacerātam, vīderat fās atque nefās versum, vīderat imperium Rōmānum paene in exitium adductum. sīc scrīpserat cum bellum cīvīle adhūc saevīret:

. . . fās versum atque nefās: tot bella per orbem,
tam multae scelerum faciēs, nōn ūllus arātrō
dignus honōs, squālent abductīs arva colōnīs,
et curvae rigidum falcēs cōnflantur in ēnsem
. . . saevit tōtō Mars impius orbe . . .

nunc Vergilius crēdēbat Augustum sōlum pācem cōnservāre posse. in Aenēidos prīmō librō, Iuppiter, cum fātōrum arcāna Venerī aperit, dīcit Augustum ōlim saeculum aureum gentibus lātūrum esse pācemque tōtum per orbem terrārum restitūtūrum:

nāscētur pulchrā Trōiānus orīgine Caesar,
imperium Oceanō, fāmam quī terminet astrīs . . .
aspera tum positīs mītēscent saecula bellīs:
dīrae . . .
claudentur Bellī portae; Furor impius intus
saeva sedēns super arma . . .
. . . fremet horridus ōre cruentō.

lacerātam torn to pieces
versum turned upside down
faciēs faces, types
arātrō for the plough
squālent are squalid, unkempt
arva (n. pl.) fields
curvae . . . falcēs curved sickles
cōnflantur are beaten
rigidum . . . in ēnsem into unbending sword(s)
Aenēidos of the *Aeneid*
arcāna (n. pl.) secrets
Caesar = Augustus (the Julian family, to which Augustus belonged through his adoption by Julius Caesar, claimed descent from Iulus, the son of Aeneas; and so 'he will be born a Trojan from a noble ancestry')
imperium . . . astrīs (born) to bound his empire by the Ocean, his glory by the stars
aspera . . . saecula the rough generations = the generations of violence
positīs laid aside
mītēscent will grow gentle
dīrae . . . Bellī portae the gates of the temple of Janus were closed only when there was peace throughout the Roman empire; Augustus closed them in 29 BC, signifying the beginning of an era of peace
fremet shall growl; **cruentō** bloody

CAESAR AUGUSTUS

When Octavian returned from the East in 29 BC the undisputed master of the Roman world, he stopped at Atella near Naples on his way to Rome. It was here that Virgil read him the four books of the *Georgics*, with Maecenas taking over when his voice gave out.

In the great passage from the first book of this poem (we have quoted from it above), Virgil lamented the decades of civil strife which you have read so much of in this course. Warfare had taken the farmers from the land and made them soldiers, straightening their scythes into hard swords and choking the abandoned fields with weeds. Right and wrong were turned upside down and countless wars tore the world apart. Evil was everywhere rampant and impious Mars raged throughout the world. It was as if a driver had lost control of his horses and his chariot was hurtling him along to destruction.

Virgil here captures the desperation felt by his generation in these years of apparently endless slaughter of Roman by Roman. He brilliantly conveys the impression of a world on the brink of chaos. By the time he read these lines to Octavian, the Gates of War in the temple of Janus had been closed for the first time in more than two hundred years. Peace had now been established throughout the empire. To Virgil and his contemporaries it must have seemed almost too good to be true.

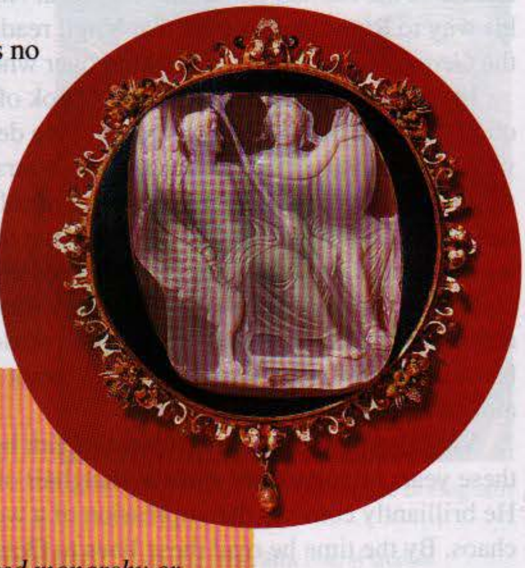
Soon the senate voted Octavian the name of Augustus (which means 'worthy of honour and reverence'). In 17 BC Horace wrote his *Carmen Saeculare*, ushering in a new Golden Age. Eight years later the Ara Pacis (the Altar of Peace) was dedicated on the banks of the Tiber. This magnificent sculptured monument shows not only the people of Italy with the family of Augustus in solemn procession, but also the Italian countryside restored to fertility in a new era. A contemporary poet called Ovid wrote:

> My poem leads us to the Altar of Peace . . .
> Peace, be present, your hair elegantly bound with the garland of Actium:
> remain in gentleness throughout the world.
> Let us have no enemies: we shall gladly do without a reason for a triumph.
> You, Peace, will bring our generals greater glory than war.
> Let soldiers carry arms only to keep arms in check,
> and let the savage trumpet never be blown except in ceremonies.
> Let the ends of the earth shudder in fear of the descendants of Aeneas;
> if any land does not fear Rome very much, then let it love her.
> Priests, add incense to the flames on the Altar of Peace
> and let the white victim fall, its forehead stained with blood;
> and ask the gods, who are eager to grant pious prayers,
> to make the house which guarantees peace, last in peace for ever.

The celebration is sincere. But Rome was no longer a republic. Augustus was called not *rēx* but *prīnceps* ('leading citizen'). However, total power lay in his hands and in his hands alone; and a dynasty had been established ('the house which guarantees peace'). A hundred years later Tacitus, the greatest of the Roman historians, wrote:

> The state had been completely transformed. There was no trace anywhere of the old free Roman character. Equality no longer meant anything. Everyone was at the emperor's beck and call.

Augustus and Rome

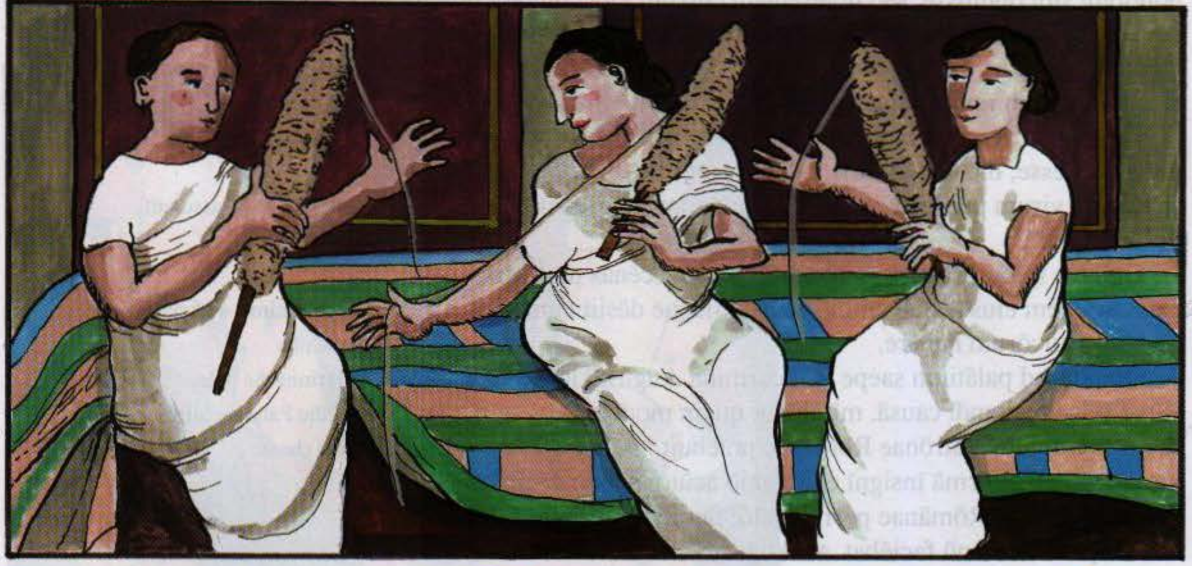


What do you think of Augustus? What aspects of his personality have come across to you?

Do you think that the establishment of peace compensated for the loss of liberty?

Would you rather live under a peaceful and well-ordered monarchy or dictatorship or a war-torn and disordered democracy?
If you prefer to live in a democracy, with political equality and freedom, what lessons can you learn from the fall of the Roman republic?

Chapter 50 Augustus Quintum in amicitiam suam accipit



Līvia ipsa suā manū lānam faciēbat; numquam dēerat in officia mātrōnae Rōmānae perficiendō.

Vocabulary 50

verbs

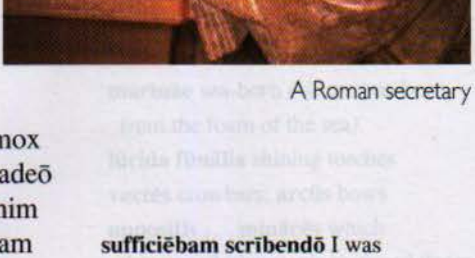
dēsīderō, dēsīderāre	I miss, long for
mūtō, mūtāre	I change
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum	I wonder at, admire

nouns

causā + gen.	for the sake of
scrība, -ae, m.	secretary
dēsīderium, -ī, n.	longing

adjectives

maestus, -a, -um	sad
modestus, -a, -um	moderate, modest
praesēns, praesentis	present
similis, simile	like



A Roman secretary

Augustus Quīntum in amīcitiam suam accipit

Maecēnās Vergiliusque Quīntum Augustō commendāverant; mox ille quoque in numerum amīcōrum prīncipis receptus est, quī adeō eum dīligēbat ut eum scrībam suum facere vellet. epistolam enim ad Maecēnātem scrīpsit in quā haec dīcit: 'anteā ipse sufficiēbam scrībendō epistolās ad amīcōs: nunc occupātissimus et īnfirmus Horātium nostrum ā tē cupiō abdūcere. veniet ergō et nōs in epistolās scrībendō adiuvābit.'

sufficiēbam scrībendō I was sufficient for writing = I was capable of writing

Maecēnās Quīntō arcessītō dīxit quid vellet Augustus. 'tē oportet' inquit 'prīncipī pārēre, sed nōn credō haec tibi placitūra esse.' ille gaudēbat prīncipem adeō sibi cōnfīdere tantumque honōrem sibi obtulisse, sed praesentem cursum vītae mūtāre nōluit. cum Maecēnātis verba audīsset, 'cāre amīce,' inquit, 'sī prīncipī pāream, nōn satis ōtiī habeam ad carmina compōnendum, neque possim fundum revīsere meditandī causā. nōlim igitur haec facere.'

ille 'nōlī tē vexāre,' inquit; 'fortis estō. dīc eī tē tantō honōre indignum esse; dīc tē nōn satis valēre ut tantum opus suscipiās. scītō eum virum prūdentem esse et hūmānum; rem intelleget; nōn tibi īrāscētur.'

Quīntus igitur prīncipī respondit sīcut Maecēnās monuerat. ille excūsātiōnem eius aequō animō accēpit neque dēsiit eum in numerō amīcōrum habēre.

Quīntus ad palātium saepe ībat carmina Augustō atque uxōrī eius Līviae recitandī causā. mīrābātur quam modestē vīverent. Līvia exemplum mātrōnae Rōmānae praebuit. mulier erat casta virōque fīdēlis, fōrmā īnsignī et ingeniō acūtō; neque dēerat in officia mātrōnae Rōmānae perficiendō; familiam ipsa regēbat; lānam ipsa suā manū faciēbat. ab Augustō semper amābātur, quī in hīs verbīs dēfēcit: 'Līvia, nostrī coniugiī memor vīve, et valē.'

meditandī causā	to reflect
scītō	know! be assured!
aequō animō	with calm mind, patiently
palātium	the palace (Augustus' house on the Palatine hill)
casta	chaste
dēfēcit	died;
coniugiī	of our marriage

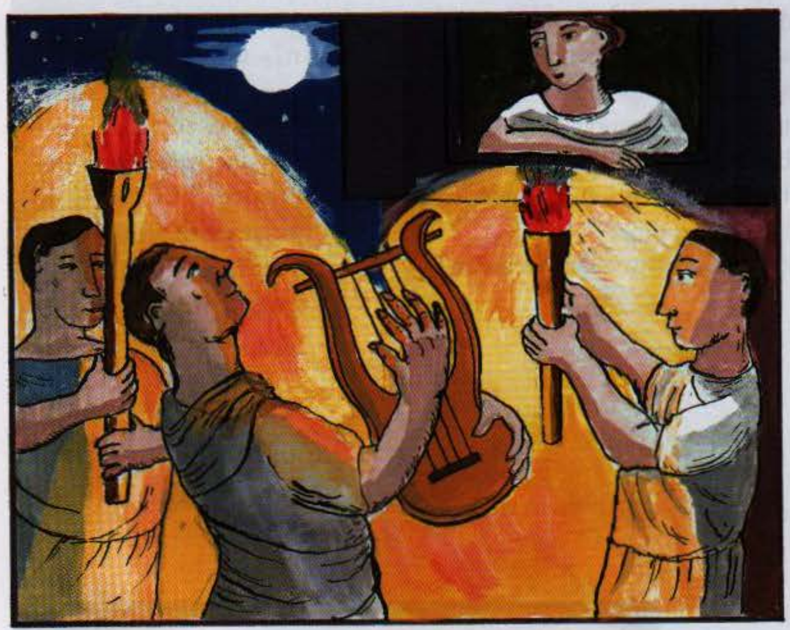
Respondē Latīnē

1. quid facere volēbat Augustus?
2. cūr nōlēbat Quīntus haec accipere?
3. quid eum monuit Maecēnās?
4. cum Quīntus ad palātium īret, quid mīrābātur?
5. quōmodo Līvia exemplum mātrōnae Rōmānae praebuit?

Livia

Quīntus caelebs manet

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage. After studying the poem with the help of your teacher, answer the questions below it



vixi puellis nuper idoneus

Quīntus ipse numquam uxōrem dūxerat; mālēbat mātrimōniō līber vīvere artem colendī causā. multās tamen puellās amāverat, ā multīs amātus erat, multa carmina scrīpserat amātōria. in hīs carminibus numquam amōre flagrāre vidētur, sed aut puellam aut aliōs amātōrēs aut sē ipsum lēniter irrīdet. nam rēs hūmānās spectat quasi cōmoediam, quae rīsum potius excitāre dēbet quam lacrimās. saepe sī locum sēriō tractāre incēpit, trīstitiā expulsā in iocum rem vertit. cum carmen legere incipis, scīre nōn potes quō tē ductūrus sit. cum iam senior fieret, puellās sīc valēre iubet:

vīxī puellīs nūper idōneus
et mīlitāvī nōn sine glōriā;
nunc arma dēfunctumque bellō
barbiton hic pariēs habēbit,

laevum marīnae quī Veneris latus
custōdit. hīc, hīc pōnite lūcida
fūnālia et vectēs et arcūs
oppositīs foribus minācēs.

ō quae beātam dīva tenēs Cyprum et
Memphim carentem Sīthoniā nive,
rēgīna, sublīmī flagellō
tange Chloēn semel arrogantem.

caelebs bachelor

dūxerat (in mātrimōnium) had married

flagrāre to burn; **irrīdet** mocks

quasi cōmoediam as a comedy

potius rather; **sēriō** seriously

in iocum into a jest

puellīs . . . idōneus suitable for girls, i.e. a lad for the girls

dēfunctum bellō which has finished its warfare

barbiton (acc.) lyre (for serenading)

hic pariēs this wall (i.e. the wall of the temple of Venus, where he is hanging up his weapons)

laevum . . . latus the left-hand side

marīnae sea-born (Venus was born from the foam of the sea)

lūcida fūnālia shining torches

vectēs crowbars; **arcūs** bows

oppositīs . . . minācēs which threatened (threatening) closed doors

ō . . . Cyprum = ō dīva (goddess) **quae Cyprum tenēs**: Cyprus was

1 This poem is a dramatic monologue, that is to say Horace alone speaks but a scene is hinted at in which other actors take part. Using the hints provided by the poem, describe the scene he envisages and the action which takes place (note especially **hīc**, **hīc pōnite**; to whom is he speaking?)

2 When a soldier retired, he would dedicate his weapons to Mars by hanging them on the temple wall. To whom does Horace dedicate his weapons and what are these weapons?

3 How are we to suppose Horace used these weapons? What strikes you about the order in which they are listed?

4 The last verse shows a sudden change of direction. Explain what Horace means in ordinary words.

5 How seriously did Horace intend the reader to take this poem?

	Venus' birthplace and a centre of her worship
Memphim	another centre of Venus' worship, in Egypt, where the climate was very hot, free from the snow of the north (**Sīthoniā**)
sublīmī flagellō	with uplifted whip (i.e. 'lift your whip and . . .')
Chloēn	accusative of Chloe, the girl who has been proud (**arrogantem**) towards Horace
semel	just once (take with **tange**)

VIXI PUELLIS

Read these two translations of *Vīxī puellīs*. Which of them strikes you as the better?

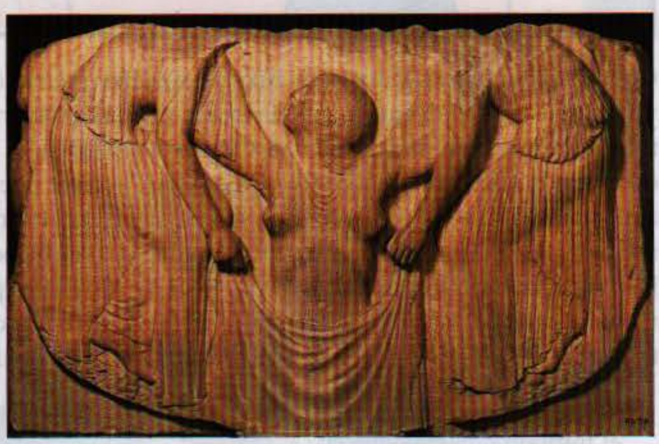
In love's wars I have long maintained
Good fighting trim and ever gained
    Some glory. Now my lyre
    And veteran sword retire.

And the left wall in the temple of
The sea-born deity of love
    Shall house them. Come, lay here,
    Lay down the soldier's gear –

The crowbar, the far-blazing torch,
The bow for forcing past the porch.
    Here is my last request:
    Goddess, ruler of the blest

Cyprus and Memphis, shrine that knows
No shiver of Sithonian snows,
    Whose whip bends proud girls' knees –
    One flick for Chloe, please.

James Michie (1965)



Venus marina

Paphos, in Cyprus, where Venus was born from the sea

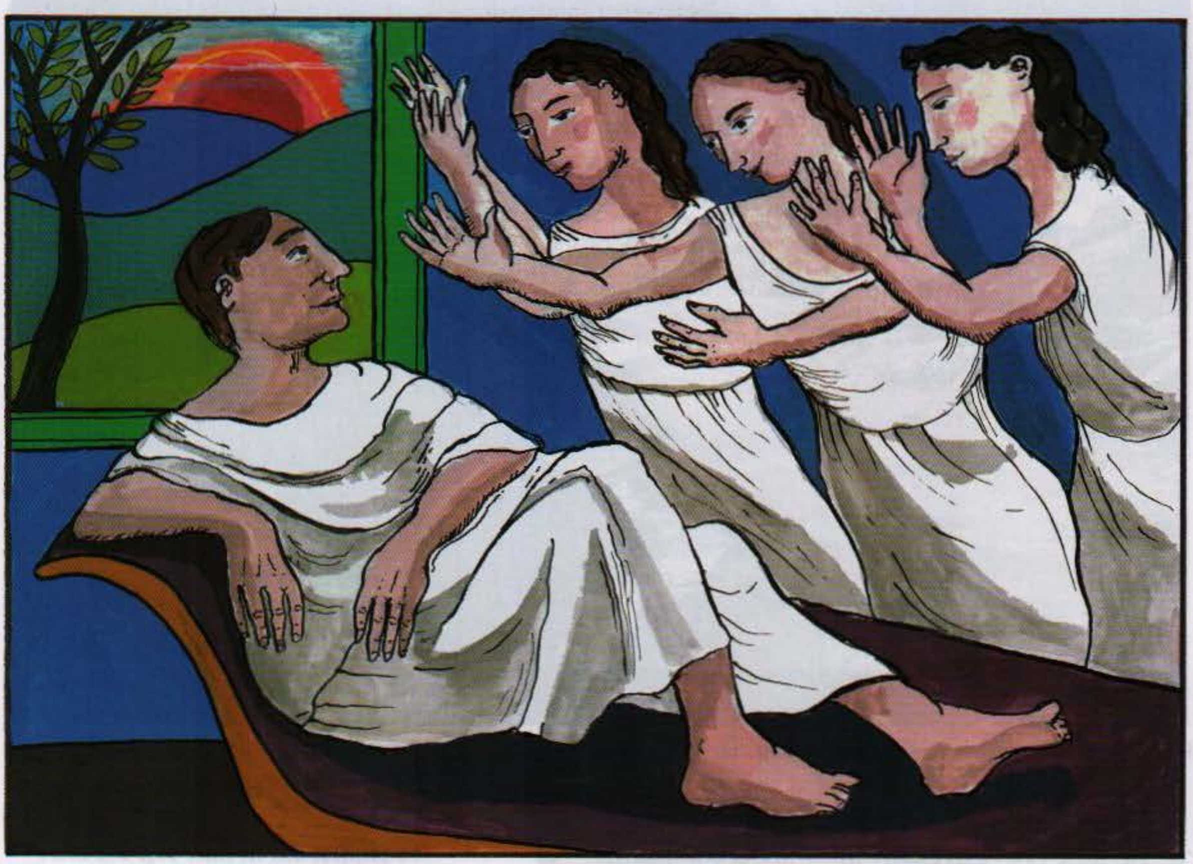
Till now I have lived my life without complaints
from girls, and campaigned with my share of honours.
Now my armour and my lyre – its wars are over –
will hang on this wall

which guards the left side of Venus
of the sea. Here, over here, lay down my bright torches,
the crowbars and the bows that threatened
opposing doors.

O goddess, who rule the blessed isle of Cyprus,
and Memphis never touched by Sithonian snow,
lift high your whip, O Queen, and flick
disdainful Chloe, just once.

David West (1995)

Chapter 51 Maecenas poetas fovet



mīrābar quidnam vīsissent māne Camēnae
    ante meum stantēs sōle rubente torum.

quidnam why?; **Camēnae** the Muses; **torum** bed

Vocabulary 51

verbs	
incitō, incitāre	I urge on, incite
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum	I feel pain, suffer
recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessum	I go back, retire

nouns	
doctrīna, -ae, f.	teaching, doctrine
praeceptum, -ī, n.	advice, precept
sōlācium -ī, n.	comfort
precēs, precum f. pl.	prayers
voluptās, voluptātis, f.	pleasure
plausus, -ūs, m.	applause

pronoun	
quisquis, quicquid	whoever, whatever

adjectives	
hodiernus, -a, -um	today's
suprēmus, -a, -um	last, highest
tūtus, -a, -um	safe
mollis, molle	soft

adverbs	
nōnnumquam	sometimes
semel, bis, ter	once, twice, three times

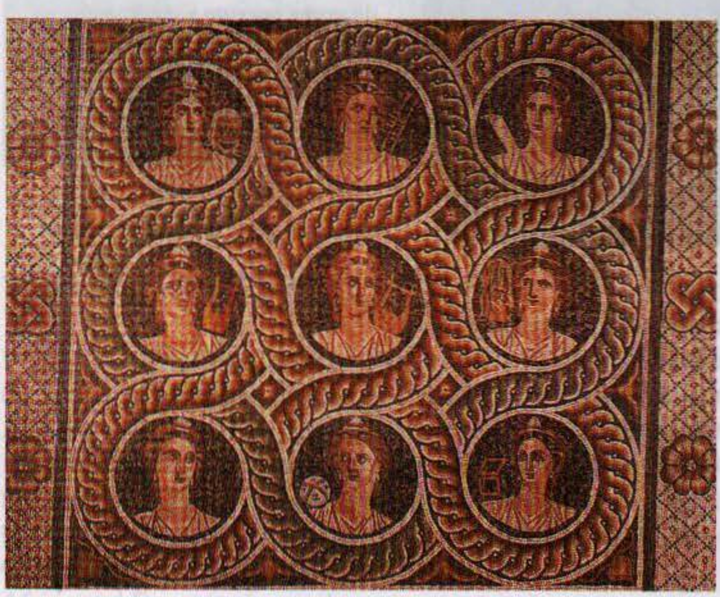
Maecēnās poētās fovet

Maecēnās Vergilium Horātiumque in numerō amīcōrum intimōrum habēbat, sed aliōs quoque poētās fovēbat incitābatque ad carmina compōnenda. interdum plērōsque amīcōrum domum suam vocābat ad recitātiōnēs audiendās. inter aliōs Sextus Propertius nōnnumquam hīs recitātiōnibus aderat, poēta ingeniō fervidō, quī plūrima carmina ad puellam suam scrībēbat, Cynthiam nōmine. Cynthiae diem nātālem sīc celebrat: dīcit Mūsās sōle oriente sē vīsisse ut puellae diem nātālem eī memorent:

interdum from time to time
fervidō burning, passionate
diem nātālem birthday
memorent bring to mind, remind of

mīrābar quidnam vīsissent māne Camēnae
ante meum stantēs sōle rubente torum.
nātālis nostrae signum mīsēre puellae
et manibus faustōs ter crepuēre sonōs.
trānseat hic sine nūbe diēs, stent āëre ventī,
pōnat et in siccō molliter unda minās.
aspiciam nūllōs hodiernā lūce dolentēs,
et Niobae lacrimās supprimat ipse lapis . . .

rubente growing red
mīsēre = mīsērunt
faustōs . . . crepuēre sonōs clapped happy sounds
stent may they stand still
āëre in the air
siccō the dry shore
minās their threats
Niobae . . . lapis the stone of (= which was) Niobe (Niobe was turned to stone after Apollo and Artemis had killed her children, and ever afterwards wept continuously)
supprimat may she suppress, stop



The Muses

poēta alter, Albius Tibullus, Horātiī erat amīcus, quī saepe dē rēbus rūsticīs canēbat cursūque vītae ūtēbātur et negōtiīs et dīvitiīs carentī.

Horātius epistolam ad eum scrīpsit cum in regiōnem Pedānam recessisset ad carmina scrībenda philosophiaeque studendum; ille Stōicōrum praecepta sequēbātur, quī dīcēbant virum sapientem bonumque oportēre dē nihilō cūrāre nisi virtūte. Horātius autem ad doctrīnam Epicūrī inclīnābātur, quī asseverābat summum bonum hominibus esse voluptātem. Albius saepe trīstis erat et querulus. in hāc epistolā Horātius cōnābātur eum cōnsōlārī, in animum revocandō quot bona deī eī dedissent:

regiōnem Pedānam a district in Latium where Tibullus was born
inclīnābātur inclined to
asseverābat asserted that, maintained that . . .
summum bonum the highest good
querulus plaintive, querulous

Albī, nostrōrum sermōnum candide iūdex,
quid nunc tē dīcam facere in regiōne Pedānā?
scrībere quod Cassī Parmēnsis opuscula vincat,
an tacitum silvās inter rēptāre salūbrēs,
cūrantem quidquid dignum sapiente bonōque est?
nōn tū corpus erās sine pectore. dī tibi fōrmam,
dī tibi dīvitiās dederunt artemque fruendī . . .
omnem crēde diem tibi dīlūxisse suprēmum.
grāta superveniet quae nōn spērābitur hōra.
mē pinguem et nitidum bene cūrātā cute vīsēs,
cum rīdēre volēs, Epicūrī dē grege porcum.

nostrōrum sermōnum of my *Satires*
candide iūdex honest critic
quid . . . dīcam? What am I to say/think?
quod something which
Cassī Parmēnsis Cassius of Parma was a minor poet
opuscula little works (poems)
rēptāre that you are strolling
salūbrēs health-giving
dīlūxisse has dawned
grāta superveniet . . . hōra the hour (time) will supervene pleasing, i.e. there will be an extra pleasure in the time unexpectedly granted him
pinguem fat; **nitidum** sleek
bene cūrātā cute with my skin well cared for = in good condition
dē grege porcum a pig from the sty

Epicuri de grege porcus

1. What sort of man was Tibullus, on the evidence of this poem?
2. What advice does Horace give to Tibullus?
3. How does Horace paint his own character? Why does he describe himself as **Epicūrī dē grege porcum**?
4. If you had retired home to study philosophy, would you have been pleased to get this letter?

Mors Vergiliī

Translate the following passage

tempus fugiēbat; et Quīntus et Vergilius iam seniōrēs erant. Vergilius, quī numquam rēctē valuerat, iam saepe aegrōtābat. in Graeciam tamen iter fēcit ad monumenta vīsenda. sed cum Athēnās advēnisset, Augustō occurrit ab Oriente redeuntī, quī eī persuāsit ut sēcum Rōmām redīret. in itinere morbō correptus Brundisiī mortuus est. corpus eius Augustus ad Campāniam rettulit cūrāvitque Neāpolī sepeliendum.

Quīntus, cum Vergilius ad Graeciam profectūrus esset, carmen scrīpserat in quō deōs ōrāvit ut Vergilium servārent. nāvem quae

rēctē valuerat had enjoyed good health
corpus . . . cūrāvit . . . sepeliendum arranged for his body to be buried
Neāpolī at Naples

eum ferēbat invocāvit:

nāvis, quae tibi crēditum
dēbēs Vergilium, fīnibus Atticīs
reddās incolumem precor,
et servēs animae dīmidium meae.

Vergilius ad fīnēs Atticōs incolumis advēnerat, sed precēs Quīntī vānae fuerant. mortem amīcī cārissimī sine fīne lūgēbat.

invocāvit invoked, called on

crēditum dēbēs the ship owed (**dēbēs**) Virgil to Horace because Virgil had been entrusted (**crēditum**) to it

fīnibus Atticīs the boundaries/shores of Attica

animae dīmidium meae half of my soul

The tomb of Virgil

THE ROMAN EMPIRE

When Cleopatra, the last of the Ptolemies, killed herself in 30 BC, the Hellenistic era was finally over. The Greek civilization which Alexander the Great and his heirs had spread around the eastern Mediterranean – and far further to the east – still continued to flourish, but it was now ruled by Romans. Their empire extended from the Pillars of Hercules (the Straits of Gibraltar) in the west to Cilicia and Syria in the east, from Gaul in the north to North Africa and Egypt in the south.

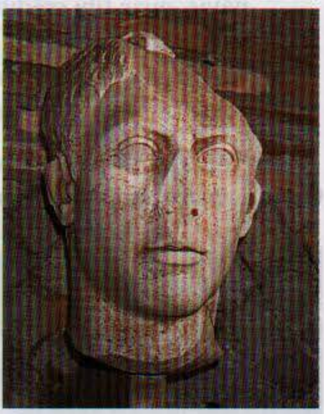
The provinces of this vast empire were administered by governors who had held magistracies in Rome. Ex-consuls were allocated more important provinces than ex-praetors. Their authority was more or less unlimited, though any Roman citizen had the right to appeal to Rome, a right exercised most famously by St Paul.

What was it like to live in this empire? The taxes levied were not excessive by the standards of the time. But the system could be abused, and the tax-gatherers (*pūblicānī*) were often hated figures. In Asia they were the agents of the

A publicanus

equitēs of Rome, who fiercely resisted any attempts to protect the provincials from their extortionate demands.

Much depended on the decency and sense of honour of the governors. Some of them were notoriously rapacious. The most infamous vulture of all was Verres, the governor of Sicily who had begun his career of looting early: when on a governor's staff in Pamphylia, he had stolen a celebrated statue of a lyre-player from Aspendos. There would be many grasping staff accompanying the governor, only too eager to fleece the provincials. Yet a strong governor could keep his men under control. The poet Catullus applies a crudely abusive word to Caius Memmius whom he accompanied to the latter's province of Bithynia. Memmius made it impossible for him to come back a penny the richer.


Verres

Certainly many governors were prosecuted for extortion when they returned to Rome. Yet by then the damage to the provincials had been done. In any case an upper-class Roman jury could find itself reluctant to condemn one of their own number. And the punishment could be far from severe. The disgraced Verres fled from Rome before Cicero's onslaught in 70 BC, but he survived until 43 BC when Mark Antony had him eliminated so that he could get hold of his collection of Corinthian bronzes.

The benefits of peace, celebrated at Rome in the course of the following chapter, were shared by the provincials, but only at this stage of Roman history, a fairly late one in the acquisition of the empire. While the provinces had long been prevented from warring upon each other, it was Augustus who first planned a workable system of frontiers and ensured that they were adequately guarded. In the 30s BC he had eliminated piracy in the Mediterranean with enormous economic benefits to the whole empire, and it was he who finally brought to an end the civil wars which had sucked many provinces into the fighting – and into financing it. He took in hand the key provinces and insisted on higher and more consistent standards of government throughout the empire. Things continued to improve. A fascinating exchange of letters exists between the younger Pliny, governor of Bithynia in the second century AD, and the emperor Trajan who had sent him there. As he seeks Trajan's advice about engineering projects – should he dig a canal? – or civic ones – should he form a fire brigade? – or religious ones – what should he do about the Christians? – Pliny shows a high-minded and conscientious concern for the provincials in his charge. The historian Edward Gibbon remarks of this era:

> If man were called to fix the period in the history of the world during which the condition of the human race was most happy and prosperous, he would, without hesitation, name that which elapsed from the death of Domitian [AD 96] to the accession of Commodus [AD 161].

Yet this may well be too sunny a view. Without doubt the Romans showed remarkable toleration of local cultures, languages, law and – perhaps most surprisingly of all – religion. While they encouraged provincials to move into urban centres, they took no interest in or responsibility for their day-to-day life and they were left to administer and see to the upkeep of their own cities. Thus there was at least the appearance of freedom. But the historian Tacitus writes with pungent scorn of the corrupting effect of Romanization on the local culture of the British. It became, he felt, a symptom of enslavement:

> Even our manner of dress became a distinction, and togas were frequently worn. Gradually they turned aside to the kind of things that make vice appealing, meeting in porticoes, baths and stylish dinners. In their innocence they called this civilization when it was simply a part of their slavery.

But what were the alternatives? In a persuasive speech, King Agrippa urges the Jews not to rebel after the appalling brutality of Florus, the Roman governor of Judaea:

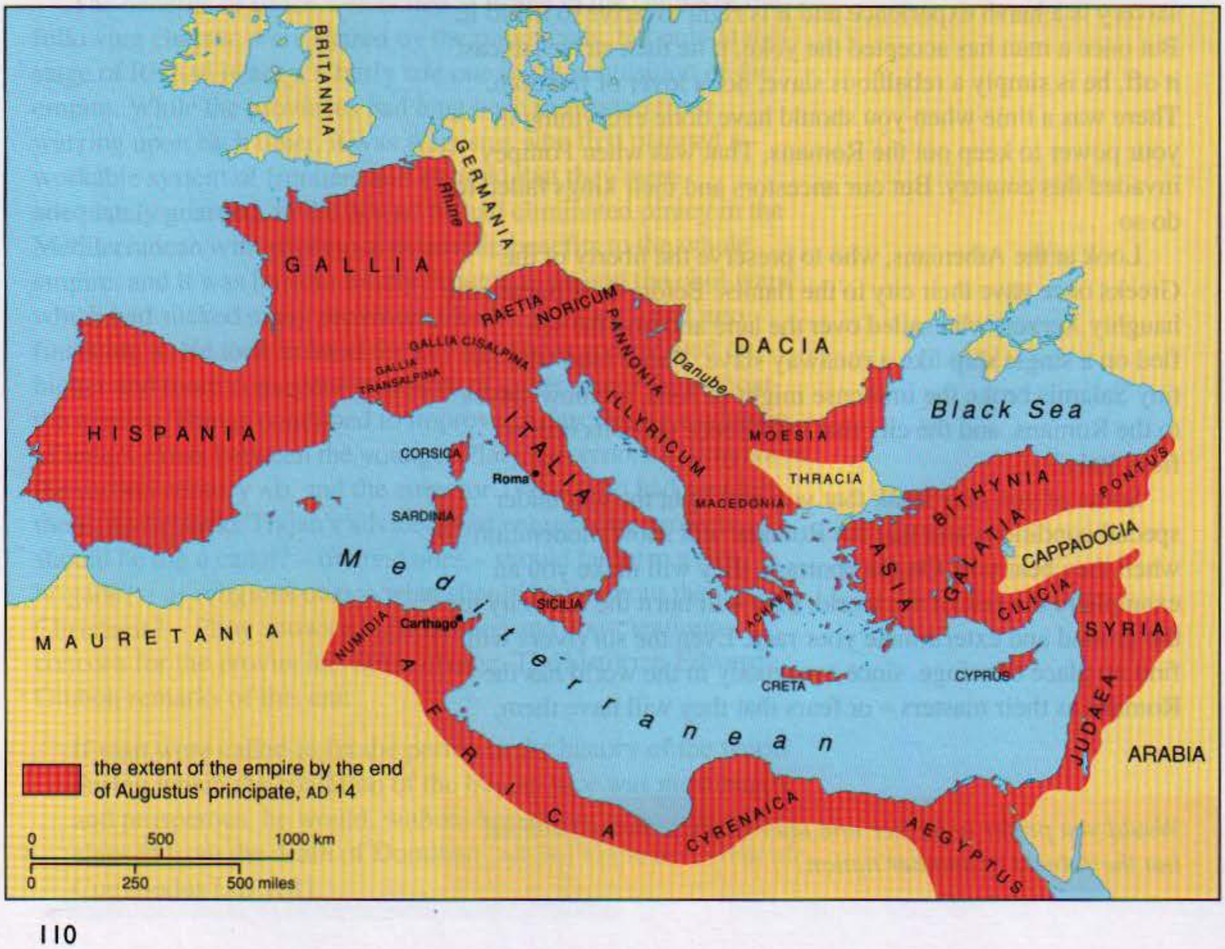
> Your present enthusiasm for liberty comes too late. You should have struggled not to lose that liberty in days gone by. For slavery is a harsh experience and it is right to strive to avoid it. But once a man has accepted the yoke, if he then strives to cast it off, he is simply a rebellious slave, not a lover of freedom. There was a time when you should have done everything in your power to keep out the Romans. That was when Pompey invaded this country. But our ancestors and their kings failed to do so . . .
>
> Look at the Athenians, who to preserve the liberty of the Greeks once gave their city to the flames. Before their pursuit the haughty Xerxes, who sailed over the land and trod the sea . . . fled on a single ship like a runaway slave. Those men who by tiny Salamis broke the immense might of Asia, are now slaves to the Romans, and the city that led Greece takes its orders from Italy . . .
>
> Some of you may think that you will fight the war under special conditions and that the Romans will show moderation when they beat you. On the contrary, they will make you an example to the rest of the world, they will burn the holy city to the ground and exterminate your race. Even the survivors will find no place of refuge, since everybody in the world has the Romans as their masters – or fears that they will have them.

Would you prefer to be free and uncivilized to being civilized but the subject of another nation?

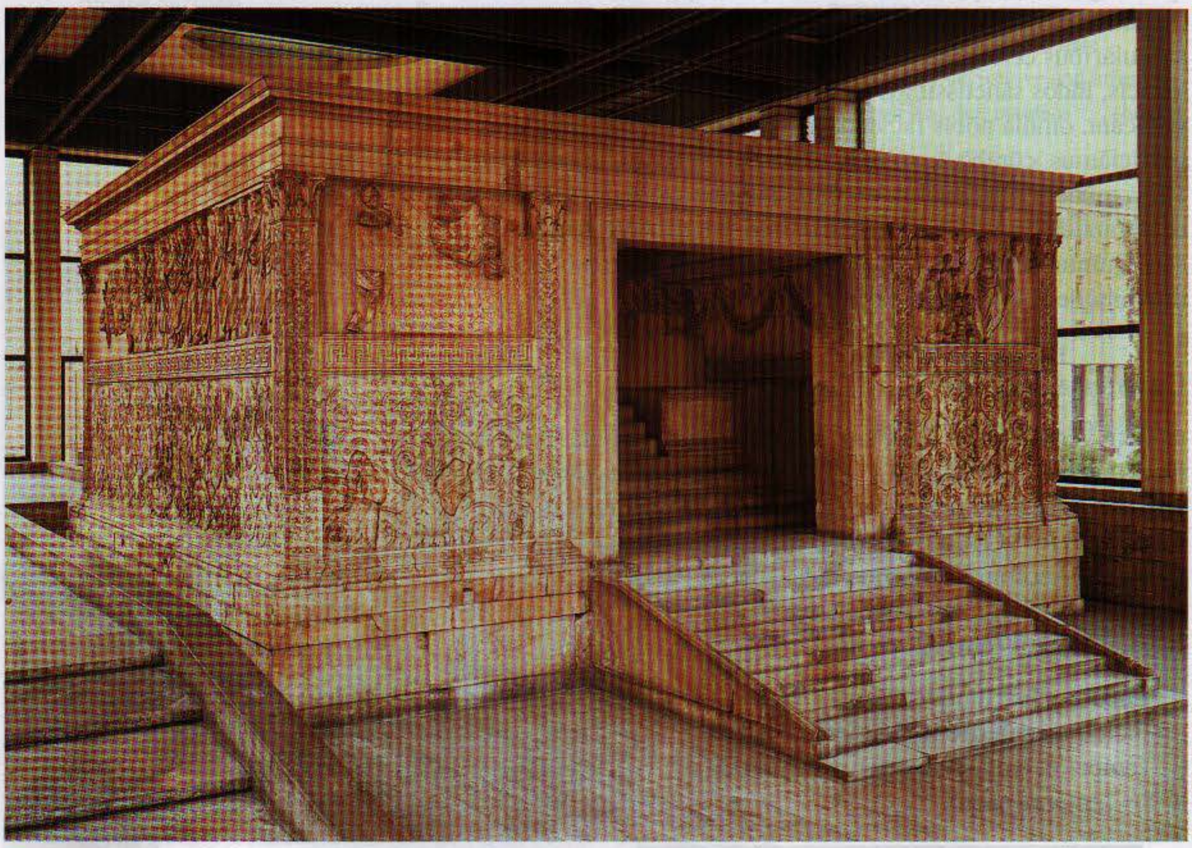
The growth of the Roman empire

date of acquisition (BC)	
241	Sicily (taken from Carthage after the First Punic War)
238	Sardinia and Corsica (seized from Carthage)
201	Spain (taken from Carthage after the Third Punic War – not finally conquered until the time of Augustus)
146	Greece (Macedonia and Achaea) (after armed intervention and the sack of Corinth)
	North Africa (Carthage razed to the ground)
133–129	Asia (bequeathed to Rome by Attalus of Pergamum)
121–120	Transalpine Gaul (Gaul across the Alps)
102	Cilicia
81	Cisalpine Gaul (Gaul this side of the Alps)
75–64	Bithynia, Pontus, Syria, Cyrene, Crete (after Rome's eastern campaigns)
58	Cyprus
52	Transalpine Gaul extended to the English Channel (Caesar's conquests)
46	Numidia
30	Egypt (annexed by Augustus)
25	Galatia (annexed by Augustus)
15	Raetia, Noricum (northern frontier of the empire finally extended to the Rhine and the Danube west of Vienna)
13–AD 9	Pannonia, Moesia (Roman control established up to the Danube from Switzerland to the Black Sea)
AD 6	Judaea

The Roman empire


BRITANNIA
GERMANIA
Rhine
GALLIA
RAETIA
NORICUM
PANNONIA
GALLIA CISALPINA
GALLIA TRANSALPINA
DACIA
Danube
ILLYRICUM
Black Sea
HISPANIA
CORSICA
ITALIA
Roma
MOESIA
PONTUS
THRACIA
BITHYNIA
MACEDONIA
SARDINIA
GALATIA
CAPPADOCIA
Mediterranean
ASIA
CILICIA
SICILIA
ACHAEA
NUMIDIA
Carthago
SYRIA
MAURETANIA
CRETA
CYPRUS
JUDAEA
AFRICA
ARABIA
CYRENAICA
AEGYPTUS
the extent of the empire by the end of Augustus' principate, AD 14
0 500 1000 km
0 250 500 miles

Chapter 52 Pax et princeps



The Ara Pacis

Vocabulary 52

verbs

celebrō, celebrāre	I celebrate
ōrnō, ōrnāre	I adorn
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritum	I appear, am seen
precor, precārī, precātus sum	I pray

nouns

āra, -ae, f.	altar
modus, -ī, m.	way, kind, sort
omnī modō	in every way
initium, -ī, n.	beginning
sacrificium, -ī, n.	sacrifice
rēligiō, rēligiōnis, f.	reverence, piety

adjectives

aureus, -a, -um	golden
prīscus, -a, -um	old, old-fashioned
sānctus, -a, -um	holy
sapiēns, sapientis	wise

Pāx et prīnceps

omnibus bellīs tandem cōnfectīs, portae templī Iānī clausae erant, quod significābat pācem esse tōtum per imperium Rōmānum. Augustō igitur placuit novum saeculum cōnsecrāre lūdīs saeculāribus celebrandīs. Quīntum ad sē vocāvit et 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'ut scīs, lūdōs sānctissimōs parāmus, quī novum saeculum indūcant. omnia nōbīs facienda sunt ut haec summā rēligiōne perficiāmus. cūrābō āram magnificam faciendam, in quā sculptōrēs Pācis mūnera illūstrābunt. carmine quoque sacrō novum saeculum celebrandum est. tibi, amīce cārissime, hoc carmen scrībendum est.' Quīntus gaudēbat prīncipem ingeniō suō tantum cōnfīdere domumque festīnāvit ad carmen meditandum.

quod significābat which meant/signified that

lūdīs . . . celebrandīs by celebrating the secular games

Carmen saeculāre

tandem vēnit tempus lūdōrum. trēs diēs tōtus populus Rōmānus fēriās agēbat. lūdī summā rēligiōne summāque sānctitāte celebrātī sunt. prīmō diē Augustus cum Agrippā sacrificia fēcit in monte Capitōlīnō Iovī Optimō Maximō Iūnōnīque rēgīnae. tertiō diē sacrificia Apollinī Diānaeque facta sunt in Palātīnō. eā nocte, cum sacerdōs sacrificia rīte cōnfēcisset, chorus puerōrum puellārumque carmen Horātiī cantāvit:

fēriās agēbat kept holiday

rīte duly

Phoebe silvārumque potēns Diāna,
lūcidum caelī decus, ō colendī
semper et cultī, date quae precāmur
    tempore sacrō,

Phoebe Apollo, the sun god

Diāna Apollo's sister, goddess of hunting and the moon goddess

potēns (+ gen.) powerful over, ruling

lūcidum decus shining glory

ō colendī semper O ever to be worshipped

Phoebus Apollo

quō Sibyllīnī monuēre versūs
virginēs lēctās puerōsque castōs
dīs, quibus septem placuēre collēs,
dīcere carmen . . .

iam Fidēs et Pāx et Honōs Pudorque
prīscus et neglēcta redīre Virtūs
audet, appāretque beāta plēnō
Cōpia cornū . . .

Sibyllīnī . . . versūs the Sibylline Books were books of prophecies (written in verse), consulted on key occasions

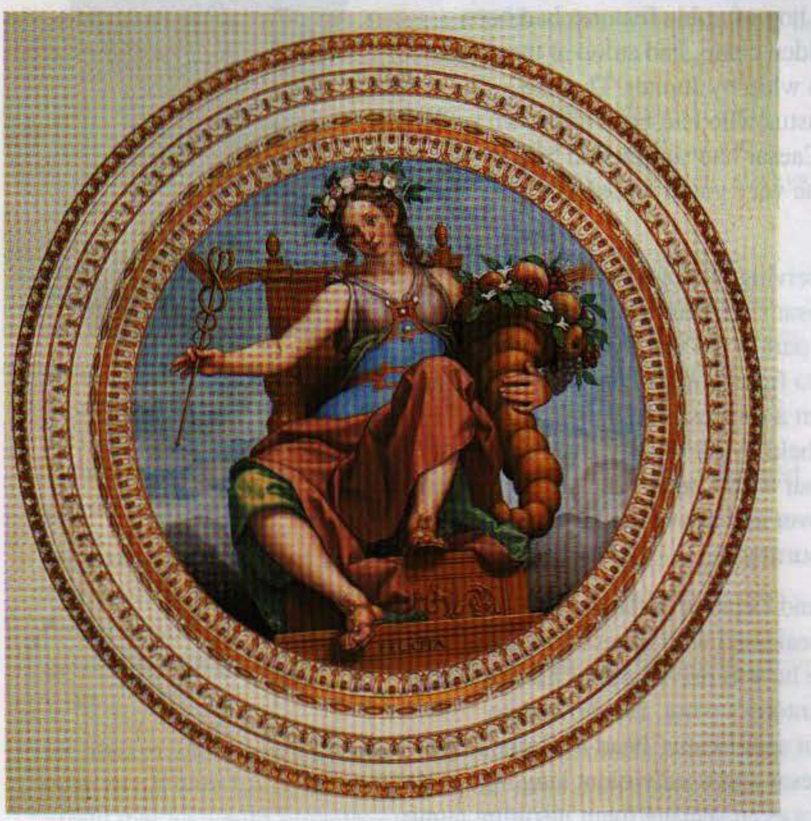
monuēre = monuērunt, here followed by accusative and infinitive 'warned (us) that maidens . . . should sing (**dīcere**) . . .'

lēctās chosen

Fidēs Faith, Loyalty (here personified as a deity)

Cōpia Plenty

plēnō . . . cornū with her full/overflowing horn (of abundance); on the Ara Pacis Copia is represented as pouring out plenty from a vast horn



pleno Copia cornu

sīc Horātius novum saeculum celebrat, nōn modo pāce celebrandā sed omnibus illīs virtūtibus prīscīs revocandīs, quibus frētī Rōmānī urbem ab initiīs parvīs ad tantum imperium prōtulerant. rēspūblica, bellīs exstīnctīs, iam saeculum aureum initūra erat. haec tōtī populō Rōmānō celebranda erant.

quibus frētī relying on which

Respondē Latīnē

1. cūr clausae erant portae templī Iānī?
2. quid facere cōnstituit Augustus ut novum saeculum cōnsecrāret?
3. quandō carmen Horātiī cantātum est?
4. quās virtūtēs revocāvit Horātius in carmine suō? cūr eī placuit hās virtūtēs revocāre?

SOME GLIMPSES OF AUGUSTUS

Some hundred years after the death of Augustus, his biography was written by Suetonius, who was for some time the secretary to the emperor Hadrian and thus had the enormous advantage of access to the imperial archives. The following passages are excerpts from this biography.

Augustus

As Marcus Cicero escorted Gaius Caesar to the Capitol, he happened to tell his friends a dream he had had the night before. He had dreamed that a boy of noble features had been let down from the sky by a golden chain, had stood at the doors of the temple and been given a whip by Jupiter. Then he suddenly caught sight of Augustus who had been unknown to most people before his uncle Caesar had summoned him to the ceremony. 'That,' he said, 'is the very youth whose image appeared to me in my dream.'

When he was sixteen, after receiving his *toga virīlis*, he was awarded military prizes at Caesar's African triumph although he had been too young to take part in the war. Not much later, when his uncle went to Spain to fight against Pompey's sons, though he had only just recovered from a serious illness, he followed him with a tiny escort along roads held by the enemy, even suffering shipwreck, and won great favour with Caesar who quickly formed a high opinion of his character over and above the keen commitment with which he had made the journey.

When he joined with Antony and Lepidus in the Second Triumvirate, he finished the Philippi war, weakened with illness though he was, in two battles. In the first of these he was driven out of his camp and barely managed to escape to Antony's wing. He showed no moderation after the victory but sent Brutus' head to Rome to be thrown before the statue of Caesar and used violent language to the most distinguished captives, not even sparing them insulting taunts. For instance, when one of them asked humbly for burial, he is said to have replied, 'That will be up to the carrion birds!' When two others, a father and a son, begged for their lives, he is said to have ordered them to cast lots to decide which of them should be spared, and in fact to have seen both of them die since the father was killed because he had offered his own life for his son, and the latter then committed suicide.

There are many great illustrations of his mercy and moderation. It would be tedious if I were to give the full list of political enemies whom he not only pardoned but even allowed to hold high office.

If any cohorts broke in battle, he ordered every tenth man to be killed and fed the rest on barley instead of wheat.

Since the city was not adorned as befitted the grandeur of its empire and was liable to flooding and fires, he so improved it that he could justifiably boast that he had found it brick and left it marble.

For more than forty years he stayed in the same bedroom in his house on the Palatine hill both in winter and in summer. Although he found that the city was bad for his health in the winter, he continued to spend that season there. If ever he planned to do something on his own or without interruption, he had a private room at the top of his house which he called 'Syracuse' – Archimedes of Syracuse had had a similar study – or his 'little workshop'. He used to hide away here or in the house of one of his freedmen in the suburbs. However, if he fell ill, he would sleep at Maecenas' house.

One can tell how simple his furniture and household goods were from the couches and tables which still exist. Most of these are scarcely grand enough for a private citizen. They say that he always slept on a low bed with a plain covering.

He was a very light eater and generally ate plain food. He was particularly fond of coarse bread, tiny fishes, fresh hand-pressed cheese and green figs of the second crop. He would eat even before dinner, whenever and wherever he felt hungry. Here are some quotations from his own letters: 'I ate some bread and dates in my carriage' and 'While I was on my way back from King Numa's Palace in my litter, I ate an ounce of bread with a few hard-skinned grapes.'

He was also by nature a very abstemious drinker. The historian Cornelius writes that he never drank more than three units over dinner at Mutina. In later life, when he indulged himself more generously, he would not exceed a pint, or if he did, he would vomit it up.

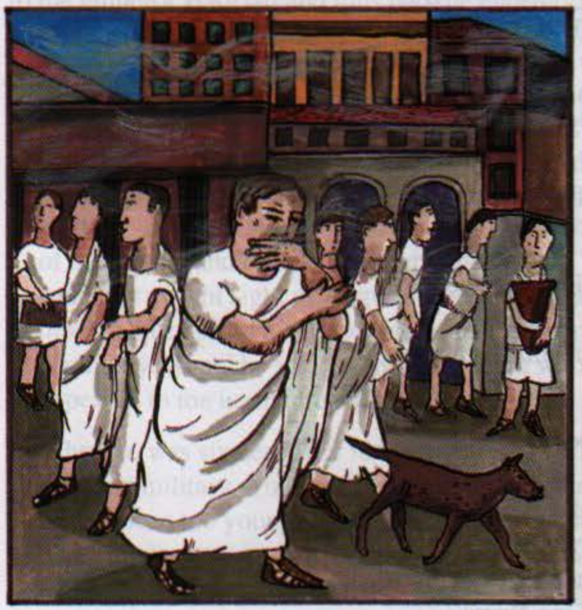
He always wrote down his more important statements to individuals, even to his wife Livia, and read them out from a notebook. He was afraid that he would say either too much or too little if he spoke off the cuff.

On the last day of his life, he repeatedly asked whether talk of his illness was causing any public disturbance. Then he called for a mirror and ordered his hair to be combed and his sagging jaws to be set straight. Next he summoned his friends and asked them if they thought that he had played his part in the comedy of life with a good enough grace. And he added the tag:

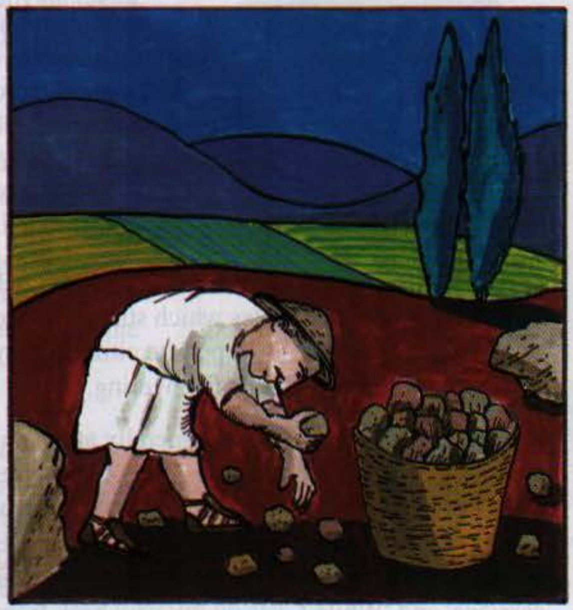
> If I have pleased you kindly signify
> Appreciation with a warm goodbye.

How do you respond to the character of Augustus? Do these excerpts from Suetonius all seem to be about the same man? If not, does this puzzle you?

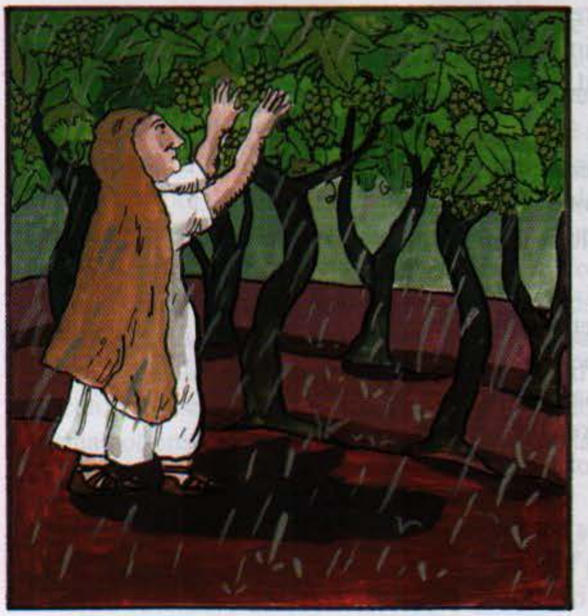
Chapter 53 Quintus rusticus



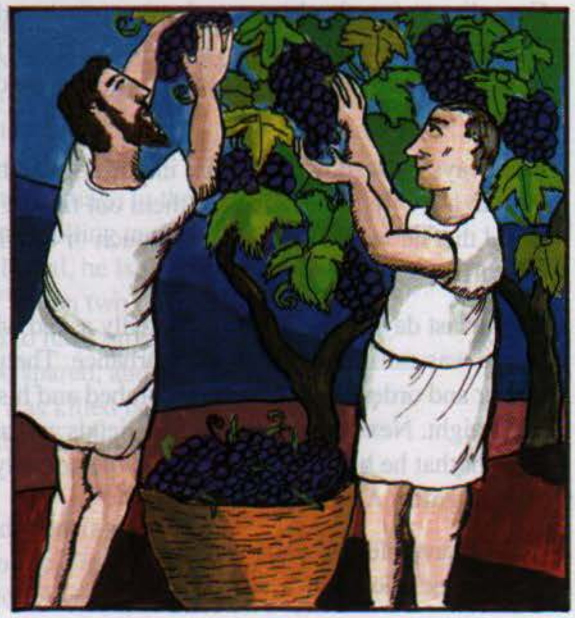
fūmus strepitusque (*noise*) urbis Quīntō odiō erant.



cum ad fundum recesserat, ipse suā manū saxa ex agrīs movēbat.



sī multum pluēbat, vītēs (*vines*) eī summae cūrae erant.



ipse ūvās cum vīlicō (*farm manager*) carpēbat, quī magnō auxiliō eī erat.

Vocabulary 53

verbs

pōtō, pōtāre	I drink
peragō, peragere, perēgī, perāctum	I finish, accomplish
prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositum	I put foward, propose, explain
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum	I promise
tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum	I protect

nouns

cor, cordis, n.	heart
hospes, hospitis, c.	host, guest
salūs, salūtis, f.	safety; greetings; health
sors, sortis, f.	lot, fate
ūsus, -ūs, m.	use

adjectives

ambō, ambae, ambō	both
modicus, -a, -um	moderate, small
nocturnus, -a, -um	nocturnal, at night

adverb

quid?	why?

Quīntus rūsticus

Quīntus, ut senior fīēbat, plūs temporis in fundō suō manēbat. nam negōtiōrum eum taeduit et strepitus fūmusque urbis eī odiō adhūc fīēbant. saepe cum in urbe manēret, sibi dīcēbat:

> ō rūs, quandō ego tē aspiciam? quandōque licēbit
> nunc veterum librīs, nunc somnō et inertibus hōrīs,
> dūcere sollicitae iūcunda oblīvia vītae?

per aestātem in collibus habitāre mālēbat, veritus nē aegrōtāret, sī Rōmae manēret. plūrimī enim febre corripiēbantur, sī calōrēs aestātis in urbe patiēbantur.

Quīntus igitur aestāte in fundō perāctā, cum vēnerat brūma, ad mare dēscendēbat et prope Neāpolim hiemābat. temperiēs enim illīus locī salūtī eius magnō ūsuī erat. vēre ineunte, cum flārent Zephyrī et prīma hirundō Italiam revīsisset, nūntium ad Maecēnātem mittēbat quī dīceret sē mox Rōmam reditūrum esse.

eī odiō . . . fīēbant were becoming hateful to him

veterum librīs by books of the ancient (authors)

inertibus hōrīs hours of laziness

dūcere to enjoy

oblīvia (n. pl.) forgetfulness

aegrōtāret he might fall ill

febre by fever; **calōrēs** the heat(s)

brūma winter

hiemābat he spent the winter

temperiēs the temperate climate

salūtī eius to his health

flārent were blowing

Zephyrī the Zephyrs (the west winds of spring); **hirundō** (nom.) swallow

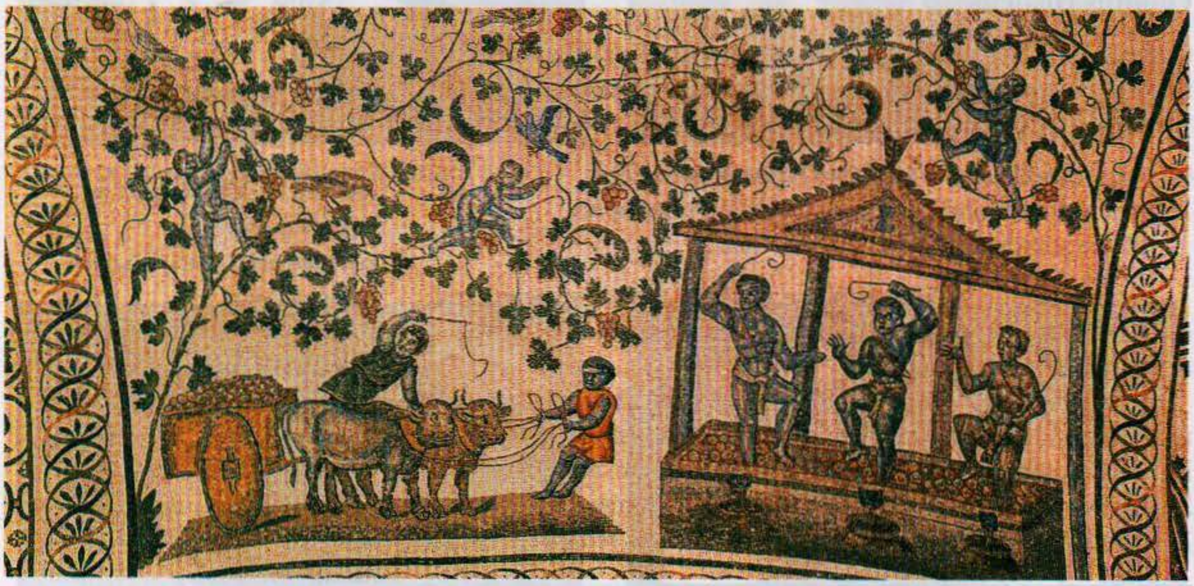
The Bay of Naples

aestāte quādam, ad fundum suum Rōmā itūrus, Maecēnātī pollicitus erat sē rūre quīnque diēs tantum mānsūrum esse; deinde Rōmam regressum Maecēnātem revīsūrum. sed, cum ad fundum advēnisset, tam contentus erat ut Rōmam redīre nōllet tōtumque Sextīlem rūre manēret. epistola igitur ad Maecēnātem eī scrībenda erat, quā cōnfitērētur sē mendācem fuisse; amīcum ōrat ut veniam sibi det:

Sextīlem August
quā cōnfitērētur to confess (by which he might confess); **mendācem** a liar

quīnque diēs tibi pollicitus mē rūre futūrum,
Sextīlem tōtum mendāx dēsīderor. atquī
sī mē vīvere vīs sānum rēctēque valentem,
quam mihi dās aegrō, dabis aegrōtāre timentī,
Maecēnās, veniam . . .
quodsī brūma nivēs Albānīs illinet agrīs,
ad mare dēscendet vātēs tuus et sibi parcet
contractusque leget; tē, dulcis amīce, revīset
cum Zephyrīs, sī concēdēs, et hirundine prīmā.

dēsīderor I am missed, I am missing
atquī and yet
sānum sound, healthy
quam . . . dabis . . . veniam = veniam quam . . . das, dabis
quodsī but if, but when; **nivēs** snows
illinet spreads; **vātēs tuus** your poet
contractus huddled up (because of the cold); **concēdēs** you allow (me to)



ipse vinum faciebat

Quīntus, cum in fundō Sabīnō manēret, rē vērā rūsticus fīēbat. servōs ēmīsit quī segetēs meterent. puerōs dēsignāvit quī ovēs custōdīrent. ipse suā manū saxa ex agrīs movēbat, ipse ūvās carpēbat vīnumque faciēbat. vīnum quod in suō fundō fēcerat hospitibus offerēbat; sīc cum Maecēnātem ad cēnam vocāret, dīxit:

quī . . . meterent to reap
dēsignāvit he appointed

vīle potābis modicīs Sabīnum
cantharīs, Graecā quod ego ipse testā
conditum lēvī . . .

vīle . . . Sabīnum cheap Sabine wine
modicīs . . . cantharīs from little cups
quod (wine) which
Graecā . . . testā conditum stored in a Greek jar; **lēvī** I sealed

sī rārō pluēbat, segetēs Quīntō cūrae erant; sī grandinēs in vīnētum ruēbant, prō ūvīs timēbat. fundus enim eī tantopere cordī erat ut semper laetus eum revīseret, semper trīstis esset cum Rōmam redeundum esset.

pluēbat it rained; **grandinēs** hailstones
vīnētum vineyard
tantopere cordī erat was so dear to him

Respondē Latīnē

1 cūr mālēbat Quīntus in collibus manēre per aestātem?
2 quid faciēbat cum brūma vēnerat?
3 cūr Maecēnātī dīxit Quīntus sē mendācem fuisse?
4 quōmodo sē gerēbat Quīntus cum in fundō suō manēret?

Mūs rūsticus et mūs urbānus

Translate the following passage

tālī vītā plānē contentus erat neque aliīs invidēbat quī dītiōrēs sē erant. fābulam nārrāvit quā nōs monēret nē nimium optārēmus. in hāc fābulā rūsticō mūrī persuādētur ut amīcum urbānum vīsat urbisque gaudia gustet:

. . . ōlim
rūsticus urbānum mūrem mūs paupere fertur
accēpisse cavō, veterem vetus hospes amīcum.

mūs rūsticus optima dē horreō paupere prōtulit quibus hospitem superbum dēlectāret; ille ea fastīdiōsē accepta vix gustāvit.

tandem ūrbanus ad hunc 'quid tē iuvat' inquit, 'amīce,
praeruptī nemoris patientem vīvere dorsō?
vīs tū hominēs urbemque ferīs praepōnere silvīs?
carpe viam, mihi crēde, comes; terrestria quandō
mortālēs animās vīvunt sortīta, neque ūlla est
aut magnō aut parvō lētī fuga: quō, bone, circā,
dum licet, in rēbus iūcundīs vīve beātus;
vīve memor, quam sīs aevī brevis.' haec ubi dicta
agrestem pepulēre, domō levis exsilit; inde
ambō prōpositum peragunt iter, urbis aventēs
moenia nocturnī subrēpere.

mūs, mūris (m.)	mouse
dītiōrēs	richer
gustet	taste
fertur	is said
cavō	in his hole
optima (n. pl.)	his best (fare)
dē horreō	from his store
fastīdiōsē	disdainfully
gustāvit	tasted
ad hunc	(said) to him
quid tē iuvat?	why does it please you? = why do you choose?
praeruptī nemoris . . . dorsō	on the ridge of a steep wood
vīs tū . . . praepōnere	won't you/ wouldn't you prefer
carpe viam	start the way, i.e. get going
comes	as my companion, i.e. with me
terrestria quandō	since earthly creatures
mortālēs animās . . . sortīta	allotted mortal souls
lētī fuga	escape from death
quō . . . circā	therefore

mures Romani

media nox iam vēnerat cum domum dīvitem intrāvērunt. mūs urbānus hospitem in lectō locāvit dapēsque magnificās eī prōpōnit:

ille cubāns gaudet mūtātā sorte . . .
. . . cum subitō ingēns
valvārum strepitus lectīs excussit utrumque.

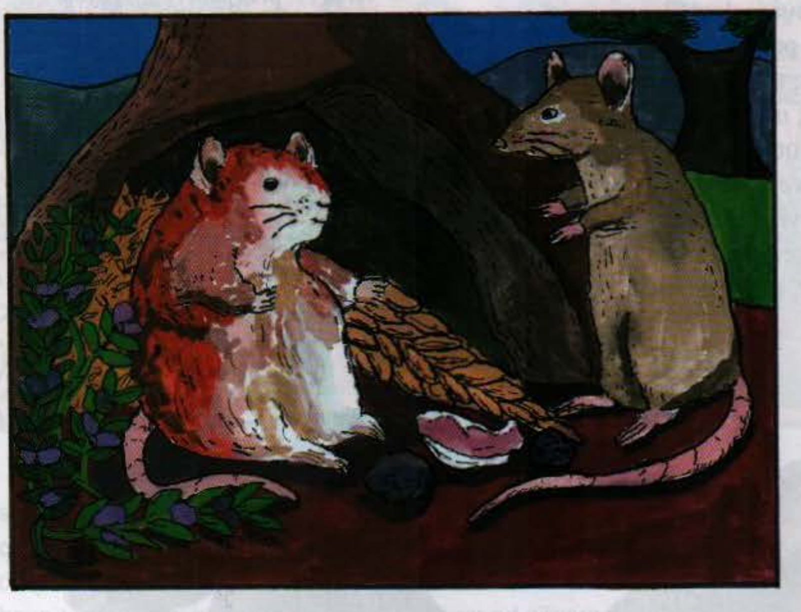
currēbant per tōtum conclāve, territī; simul domus personuit canibus.

. . . tum rūsticus 'haud mihi vītā
est opus hāc' ait et 'valeās: mē silva cavusque
tūtus ab īnsidiīs tenuī sōlābitur ervō.'

quam sīs aevī brevis of how short a life you are, i.e. how short-lived you are
pepulēre = pepulērunt drove, struck
levis exsilit leaps up light(ly)
prōpositum . . . iter their intended journey; **aventēs** longing
subrēpere to creep under
locāvit placed; **dapēs** (f. pl.) feast
cubāns reclining
valvārum strepitus the banging of the doors; **excussit** shook off
conclāve (n. acc.) dining-room
personuit echoed; **valeās** goodbye!
tenuī . . . ervō with a little vetch
sōlābitur will comfort me

THE TOWN MOUSE AND THE COUNTRY MOUSE

We here give the complete story of the town mouse and the country mouse:



rusticus urbanum murem mus paupere accipit cavo

Once upon a time
a country mouse is said to have welcomed to his humble hole
a mouse from the city – a friend and guest of long standing.
He was a rough fellow, who kept a tight hand on his savings,
though he didn't mind relaxing when it came to a party.
Anyhow, he drew freely on his store of vetch and long oats,
then brought a raisin in his mouth and bits of half-eaten bacon,
hoping, by varying the menu, to please his finicky guest.

The latter would barely touch each item with his dainty teeth,
while the master of the house, reclining on a couch of fresh
straw, ate coarse grain and darnel, avoiding the choicer dishes.
At last the townsman spoke: 'Look, old man, why on earth
do you want to eke out a living on a cliff edge in the woods?
You ought to give up this wild forest in favour of the city
and its social life. Come on back with me now: I mean it.
All earthly creatures have been given mortal souls;
large or small they have no means of escaping death.
So my dear chap, while there's still time, enjoy the good things
of life, and never forget your days are numbered.' His words
prodded the peasant into action. He hopped nimbly from his
house, and then the pair completed the journey, hurrying on
to creep within the city wall under cover of darkness.
Night had reached the middle of her journey across the heavens
when they made their way into a wealthy house. Covers steeped
in scarlet dye shimmered expensively on ivory couches,
and close by, piled in baskets, were several courses
left from a great dinner earlier on that evening.
Inviting the peasant to relax on the red material, the host
bustled about, like a waiter in a short jacket, serving
one course after another, not forgetting the house boy's
duty of testing everything he brought with a preliminary nibble.
The other was lying there, thoroughly enjoying his change of fortune
and playing the happy guest surrounded by good cheer,
when suddenly the doors crashed open and sent them scuttling from their places.
They dashed in fright down the long hall, their fear turning
to utter panic when they heard the sound of mastiffs baying
through the great house. Then the countryman said: 'This isn't the life
for me. Goodbye: my hole in the woods will keep me safe from
sudden attack, and simple vetch will assuage my hunger.'

(translation by Niall Rudd)

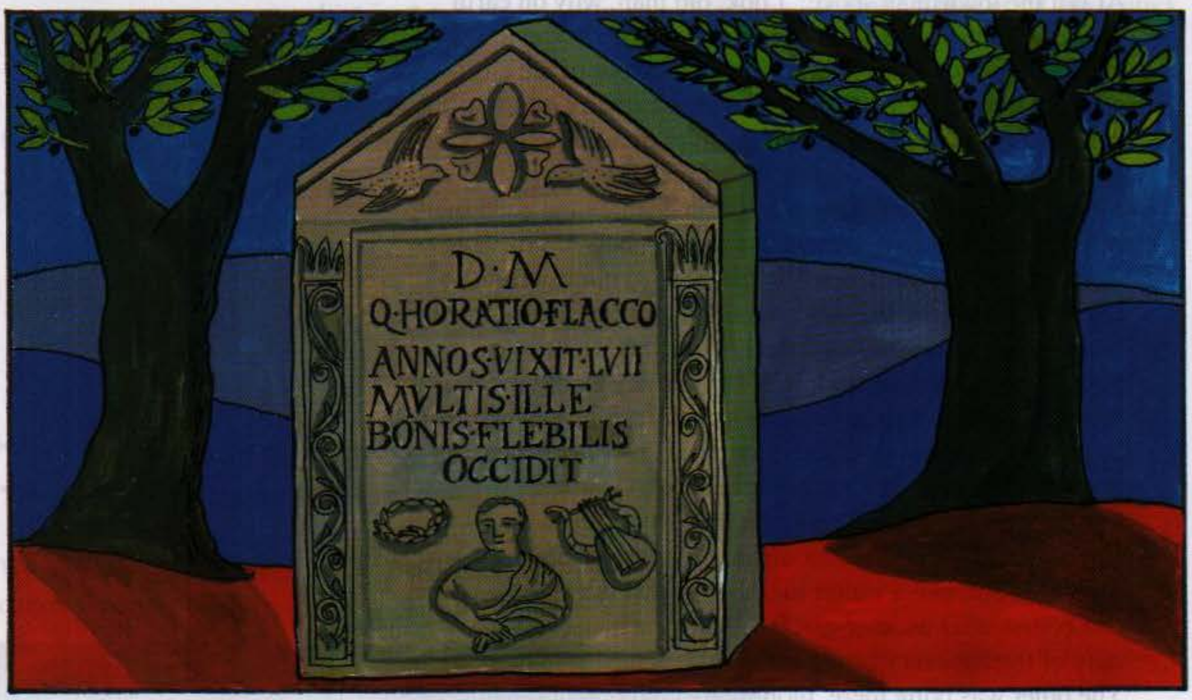
How is each of the two mice characterized? And how are the contrasts between the town and the country brought out in this passage? Would it be right to call the town mouse an Epicurean?

Introducing this story, Horace describes it as an 'old wives' tale'. What evidence is there that the story is told tongue-in-cheek? What is the point of this element of humour?

Can you think of any other authors who use stories about animals to point morals?

Chapter 54

Indomita mors



Vocabulary 54

verbs

aegrōtō, aegrōtāre	I am ill
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtum	I roll, turn over
coepī, coepisse*	I began
meminī, meminisse* + gen. or acc.	I remember
ōdī, ōdisse*	I hate
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum + gen. or acc.	I forget

nouns

senecta, -ae, f.	old age
tumulus, -ī, m.	mound, tomb
opēs, opum, f. pl.	wealth
pietās, pietātis, f.	piety
pulvis, pulveris, m.	dust
quiēs, quiētis, f.	quiet
tellūs, tellūris, f.	land, earth
maiōrēs nostrī	our ancestors
vīs (acc. **vim**; abl. **vī**), f.	force, violence
aciēs, aciēī, f.	line of battle, battle

adjectives

cūnctus, -a, -um	all
frīgidus, -a, -um	cold
invīsus, -a, -um	hated
līberālis, līberāle	generous, liberal

conjunction

simul ac/atque	as soon as

* **coepī, meminī, ōdī**: these verbs are 'defective', i.e. they have no present forms:
meminī (perfect) = I remember
meminerō (future perfect) = I shall remember
memineram (pluperfect) = I remembered

Indomita mors

indomita invincible

Quīntus, ut senior fīēbat, saepe trīstis erat; iam mors et ipsī et amīcīs imminēre vidēbātur. in carmine quod ad amīcum quendam, Postumum nōmine, scrīpsit haec dīxit:

eheu, fugācēs, Postume, Postume,
lābuntur annī nec pietās moram
rūgīs et īnstantī senectae
adferet indomitaeque mortī . . .

fugācēs fleeting
rūgīs to wrinkles
īnstantī senectae to old age pressing, i.e. to the attacks of old age

diē quōdam, sub īlice sedēns super fontem Bandusiae, tempora praeterita in animō volvere coeperat. amīcōs veterēs in animum revocāvit; vīvōrum meminerat, quōrum Maecēnās iam aegrōtābat Pompēiusque in vīllā marī vīcīnā senēscēbat; neque vērō mortuōrum oblīvīscebātur, Marcī Cicerōnis, quī cōnsul factus erat ac prōcōnsul Asiae, Vergiliī, quī diem obierat Aenēide nōndum cōnfectā, sorōris parentumque, quōs etiam nunc dēsīderābat, amīcōrum multōrum quī in bellīs cīvīlibus perierant.

īlice ilex tree
praeterita past
prōcōnsul governor
diem obierat had met his day, i.e. had died

vēr aderat; sōl fulgēbat; aura levis arborēs movēbat; aqua frīgida lēnī murmure ē fonte fluēbat. omnia pulchra erant, omnia quiētem ac tranquillitātem fovēbant. Quīntus tamen trīstis erat. id carmen cōnficere cōnābātur quod multōs abhinc annōs dē reditū vēris scrīpserat et dē gaudiīs quae vēr sēcum fert. nunc et senior factus erat et sapientior. cognōverat omnia pulchra celeriter praeterīre, vītam brevem esse, mortem ūniversōs manēre, nēminem ex īnferīs redīre:

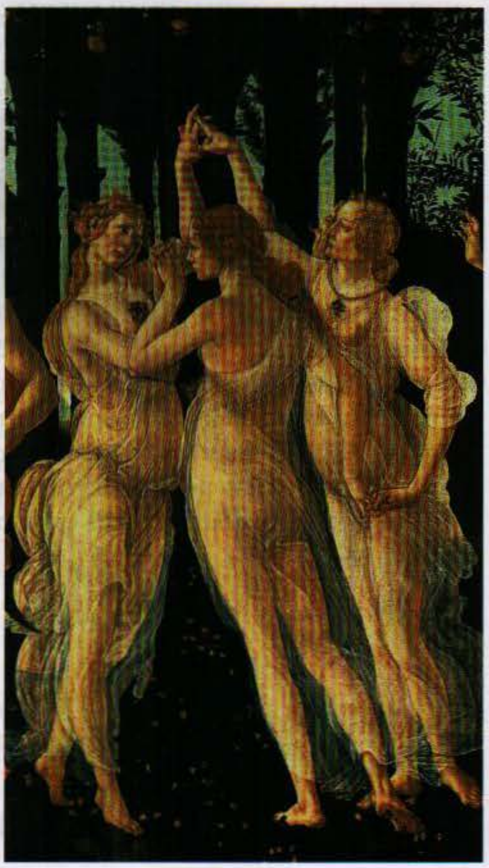
fulgēbat was shining
fovēbant were encouraging
ex īnferīs from the dead

diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt iam grāmina campīs
arboribusque comae;
mūtat terra vicēs, et dēcrēscentia rīpās
flūmina praetereunt.

Grātia cum Nymphīs geminīsque sorōribus audet
dūcere nūda chorōs.
immortālia nē spērēs, monet annus et almum
quae rapit hōra diem.

frīgora mītēscunt Zephyrīs, vēr prōterit aestās
interitūra simul
pōmifer autumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox
brūma recurrit iners.

damna tamen celerēs reparant caelestia lūnae:
nōs ubi dēcidimus
quō pater Aenēās, quō Tullus dīves et Ancus,
pulvis et umbra sumus.



The three Graces

pulvis et umbra sumus

quis scit an adiciant hodiernae crāstina summae
tempora dī superī?
cūncta manūs avidās fugient hērēdis, amīcō
quae dederis animō.

cum semel occideris et dē tē splendida Mīnōs
fēcerit arbitria,
nōn, Torquāte, genus, nōn tē fācundia, nōn tē
restituet pietās.

īnfernīs neque enim tenebrīs Dīāna pudīcum
līberat Hippolytum,
nec Lēthaea valet Thēseus abrumpere cārō
vincula Pērithoō.

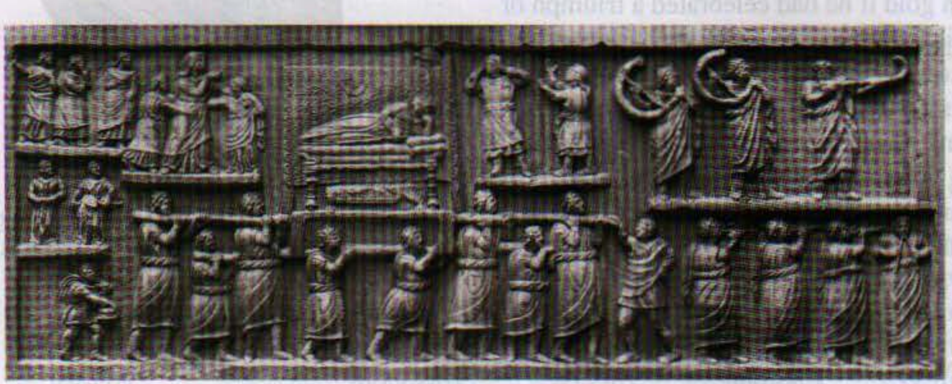
carmen cōnfēcerat; surrēxit et in vīllam lentē rediit. vix līmen trānsierat cum vīlicus lacrimīs per genās cadentibus ad eum accurrit. 'domine,' inquit, 'nūntium trīstissimum accēpī: mortuus est Maecēnās.' Quīntus, quamquam diū cognōverat Maecēnātem graviter aegrōtāre, angōre perculsus est. tacitus tablīnum intrāvit amīcumque intimum, quī eum totiēns adiūverat, quī semper benignus fuerat, semper līberālis, diū sōlus lūgēbat. posteā cognōvit Maecēnātem in testāmentō suō ad Augustum hoc scrīpsisse: 'Horātiī Flaccī ut meī estō memor.' Quīntus omnēs amīcōs cārissimōs iam perdiderat; vītae eum taeduit. paucīs post mēnsibus ipse diem obiit; sepultus est in monte Esquilīnō prope tumulum Maecēnātis.

diffūgēre = diffūgērunt
grāmina (n. pl.) the grass; **vicēs** its seasons **dēcrēscentia** growing smaller **geminīs** twin, two; **almum . . . diem = hōra quae almum diem rapit** the hour which carries off the kindly day **mītēscunt Zephyrīs** grow mild before the west winds
prōterit comes on the heels of **interitūra** about to perish
simul = simul ac; **pōmifer** fruitful
frūgēs its fruits; **brūma . . . iners** inactive winter, i.e. winter when nothing stirs; **damna . . . caelestia** the losses in the heavens; **celerēs . . . lūnae** the swiftly passing moons (= months); **reparant** repair, make good
quō pater Aenēās supply **dēcidit**
Tullus . . . et Ancus the third and fourth kings of Rome; **an** whether
hodiernae . . . summae to today's total; **crāstina . . . tempora** tomorrow's times = tomorrow
hērēdis of your heir; **amīcō . . . animō** to your dear soul, i.e. your dear self
Mīnōs the judge of the underworld
arbitria judgements; **Torquāte** the friend to whom Horace wrote this poem; **fācundia** your eloquence
īnfernīs . . . tenebrīs from the darkness of the underworld
Hippolytum a devotee of the virgin huntress goddess Diana; Venus had him killed by a sea monster
nec . . . valet has not strength to/cannot
abrumpere strike off
Lēthaea . . . vincula the chains of Forgetfulness (Lethe was one of the rivers of the underworld; when the dead drank from it, they forgot the world above)
Pērithoō Theseus and Perithous went down to the underworld to carry off Persephone but were caught and

DEATH

There was a high rate of infant mortality in the Roman world and those who survived childhood would die on average between the ages of forty and fifty. Death was a threat that was constantly present.

People on the point of death would be laid on the bare earth. Their closest relations would catch their final breath with a kiss and close their eyes. Then those present would call out their name loudly, either to recall the soul or to reawaken its powers. Next came the preparation of the body. It was washed with warm water, dressed in its best clothes and laid out on public display in the *ātrium*. A small coin was placed under its tongue to pay Charon, the ferryman who would punt it across the river of the dead to a kind of rest in the shadowy afterlife in the underworld. The women of the house would mourn loudly, beating their breasts and tearing their clothes and their hair. And a branch of pine or cypress was put in front of the house to warn passers-by that a corpse lay inside. Undertakers (*libitīnāriī*) would oversee the arrangements. Theirs was a profitable profession but they were held in such contempt that their civil rights were reduced.



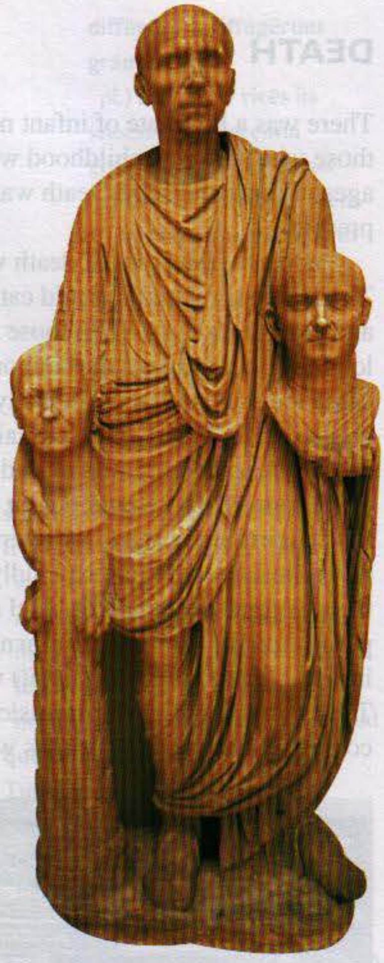
A Roman funeral

Pipers led the funeral procession which moved to the sound of flutes and brass instruments. Behind the bier came torch-bearers (originally all funerals had taken place at night) and the hired female mourners, who would howl noisily, together with the dead person's family. There was an element of mockery too. Dancers and clowns capered through the processions, singing ballads in which they jeered at the dead. When the emperor Vespasian died, the chief clown dressed up to look like him and joked about his famous stinginess.

However, the overall impression of an important man's funeral was profoundly serious, as Polybius, a Greek who lived in the second century BC, conveys in this description:

Whenever one of their famous men dies, he is carried at his funeral to the so-called *rōstra* in the forum. Sometimes he is displayed in an upright posture, more rarely he reclines. When all the people are standing around, a grown-up son, if one is still alive and happens to be present, or, if not, some other relative, goes up onto the *rōstra* and speaks about the virtues of the dead man and the successful achievements of his life. As a result of this the crowd recalls these deeds to their minds and recreates them before their eyes, and this applies not only to those who shared in those achievements but to everyone. They are moved to such sympathy that the loss seems not to belong to the mourners alone but to the whole people.

Afterwards they bury the corpse and perform the usual customs and then they place the image of the dead man in the most conspicuous place in the house, enclosing it in a wooden shrine. The image is a mask which looks exactly like the dead man in features and complexion. At public sacrifices they display these images and decorate them with the utmost care, and when any distinguished member of the family dies, they bring them to the funeral, putting them on those who seem to be most like the originals in stature and appearance. These wear togas with a purple border if the deceased was a consul or praetor, an entirely purple one if he was a censor and one embroidered with gold if he had celebrated a triumph or achieved something similar. They ride in chariots preceded by the *fascēs*, the axes and the other insignia appropriate to the original's status in his life – and when they reach the *rōstra* they all sit down in rank on chairs of ivory. You could not easily find a finer sight for a young man who is eager for fame or virtue. For who could fail to be inspired by the sight of the images of men famous for their virtue all sitting together as if alive and breathing? What spectacle could be finer than this?


A Roman nobleman carrying the busts of his ancestors

The rich were likely to be cremated on a pyre. Offerings of clothes, ornaments, weapons and even food were thown onto the flames. When the pyre had burnt down, the ashes were cooled with wine and a relative or friend would collect the bones and put them in an urn. The urn was then placed in one of the fine tombs which lined the streets leading into the city. The urns containing the ashes of less wealthy citizens were placed in a *columbārium*, literally a pigeon nesting-box but generally used of a niche in a tomb. The corpses of the poorest citizens or of slaves would either be buried in cheap coffins in public cemeteries or thrown unceremoniously into communal pits.

Compare a Roman funeral with a funeral in the modern world. How different are the funerals of different religions in the modern world? How important is it that a funeral should have a religious aspect?

Grammar and exercises

Chapter 34

The subjunctive mood

Consider the different ways in which the verbs are used in the following sentences:

(a)	He is helping us.	statement
	Is he helping us?	question
(b)	Help us!	command
(c)	Let us help him.	exhortation (= encouragement)
	Let him help us.	3rd person command
	May he help us!	wish
	He may help us.	possibility

These different ways of using the verb are called *moods* (Latin **modus** = way).
In Latin:

(a) statements and questions are in the *indicative* mood;
(b) commands are in the *imperative* mood;
(c) exhortations, 3rd person commands, wishes and possibilities are in the *subjunctive* mood.

You have already learned the indicative and imperative moods. You now have to learn the subjunctive.

The present subjunctive

1st	2nd	3rd	4th	mixed	**esse**
par-em *I may prepare*	mone-am	reg-am	audi-am	capi-am	sim
par-ēs *etc.*	mone-ās	reg-ās	audi-ās	capi-ās	sīs
par-et	mone-at	reg-at	audi-at	capi-at	sit
par-ēmus	mone-āmus	reg-āmus	audi-āmus	capi-āmus	sīmus
par-ētis	mone-ātis	reg-ātis	audi-ātis	capi-ātis	sītis
par-ent	mone-ant	reg-ant	audi-ant	capi-ant	sint

Note that the subjunctive endings for 1st conjugation verbs are **-em, -ēs, -et,** etc. For all the other conjugations the endings are **-am, -ās, -at,** etc. (except for **sum** and compounds, and **volō, nōlō, mālō,** which are irregular).

Exercise 34.1

Give the present subjunctive (1st person singular) of

vocō, dormiō, dēfendō, festīnō, faciō, studeō, adsum

You must watch verb endings with great care; the change of one letter alters the meaning, e.g.

dūcimus we lead, are leading **dūcēmus** we shall lead **dūcāmus** let us lead

Exercise 34.2

Translate the following verb forms

1 dīcimus
2 dīximus
3 dīcēmus
4 dīcāmus
5 veniat
6 venit
7 veniet
8 vēnit
9 iuvant
10 iūvērunt
11 iuvābunt
12 iuvent
13 habeāmus
14 habēmus
15 habuimus
16 habēbimus

The present subjunctive is used in main clauses to express all three of the meanings listed under (c) above; thus **parēmus** can mean:

(1) let us prepare (exhortation)
(2) may we prepare! (wish)
(3) we may prepare (possibility)

We deal with wishes and possibilities later (chapter 45). At present we only use the first of these three meanings (exhortations and 3rd person commands). This is called the *jussive subjunctive*:

ad lūdum festīnēmus.	Let us hurry to school.
nē domī maneat.	Let him not stay at home.

Note that the negative is **nē**.

Exercise 34.3

Translate

1 fortiter pugnēmus.
2 nē fugiāmus.
3 statim ad castra redeant.
4 amēmus patriam; pāreāmus senātuī.
5 puerī dīligenter labōrent.

Clauses of purpose

The subjunctive is found in many types of subordinate clause, e.g. clauses expressing *purpose*. These are introduced by **ut**, if positive, **nē** = lest, if negative:

> **collem ascendimus ut templum videāmus.**
> We are climbing the hill so that we may see the temple/to see the temple.
> **festīnāmus nē sērō adveniāmus.**
> We are hurrying lest we arrive late/that we may not arrive late/so as not to arrive late.

Notice that English often uses the infinitive to express purpose; Latin *always* uses **ut/nē** + subjunctive.

Exercise 34.4

Translate the following sentences

auttakse
1 festīnāmus ut tē adiuvēmus.
2 Quīntus Delphōs iter facit ut Apollinis fānum (*shrine*) videat.
pyytäkseen
3 hominēs ab omnibus partibus Graeciae Delphōs veniunt ut deī ōrācula petant.
4 multī iuvenēs Athēnās nāvigābunt ut in Acadēmīā studeant.
5 ad theātrum convenīte, iuvenēs, ut Theomnēstum audiātis.
6 puerī ad lūdum festīnant nē sērō adveniant.
7 puellae domum celeriter redībunt nē parentēs vexent.
8 māter fīliam revocat nē in perīculum cadat.

The sequence of tenses

If the verb in the main clause is present, imperative, future or 'perfect with have', the verb in the **ut/nē** clause will be in the *present subjunctive*; if the verb in the main clause is in a past tense, the verb in the **ut/nē** clause will be in the *imperfect subjunctive*, as in English:

> *We are coming* so that we *may* help you. (present subjunctive)
> *We came* so that we *might* help you. (imperfect subjunctive)

The imperfect subjunctive

The imperfect subjunctive is formed from the present infinitive, e.g. infinitive: **parāre**; imperfect subjunctive: **parārem**. This applies to all verbs of all conjugations.

parāre		monēre	regere	audīre	capere	esse
parārem	*I might prepare*	monērem	regerem	audīrem	caperem	essem
parārēs		etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
parāret						
parārēmus						
parārētis						
parārent						

Exercise 34.5

Translate

1 festīnābāmus ut tē adiuvārēmus.
2 Quīntus Delphōs iter fēcit ut Apollinis fānum vīseret.
pyytäkseen
3 hominēs ab omnibus partibus Graeciae veniēbant ut deī ōrācula peterent.
4 multī iuvenēs Athēnās nāvigābant ut in Acadēmīā studērent.
5 iuvenēs ad theātrum convēnerant ut Theomnēstum audīrent.
6 puerī ad lūdum festīnābant nē sērō advenīrent.
7 puellae domum celeriter rediērunt nē parentēs vexārent.
8 pater epistolam ad fīlium mīsit ut eum dē perīculō monēret.
9 Marcus ad Macedoniam abierat ut cum Brūtō mīlitāret.
10 Brūtus exercitum comparāverat ut lībertātem populī Rōmānī dēfenderet.

välillinen refleksi (välitön ref. – heti, yhdessä)

Notice that in purpose clauses the reflexives **sē** and **suus** refer to the subject of the main verb, e.g.

> **puerī dīligenter labōrābant ut magister sē mox dīmitteret.**
> The boys worked hard that the master might dismiss them soon.
> ettei moittisi
> **puella domī manēbat nē māter sē culpāret.**
> The girl stayed at home lest her mother might blame her.

Exercise 34.6

Translate the following verb forms (translate the present subjunctive as may, e.g. **parēmus** = *we may prepare; the imperfect subjunctive as* might, e.g. **parārēmus** = *we might prepare)*

1 cape
2 cēpī
3 capiāmus
4 captus est
5 caperet
6 dūcat
7 ductī sumus
8 dūcerem
9 dūxistī
10 dūcet
11 vocētis
12 vocātus eram
13 vocāmur
14 vocāret
15 vocābimur

Exercise 34.7

In the following sentences put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form of the subjunctive; then translate, remembering to observe the 'sequence of tenses' (see p. 129 above)

1 Quīntus Pompēiusque iter faciunt ut Delphōs (vidēre).
2 collem ascendēbāmus ut templum Apollinis (īnspicere).
3 diū hīc manēbimus ut omnia (spectāre).
4 tandem Delphīs discessērunt ut Athēnās (redīre).
5 ubi Athēnās rediērunt, Marcus abierat ut cum Brūtō (mīlitāre).
6 epistolam Quīntō relīquerat, in quā scrīpserat: 'in Macedoniam festīnāvī ut lībertātem cum Brūtō (dēfendere).'

Exercise 34.8

Translate into Latin

1 Quintus hurried to the Academy to see his friends.
2 I shall make a journey to Delphi to visit the temple of Apollo.
3 Many men were waiting near the door of the temple to hear the oracle.
4 Quintus woke Pompeius at first light, lest they arrive at the temple late.
5 We have come to Delphi to learn the truth.
6 They have waited in Delphi three days to hear the oracle.
7 The girls were working hard so that the master might praise them.
8 The boys are working hard so that the master may not punish (**pūnīre**) them.

P.S.

What do the following pairs of words mean?

ubi? ubīque
unde? undique
quis? quisque jokainen
uter? uterque molemmat

Chapter 35

Indirect command

Direct command:	**domum redī!**	**mē adiuvā!**	**nōlīte lūdere!**
	Return home!	Help me!	Don't play!

Indirect command: Alistetut tahtomuslauseet

pater puerō imperat ut domum redeat.	The father orders the boy to return home.
senex puerum rogat ut sē adiuvet.	The old man asks the boy to help him.
magister puerīs imperāvit nē lūderent.	The master forbade the boys to play.

The construction is the same as that for clauses expressing purpose: **ut/nē +** subjunctive after verbs such as I order, I ask, I beseech, I persuade, I encourage.

English usually uses the infinitive to express indirect command but Latin always uses **ut/nē** + subjunctive except after **iubeō (iubēre, iussī, iussum)** (I order) and **vetō (vetāre, vetuī, vetitum)** (I forbid), with which the infinitive is used.

As in purpose clauses, the reflexives **sē** and **suus** refer to the subject of the main verb.

The sequence of tenses

The rules given for purpose clauses apply equally to indirect command, e.g.

pater fīlium rogat ut sē adiuvet.	Father asks his son to help him.
pater fīlium rogāvit ut sē adiuvāret.	Father asked his son to help him.
pater fīliō persuādēbit nē domum redeat.	Father will persuade his son not to return home.
pater fīliō persuāserat nē domum redīret.	Father had persuaded his son not to return home.

Remember that if the main verb is a true perfect ('perfect with have'), the subjunctive in the **ut/nē** clause is present, e.g.

hōs iuvenēs ad lēgātum dūcō; vēnērunt ut cum Brūtō mīlitent.
I am taking these young men to the legate; they have come that they may serve with Brutus.
puer in agrō manet; patrī persuāsit nē sē domum remittat.
The boy is staying in the field; he has persuaded his father not to send him back home.

Exercise 35.1

Translate

1 māter fīliae imperāvit nē in viā lūderet.
2 fīlia mātrem rogāvit ut sē ad forum dūceret.
3 māter fīliam iussit in casā manēre et sē iuvāre.
4 puella patrī persuādet ut sē ad forum dūcat.
5 puella mātrī dīxit, 'in casā nōn manēbō; patrī enim persuāsī ut mē ad forum dūcat.'
6 māter virō dīxit, 'quid facis, mī vir? tē rogāvī nē fīliam ad forum dūcerēs.'
7 vir eius respondit, 'puella mihi persuāsit ut sē mēcum dūcam.'

8 māter virō dīxit, 'puella pessimē sē gessit. tē moneō nē eī sīc indulgeās (*spoil* + dat.).'
9 pater tamen fīliam nōn vetuit sēcum venīre.

Exercise 35.2

Turn the following direct commands into indirect commands after **imperāvit**, *and translate, e.g.*

magister 'solvite nāvem, nautae,' inquit.	**magister nautīs imperāvit ut nāvem solverent.** The captain ordered the sailors to cast off the ship.

1 Quīntus 'ad urbem festīnā, Pompēī,' inquit.
2 centuriō 'venīte mēcum, iuvenēs,' inquit, 'ad prīncipia legiōnis.'
3 Rūfus Quīntum excitāvit et 'surge, Quīnte,' inquit.
4 Rūfus eōs ad Lūcīlium dūxit et 'Lūcīlī,' inquit, 'docē hōs iuvenēs aliquid disciplīnae mīlitāris.'
5 Lūcīlius Pompēiō saepe dīcēbat: 'nōlī cessāre, Pompēī.'

Exercise 35.3

Translate into Latin

1 Quintus persuaded the soldier to lead him to Brutus' camp.
2 The soldier asks Quintus not to hurry, because he is tired.
3 When they reached the camp, a centurion said, 'Come with me to see the legionary commander.'
4 The centurion said, 'These young men have come to serve with Brutus.'
5 The commander told (= ordered) Rufus to look after them.
6 Rufus has persuaded Quintus not to leave the camp.

The pluperfect subjunctive

This tense is formed by adding the following endings to the perfect stem:

-issem	parāv-issem	monu-issem	rēx-issem	audīv-issem	cēp-issem
-issēs	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
-isset					
-issēmus					
-issētis					
-issent					

cum ad portum Ephesī advēnissent, ad urbem festīnāvērunt.
When they had arrived at the port of Ephesus, they hurried to the city.

Note that **cum** = 'when' usually takes the subjunctive (imperfect or pluperfect) when the verb is in a past tense (for exceptions to this rule, see chapter 47).

Exercise 35.4

Match the following verb forms to the English translations below (the pluperfect subjunctive may be translated as 'might have', e.g. **parāvissēmus** *we might have prepared)*

1 rēxissent
2 regimus
3 regāmus
4 regēmus
5 regerēmus
6 dormīte
7 dormīvī
8 dormiēs
9 dormiāmus
10 dormīre
11 videāmus
12 vidēbimur
13 vidērētis
14 vīsī sunt
15 vīdisset

I slept, you might see, they might have ruled, sleep! let us rule, we shall be seen, to sleep, we shall rule, you will sleep, we might rule, they were seen, we may see, let us sleep, he/she might have seen, we rule

Exercise 35.5

Translate

1 Quīntus, cum ad nāvem rediisset, continuō dormīvit.
2 cum ad portum advēnissēmus, ad urbem festīnāvimus.
3 cum in forō manērēmus, multōs mīlitēs vīdimus.
4 cum mīles quīdam nōs ad Brūtī castra dūxisset, tribūnō mīlitum occurrimus nōbīs nōtō.
5 tribūnus, cum nōs vīdisset, hilariter nōs salūtāvit.

Passive forms of the subjunctive

To form the present and imperfect subjunctives passive, change the active person endings to corresponding passive forms; thus:

Present subjunctive:

active	passive	active	passive		
par-em	par-er	mone-am	mone-ar		
par-ēs	par-ēris	mone-ās	mone-āris		
par-et	par-ētur	mone-at	mone-ātur		
par-ēmus	par-ēmur	mone-āmus	mone-āmur		
par-ētis	par-ēminī	mone-ātis	mone-āminī		
par-ent	par-entur	mone-ant	mone-antur		
reg-am	reg-ar	audi-am	audi-ar	capi-am	capi-ar
reg-ās	reg-āris	audi-ās	audi-āris	capi-ās	capi-āris
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Imperfect subjunctive:

active	passive	active	passive		
parār-em	parār-er	monē-rem	monē-rer		
parār-ēs	parār-ēris	monē-rēs	monē-rēris		
parār-et	parār-ētur	monē-ret	monē-rētur		
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.		
reger-em	reger-er	audī-rem	audī-rer	caper-em	caper-er
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

The pluperfect subjunctive passive is formed by changing the pluperfect indicative (e.g. **parātus eram**) to the corresponding subjunctive form (e.g. **parātus essem**):

parātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	audītus essem	captus essem
parātus essēs	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
parātus esset				
parātī essēmus				
parātī essētis				
parātī essent				

Exercise 35.6

Change the following active subjunctive forms into corresponding forms of the passive

1 mittāmus
2 mitteret
3 mīsissent
4 amētis
5 amārem
6 amāvissēs
7 custōdiant
8 custōdīvisset
9 custōdīret
10 cēpissēmus

Exercise 35.7

Translate

1 Brūtus Caesarem occīdit nē populus Rōmānus ā tyrannō regerētur.
2 cum ab Antōniō oppugnātus esset, Rōmā fūgit.
3 Athēnās nāvigāvit nē ab Antōniō caperētur.
omalle osialle
4 Athēnīs diū manēbat ut iuvenēs ad suam causam addūceret.
5 Marcō Cicerōnī persuāsit ut sēcum mīlitāret.
6 cum plūrimī iuvenēs ad causam reīpūblicae adductī essent, in Macedoniam festīnāvit.
7 cum pater Marcī ab Antōniī mīlitibus occīsus esset, Quīntus quoque cum Brūtō mīlitāre volēbat.
8 Pompēiō persuāsit ut sēcum ad Asiam nāvigāret.
9 cum Ephesum advēnissent, ad forum festīnāvērunt.
10 cum in forō sedērent, mīlitī cuīdam occurrērunt quī eōs ad Brūtī castra dūxit.

Exercise 35.8

Translate into Latin

1 When Flaccus had returned from the field, he greeted Scintilla who was sitting in the garden.
2 When dinner was ready, she called him into the house.
3 When they were dining, Scintilla said, 'I am anxious. Quintus has not sent us a letter.'
4 When Flaccus had heard this, he said, 'Don't be anxious. Without doubt he will write to us soon.'
5 But Flaccus also was anxious. When he had finished dinner, he went out to see his friends.
6 When he was sitting in the pub (**taberna, -ae,** f.), a messenger arrived from Rome.
7 The messenger said, 'Brutus has persuaded many young men to leave Athens and serve (**mīlitō, -āre**) in his army.'
8 When the words of the messenger had been heard, Flaccus hurried home to tell Scintilla everything.
9 Scintilla wrote a letter to Quintus and begged him not to be led into the war by Brutus.
10 But when Quintus received this letter, he was already serving in Brutus' army.

P.S.

What do the following compounds of **currō** *mean?*

accurrō, circumcurrō, concurrō, dēcurrō, discurrō, incurrō, intercurrō, occurrō, percurrō, praecurrō, prōcurrō, recurrō, succurrō, trānscurrō?

Chapter 36

Deponent verbs

These verbs are passive in form but active in meaning. Revise the list of deponent verbs in Vocabulary 36.

Exercise 36.1

Translate

1 patrem iuvāre conābimur.
2 eum ad agrum secūtī sumus.
3 in viā cum amīcīs diū colloquēbar.
4 agrum ingressus patrem vocāvī.
5 in agrō diū morābar.
6 vespere domum profectus sum.

The perfect participles of deponent verbs are active in meaning, e.g. **morātus** = having delayed; **veritus** = having feared; **profectus** = having set out; **prōgressus** = having advanced.

> **centuriōnem secūtī ad prīncipia advēnimus.**
> Having followed the centurion we arrived at headquarters.

(English often says, e.g. 'Following the centurion we arrived . . .', but since the action of 'following' precedes 'arriving', Latin uses the perfect participle.)

> **prīmā lūce profectī merīdiē ad urbem advēnimus.**
> Having set out/setting out at first light we arrived at the city at midday.

Although deponent verbs are passive in form they form a present participle like ordinary verbs, e.g. **sequēns** = following, **cōnāns** = trying, **loquēns** = talking.

The present participle is used when the action of the participle takes place at the same time as that of the main verb, e.g.

> **in forō manēbant cum amīcīs colloquentēs.**
> They stayed in the forum talking with their friends.
> **Quīntō in lītore morantī magister imperāvit ut festīnāret.**
> When Quintus was delaying on the shore the captain told him to make haste.

The present infinitive passive

You will have noted the present passive form of the infinitive in learning the principal parts of deponent verbs:

1st	**cōnor, cōnārī**	to try
2nd	**vereor, verērī**	to fear
3rd	**sequor, sequī**	to follow
4th	**orior, orīrī**	to rise
mixed	**patior, patī**	to suffer

From ordinary (non-deponent) verbs, these infinitives are passive in meaning:

1st	**paror, parārī**	to be prepared
2nd	**moneor, monērī**	to be warned
3rd	**regor, regī**	to be ruled
4th	**audior, audīrī**	to be heard
mixed	**capior, capī**	to be taken

They are formed by changing final **-e** of active infinitives to **-ī** (**par-āre** active, **par-ārī** passive), except in the 3rd conjugation and mixed conjugation verbs: these infinitives are formed by adding simply **-ī** to the present stem, e.g. **dūc-ō** I lead, **dūc-ī** to be led; **iaci-ō** (stem **iaci-/iac-**) I throw, **iacī** to be thrown.

Exercise 36.2

Translate the following verb forms

1 sequimur
2 sequēmur
3 sequāmur
4 sequī
5 secūtī sumus
6 sequēbāris
7 sequerentur
8 sequentēs
9 mitte
10 mīsī
11 mittī
12 mittēns

13 mittantur
14 mittāmus
15 mīsērunt
16 missī erant
17 verēbantur
18 verērī
19 veritī
20 verentēs
21 vereantur
22 verēberis
23 veritī sumus
24 verēbantur

Exercise 36.3

Translate

1 domum redīre cōnāmur.
2 prūdentēs vidēminī, amīcī.
3 volumus colloquī vōbīscum, puellae.
4 prīmā lūce profectī, merīdiē in urbem ingressī sumus.
5 Brūtum ad Asiam sequī cōnstituī.
6 perīculum veritae fēminae in casā manēbant.
7 multī cīvēs in bellō cīvīlī mortuī sunt.
8 Flaccus ē casā ēgressus ad agrum profectus est.
9 in viā amīcō occurrit quōcum diū loquēbātur.
10 in agrum ingressus, diū labōrābat.
11 puellam in casā morantem māter iussit ad fontem festīnāre.
12 puella statim profecta multās fēminās invēnit prope fontem colloquentēs.
13 aquam celeriter dūxit domumque regrediēbātur cum lāpsa est.
14 mātris īram verita, ad fontem regressa, urnam iterum complēvit (*filled*).

Passive imperatives

	1st **paror**	2nd **moneor**	3rd **regor**	4th **audior**	mixed **capior**
sing.	parāre	monēre	regere	audīre	capere
pl.	parāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī	capiminī

You will notice that the singular of the passive imperative is the same as the present active infinitive, and the plural the same as the 2nd person plural of the passive indicative.

These forms rarely occur from ordinary verbs, since sense does not often require them; you are unlikely to find e.g. **amāre** = be loved (though you might find e.g. **ā mē monēminī** = be warned by me). But they are common from deponent verbs, which have an active sense, e.g.

mē sequere, Quīnte.	Follow me, Quintus.
statim proficīsciminī, amīcī.	Set out at once, friends.

Exercise 36.4

Give the imperatives, active and passive, singular and plural of

1 moneō 2 vertō

Exercise 36.5

Translate

1 venīte hūc, iuvenēs, et mē iuvāre cōnāminī.
2 in urbe trēs diēs morāre, fīlī; deinde domum proficīscere.
3 mē sequiminī ad agrum, puerī; agrum ingressī colōnōs adiuvāte.
4 manē, amīce, et nōbīscum colloquere.
5 nōlīte hostēs verērī, mīlitēs, sed fortiter prōgrediminī.
6 ā mē monēminī, amīcī; nōlīte in perīculum lābī.

Exercise 36.6

Translate into Latin

1 We shall follow Brutus to Asia.
2 Setting out (= having set out) at once, we sailed to Ephesus.
3 When we had arrived, we tried to find Brutus' army.
4 After entering (use **ingredior**) the camp, we met a centurion.
5 He said, 'Follow me to the headquarters (**prīncipia, -ōrum,** n. pl.) of the legion.'
6 We did not delay but followed him at once.
7 We met the commander going out of the headquarters.
8 He said, 'Wait in the headquarters, young men. I shall soon return.'
9 He returned soon and talked with us for a long time.
10 At last he said, 'You seem sensible young men. I shall take you to Brutus. Follow me.'

P.S.

Explain the meaning and use of the following abbreviations

i.e. = id est
e.g. = exemplī grātiā
etc. = et cētera
a.m. = ante merīdiem
p.m. = post merīdiem
A.D. = annō Dominī
A.M.D.G = ad maiōrem Deī glōriam
ad fin. = ad fīnem
ab init. = ab initiō
P.S. = post scrīptum
cf. = confer
et seq. = et sequentia
flor. = flōruit
p.a.= per annum
lb = lībrae
R.I.P. = requiēscat in pāce
No. = numerō
MSS = manūscrīpta
N.B. = notā bene

Chapter 37

The ablative absolute

So far you have always seen participles agreeing with the subject or object of a verb or with a noun or pronoun which forms some other part of the clause it belongs to, e.g.

> **cōpiae Cassiī victae ad castra fūgērunt.**
> The forces of Cassius having been conquered fled to the camp.
> (the participle **victae** agrees with the subject **cōpiae**)

Quīntus epistolam perlēctam Pompēiō trādidit.
Quintus handed over the letter, having been read, to Pompeius (i.e. Quintus read the letter and handed it over to Pompeius).
(the participle **perlēctam** agrees with the object **epistolam**)

Quīntō haec rogantī Pompēius omnia dīxit.
To Quintus asking this (i.e. when Quintus asked this) Pompeius told everything.
(the participle **rogantī** agrees with the indirect object **Quīntō**)

But sometimes the participial phrase (i.e. the noun + participle) is independent of the structure of the rest of the sentence, e.g.

Brūtus, hīs dictīs, mīlitēs dīmīsit.
Brutus, these things having been said, dismissed the soldiers (i.e. Brutus said this and dismissed the soldiers/After saying this, Brutus dismissed the soldiers).

dictīs agrees with **hīs**, which is not subject or object of the main verb (**dīmīsit**) but is independent (or, as the grammarians say, 'absolute'); in this case both noun and participle are in the ablative case. You will notice that English does not often use such absolute participial phrases and you will need to translate them into natural English.

Here are some more examples:

cēnā parātā Scintilla quiēscēbat.
When dinner was ready (dinner having been prepared) Scintilla rested.
Quīntō haec locūtō, Marcus gaudēbat.
When Quintus said these things (Quintus having said these things), Marcus was delighted.
Quīntō in Acadēmiā studente Brūtus Athēnās advēnit.
(While) Quintus (was) studying in the Academy, Brutus arrived at Athens.

(NB Remember that the ablative singular of the present participle ends **-e**.)

Exercise 37.1

Translate the following sentences and explain the use of the cases **collēctum** *(sentence 1),* **collēctus** *(sentence 2),* **collēctō** *(sentence 3)*

1 Antōnius exercitum maximum collēctum ad Graeciam dūcēbat.
2 exercitus maximus ab Antōniō collēctus ad Graeciam contendēbat.
3 Antōnius exercitū maximō collēctō ad Graeciam contendit.

Exercise 37.2

Translate

1 Quīntus, labōribus cōnfectīs, cum amīcīs colloquēbātur.
2 Quīntō cum amīcīs colloquente, centuriō accessit, quī eum ad Brūtum arcessīvit.
3 Brūtus, mīlitibus convocātīs, ōrātiōnem habuit.
4 'hostibus victīs,' inquit, 'lībertātem populō Rōmānō reddēmus.'
5 mīlitēs dīmissī ad iter sē parāvērunt.
6 Scintilla in casā sedente, intrāvit tabellārius (*postman*).

7. Scintilla, epistolā perlēctā, Flaccum vocāvit.
8. Flaccus, clāmōribus eius audītīs, in casam ānxius rediit.
9. Flaccus Scintillam flentem cōnsōlārī cōnātus est.
10. Scintilla dēspērante, Flaccus exiit ut Decimum arcesseret.

Exercise 37.3

In the following sentences put the participial phrases (noun + participle) in parentheses into the correct cases; then translate

1. (Caesar interfectus), Flaccus Quīntō imperāvit ut Athēnās nāvigāret.
2. (longum iter cōnfectum), Quīntus tandem Athēnās advēnit.
3. (monumenta spectāta), Quīntus ad Acadēmīam festīnāvit.
4. Quīntus (Marcus in ātriō vīsus) salūtāvit. (*Be careful!*)
5. (Marcus in tabernā bibēns), Quīntus dīligenter studēbat.
6. (Quīntus Theomnēstum audiēns), Marcus in tabernā bibēbat.
7. Marcus (epistola ā patre scrīpta) Quīntō trādidit. (*Be careful!*)
8. Quīntus (epistola perlēcta) Marcō reddidit.

Exercise 37.4

Translate the following verb forms

1. audītus
2. audiēbātur
3. audīrent
4. audīrī
5. audiēmur
6. audiāmus
7. loquēns
8. loquētur
9. loquere
10. locūtus est
11. loquēbātur
12. loquī
13. monēbō
14. monuimus
15. monerētur
16. moneāmus
17. monēminī
18. monitus

Exercise 37.5

Translate into Latin (in these sentences use the ablative absolute, e.g. Quintus, after writing a letter to his parents, went to sleep = Quintus, a letter having been written to his parents, went to sleep = **Quīntus epistolā ad parentēs scrīptā dormīvit***)*

1. After greeting her mother Horatia entered the house.
2. Scintilla prepared dinner and called Flaccus.
3. Flaccus, seeing his daughter, rejoiced.
4. When dinner was finished, they talked for a long time.
5. At last Horatia left her parents and returned home.

Exercise 37.6

Translate into Latin (NB use past participles to translate where there are parentheses; in some of these sentences the participle will agree with the subject or object of the sentence, in others an ablative absolute construction is required; be careful!)

1. (After returning* from Delphi), Quintus and Pompeius sailed to Asia to find Brutus.
2. (When their journey was finished), they hurried to Brutus' camp.

3 (After delaying in Asia for a long time), Brutus led his army into Greece.
4 (When battle was joined), Brutus defeated Octavian.
5 But Cassius, (when he had been defeated by Antony), killed himself.
6 (When Brutus was dead), Quintus fled with his companions.

*use **regredior**

Note that the verb **esse** has no present participle:

Cicerōne cōnsule rēspūblica in magnō perīculō erat.
(**Cicerōne cōnsule** = Cicero (being) consul = when Cicero was consul, in the consulship of Cicero)

Caesare duce Rōmānī Britanniam invāsērunt.
(**Caesare duce** = Caesar (being) leader = when Caesar was leader, under the leadership of Caesar)

The two nouns in the ablative form an ablative absolute phrase.

Exercise 37.7

Translate

1 Quīntō puerō plūrimī colōnī Venusiae habitābant.
2 ventō secundō celeriter ad portum advēnimus.
3 cōnsulibus Pompēiō Crassōque Caesar in Galliā mīlitābat.
4 Brūtō duce Quīntus Pompēiusque Philippīs pugnāvērunt.
5 Caesare dictātōre Brūtus cōnstituit rempūblicam līberāre.

P.S.

What is the meaning of the following nouns, all formed from supines of verbs you know?

nārrātor, fautor, scrīptor, lēctor, prōditor?
dēditiō, commendātiō, salūtātiō, monitiō, quaestiō?
cantus, reditus, monitus, rīsus, ascēnsus?

Chapter 38

The future participle

You have already met the future participle several times in the course of your reading, e.g.

nāvis discessūra est. The ship is about to depart.

It is formed by changing the supine ending **-um** to **-ūrus**:

parāt-um	**parāt-ūrus**	about to prepare
monit-um	**monit-ūrus**	about to warn
rēct-um	**rēct-ūrus**	about to rule
audīt-um	**audīt-ūrus**	about to hear
capt-um	**capt-ūrus**	about to take

It is active in meaning and declines like **bonus, -a, -um.**

NB The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus** = about to be.

Deponent verbs form future participles from the perfect stem:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnāt-us	**cōnāt-ūrus**	about to try
vereor, verērī, verit-us	**verit-ūrus**	about to fear
sequor, sequī, secūt-us	**secūt-ūrus**	about to follow
patior, patī, pass-us	**pass-ūrus**	about to suffer

Exercise 38.1

Translate the following verb forms

1 profectus
2 proficīscī
3 proficīscere
4 proficīscuntur
5 profectūrus
6 mortuus
7 moriēns
8 moritūrus
9 moriēbantur
10 morī
11 lēgit
12 legit
13 lēctūrus
14 lēctus
15 leget

Exercise 38.2

Translate

1 hostibus sequentibus Quīntus comitēsque ad castra fūgērunt.
2 Brūtō mortuō, Quīntus cōnstituit Athēnās redīre.
3 Athēnās profectūrus, comitēs aspexit dormientēs.
4 cum Athēnās advēnisset, Theomnēstum rogāvit ut sē adiuvāret.
5 Theomnēstus Quīntō Athēnīs morantī persuāsit ut ad Italiam proficīscerētur.
6 Theomnēstus haec locūtus Quīntum ad portum dūxit, ubi nāvem invēnērunt ad Italiam itūram.
7 cum nāvis discessūra esset, Theomnēstus Quīntum valēre iussit.
8 sōle oriente nāvis ē portū profecta est.
9 Quīntus tandem domum reditūrus gaudēbat.
10 cum Venusiam accēderet, multōs advenās (*strangers*) vīdit colōniam ingressūrōs.
11 sōle occidente colōniam initūrus erat.
12 sed nōluit domum suam vidēre ab advenīs occupātam; sē vertit, longum iter Rōmam factūrus.

Exercise 38.3

Translate into Latin

1 Flaccus was about to go to the field, but hearing the shouts of Scintilla he ran back into the house.
2 Entering the house, he found her weeping.
3 After reading Quintus' letter, he tried to comfort her.
4 But he could not persuade her to listen to him.
5 When she could speak, she asked him to send for Decimus.
6 Flaccus set out at once to find Decimus.
7 Having entered his house (use **ingredior**), he found Decimus about to set out for Brundisium.
8 Decimus hurried to the house with Flaccus following.

P.S.

What is the meaning of the following words?

alius, aliter, aliquis, aliquandō, aliquot, aliquotiēns, aliquamdiū, alibī?

Chapter 39

Indirect questions

Questions can refer to present, future or past time, e.g.

What are you doing?	**quid facis?**
What are you going to do?	**quid faciēs?** or **quid factūrus es?**
What have you done?	**quid fēcistī?**

In *indirect questions* Latin uses the subjunctive, e.g.

1 Present: He asks what they are doing.
rogat quid faciant.

2 Future: He asks what they are going to do.
rogat quid factūrī sint.

3 Past: He asks what they have done.
rogat quid fēcerint.

There is no future subjunctive. To express a future in indirect questions, the future participle is used with the subjunctive of **sum,** e.g.

nesciō quid factūrus sim.	I do not know what I am going to do.
nesciēbāmus quid factūrī essēmus.	We did not know what we were going to do.

The perfect subjunctive

The perfect subjunctive is the same in form as the future perfect indicative except in the 1st person singular, which ends **-erim**; thus:

1st	**parāv-erim** etc.
2nd	**monu-erim** etc.
3rd	**rēx-erim** etc.
4th	**audīv-erim** etc.
mixed	**cēp-erim** etc.
sum	**fu-erim** etc.
possum	**potu-erim** etc.

Indirect questions can be introduced by any of the interrogative words you have met (e.g. **quis? cūr? quandō?** etc.) and also by **num** = whether, e.g.

Quīntus senem rogāvit num parentēs suōs vīdisset.
Quintus asked the old man whether he had seen his parents.

Double questions are introduced by **utrum . . . an** = whether . . . or, e.g.

> **senex Quīntum rogāvit utrum Venusiae mānsūrus esset an parentēs quaesītūrus.**
> The old man asked Quintus whether he was going to stay in Venusia or look for his parents.

utrum . . . necne = whether . . . or not:

> **Quīntus senem rogāvit utrum parentēs suī Venusiā discessissent necne.**
> Quintus asked the old man whether his parents had left Venusia or not.

Sequence of tenses

If the main verb is *primary* (i.e. present, future or perfect with have), the verb in the indirect question clause will be in either the present subjunctive or the perfect subjunctive, or the future participle + present subjunctive of **sum**.

If the main verb is *secondary* (i.e. imperfect, perfect or pluperfect), the verb in the indirect question clause will be in either the imperfect subjunctive or the pluperfect subjunctive, or the future participle + imperfect subjunctive of **sum**.

Exercise 39.1

Translate (in the following sentences all the main verbs are primary)

1 Theomnēstus Quīntum rogat quid passus sit.
2 Theomnēstus Quīntum rogat quid nunc factūrus sit.
3 Theomnēstus Quīntum rogat quō īre cupiat.
4 scīre volumus quandō nāvis discessūra sit.
5 magistrum rogā cūr nāvis nōndum discesserit.
6 nesciō quandō ad portum adventūrī simus.
7 Quīntus senem rogat num parentēs suōs vīderit.
8 senex Quīntum rogat utrum colōniam initūrus sit an Rōmam iter factūrus.

Exercise 39.2

Translate (in the following sentences all the main verbs are secondary)

1 Theomnēstus Quīntum rogāvit quid passus esset.
2 Theomnēstus Quīntum rogāvit quid iam factūrus esset.
3 Theomnēstus Quīntum rogāvit quid facere cuperet.
4 scīre volēbāmus quandō nāvis discessūra esset.
5 magistrum rogāvī cūr nāvis nōndum discessisset.
6 nesciēbam quandō ad portum adventūrī essēmus.
7 Quīntus senem rogāvit num parentēs suōs vīdisset.
8 senex Quīntum rogāvit utrum in colōniā mānsūrus esset an iter Rōmam factūrus.

Exercise 39.3

Translate

1. Quīntus, cum Venusiam advēnisset, nesciēbat quid accidisset.
2. senex, cuī prope viam occurrit, eum rogāvit cūr Venusiam rediisset.
3. 'nōnne scīs' inquit 'quot mala colōniae nostrae acciderint?'
4. Quīntus senem rogāvit num parentēs suī Venusiae adhūc manērent.
5. senex respondit, 'Venusiā discessērunt. nesciō utrum Rōmam ierint an rūre maneant.'
6. Venusiā relictā Quīntus iter iniit quod Rōmam ferēbat.
7. Rōmam profectus, omnēs quibus occurrit rogāvit num parentēs suōs vīdissent.

Exercise 39.4

In the following sentences put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form of the subjunctive and translate

1. Quīntus, dum iter Rōmam facit, veterī amīcō occurrit quem rogāvit num parentēs suōs (vidēre).
2. ille 'nesciō' inquit 'ubi parentēs tuī (esse).'
3. Quīntus eum rogāvit quandō parentēs suī Venusiā (discēdere) et quō (īre).
4. ille respondit, 'parentēs tuī Capuam contendēbant. sed nesciō utrum Capuae adhūc (manēre) an Rōmam (proficīscī).'
5. Quīntum rogāvit quid factūrus (esse).

Exercise 39.5

Translate into Latin

1. We don't know where the farmer has gone.
2. I shall ask the boys whether they have seen him.
3. 'Boys, do you know where the farmer is?'
4. 'We asked him whether he was going to return home or stay in the field; but he made no answer (= answered nothing).'
5. Soon we saw the farmer entering the field. We asked him why he had not waited for us.
6. He said, 'I did not know when you wanted to meet me. I went home to have dinner, because I was tired.'

P.S. Miscellanea: Latin phrases in common use today

1. In a mathematical problem, what are the **data**?
2. What is a **post mortem** examination?
3. What is meant by saying a law case is still **sub iūdice**?
4. What are **obiter dicta**? (**obiter** = in passing)
5. What is meant by saying someone is acting **in locō parentis**?
6. What would be meant by saying that something is mine **dē iūre**, yours **dē factō**?
7. What is meant by saying that a law case is adjourned **sine diē**?
8. What is meant by saying that a proposal was passed **nem. con.** (= **nēmine contrādīcente**)?
9. What is an artist's **magnum opus**?
10. What is the meaning of the stage direction **exeunt omnēs**?

Chapter 40

Further uses of the ablative case

1 A few verbs are found with the ablative case, e.g.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum I use, e.g. **gladiō ūsus sum.** I used a sword.
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum I enjoy, e.g. **pāce fruēbantur.** They were enjoying peace.

2 Ablative of comparison

puella prūdentior est puerō = puella prudentior est quam puer.
The girl is more sensible than the boy.
Quīntus diūtius Athēnīs mānsit Marcō = Quīntus diūtius Athēnīs mānsit quam Marcus.
Quintus stayed longer in Athens than Marcus.

When two things or persons are compared with each other, instead of **quam** = than, the second thing/person may be in the ablative.

3 Ablative of measure of difference

puella multō prūdentior est. The girl is much more sensible (more sensible by much).
Quīntus paulō diūtius mānsit. Quintus stayed a little longer (longer by a little).

4 Ablative of price and genitive of value

hunc equum centum sēstertiīs ēmī. I bought this horse for a hundred sestertii.
eum maximī aestimō. I value it very highly.

The *ablative* is used when a definite price is stated.
The *genitive* is used to express the value in which someone or something is held.

5 Ablative of origin

vir nōbilī genere nātus = a man born of (from) a noble family.
Quīntus lībertīnō patre nātus est = Quintus was born from a freedman father,
i.e. was the son of a freedman.

Exercise 40.1

Translate

1 'vīsne tū hunc equum emere? trīgintā dēnāriīs eum ēmī sed vīgintī dēnāriīs eum tibi vendere volō.'
2 'sī eum tantī aestimās, cūr vīs eum tam vīlī (*cheaply*) vendere?'
3 'eum vīlī vendere volō, quod nunc opus est mihi argentō.'
4 'ego equum multō minōris aestimō quam tū. praetereā equum meliōrem iam habeō.'
5 'equus tuus multō peior est meō. quantī tū meum equum aestimās?'
6 'ego eum parvī aestimō. quīnque dēnāriōs tibi dabō.'
7 'quid dīcis? quīnque dēnāriōs! nōlī nūgās nārrāre. ego volō eum tibi vendere decem dēnāriīs.'
8 'mihi equō nōn opus est, sed quod tibi opus est argentō, ecce, octō dēnāriōs tibi dabō. nesciō tamen quandō tālī equō ūsūrus sim.'

Revise the following verbs (see Reference grammar, pp. 203-4):

> **sum, esse, fuī**
> **possum, posse, potuī**
> **volō, velle, voluī**
> **mālō, mālle, māluī**
> **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**
> **ferō, ferre, tulī**
> **eō, īre, iī**

subjunctives:	*present*	*imperfect*	*perfect*	*pluperfect*
	sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
	possim	possem	potuerim	potuissem
	velim	vellem	voluerim	voluissem
	mālim	māllem	māluerim	māluissem
	nōlim	nōllem	nōluerim	nōluissem
	feram	ferrem	tulerim	tulissem
	eam	īrem	ierim	iissem

eō present participle: **iēns, euntis**

Semi-deponent verbs

A small number of verbs are active in form in the present stem tenses (present, imperfect, future) but passive (deponent) in perfect stem tenses (perfect, pluperfect, future perfect); see Vocabulary 40.

fīō, fierī, factus sum I become, I am made. This verb is used to supply a passive of **faciō** in present, future (**fīam**) and imperfect (**fīēbam**). The infinitive is passive in form. In the perfect stem tenses the passive of **faciō** is used (**factus sum, factus eram, factus erō**), e.g.

> **puerī miserī fīunt.** The children are becoming miserable.
> **multa scelera ā triumvirīs fīēbant.** Many crimes were being done/committed by the triumviri.
> **Quīntus scrība aerāriī ā Marcō factus est.** Quintus was made a secretary of the treasury by Marcus.

Exercise 40.2

Translate the following verb forms

1 gaudēbant
2 gāvīsus
3 gaudēte
4 gāvīsī estis
5 gaudēre
6 solēbas
7 solitī sumus
8 solent
9 ausus
10 audēbātis
11 fīēbam
12 facta est
13 fierī
14 fit
15 factī erant

Exercise 40.3

Translate

1 Quīntus Apollinī cōnfīsus Rōmam inīre ausus est.
2 Quīntus, scrība aerāriī factus, gāvīsus est.
3 cotīdiē ad aerārium festīnāre solēbat ubi officia dīligenter perficiēbat.
4 Quīntus, ā senātōre contemptus, īrātus fīēbat.
5 sed tālia convīcia (*insults*) ferre solitus nōn diū vexātus est.
6 nam verba hominis tam arrogantis nōn magnī aestimāvit.

Exercise 40.4

Translate into Latin

1 We are in the greatest danger. We need help. We dare not attack the enemy.
2 You have never been accustomed to fear the enemy.
3 Surely you have not now become cowards (**ignāvī**)?
4 Use that courage which you have often shown before.
5 You have always been much braver than the enemy.
6 Trusting in the gods, follow me, soldiers, and fight bravely to defend your country.

Exercise 40.5

Change the following verb forms into (a) the imperfect (b) the perfect

1 loquimur
2 gaudent
3 pōnitis
4 fīunt
5 cōnfīdis

P.S.

Revise the following adverbs expressing place or motion

place where	*motion to*	*motion from*
hīc	hūc	hinc
illīc	illūc	illinc
ibi	eō	inde
ubi?	quō?	unde?

Chapter 41

Indirect statement

You have seen that the construction used for indirect statements is the *accusative and infinitive*. (This construction is occasionally used in English, e.g. I believe him to be wise = I believe that he is wise = **crēdō eum prūdentem esse.**)

In indirect statements, infinitives of all tenses are used, active and passive; these must now be learned:

	active	*passive*
present	parāre	parārī
	monēre	monērī
	regere	regī
	audīre	audīrī
	capere	capī
	esse	
perfect	parāv-isse	parātus esse
	monu-isse	monitus esse
	rēx-isse	rēctus esse
	audī-visse	audītus esse
	cēp-isse	captus esse
	fuisse	
future	parāt-ūrus esse	
	monit-ūrus esse	
	rēct-ūrus esse	
	audīt-ūrus esse	
	capt-ūrus esse	
	futūrus esse/fore	

(The future passive infinitive is rare and is at present omitted.)

Note the future infinitive of **sum**: **futūrus esse** and the alternative form **fore.**

Deponent verbs have infinitives active in meaning, though the present and perfect are passive in form, e.g.

present	cōnārī	sequī
future	cōnātūrus esse	secūtūrus esse
perfect	cōnātus esse	secūtus esse

Exercise 41.1

Give all infinitives, active and passive (except future passive) of (a) **dō** *(b)* **mittō.**

The accusative and infinitive construction is introduced by verbs such as **dīcō** (I say), **negō** (I deny, say not), **pūtō** (I think), **sciō** (I know), **nesciō** (I do not know), **cognōscō** (I get to know, learn), **crēdō** (I believe), **prōmittō** (I promise), **spērō** (I hope) and a few other verbs such as **gaudeō** (I rejoice that).

The reflexives **sē** and **suus** refer back to the subject of the verb which introduces the indirect statement:

> **Marcus dīcit sē Quīntum adiūtūrum esse.**
> Marcus says that he will help Quintus.

puerī dīcunt sē ā magistrō dīmissōs esse.
The boys say that they have been dismissed by the master.

Notice that in the case of the infinitives formed from participles (perfect passive, e.g. **parātus esse,** and future active, e.g. **parātūrus esse**), the participle agrees with the *accusative* (subject) of the infinitive, e.g.

magister dīcit puerōs domum dīmissōs esse.	The master says that the boys have been sent home.
fēmina spērat puellās sē adiūtūrās esse.	The woman hopes that the girls will help her.
puellae dīcunt sē fēminam adiūtūrās esse.	The girls say that they will help the woman.

Exercise 41.2

Translate

1 Quīntus cognōscit parentēs suōs Venusiā discessisse.
2 spērat sē eōs in viā inventūrum esse.
3 Gāius negat sē eōs vīdisse.
4 crēdit eōs Capuam profectōs esse.
5 Apollō prōmittit sē Quīntum cūrātūrum esse.
6 Quīntus tandem scit sē parentēs numquam posteā vīsūrum esse.
7 Marcus dīcit Octāviānum veniam sibi dedisse.
8 Quīntus gaudet sē scrībam aerāriī factum esse.

If the verb introducing the indirect statement is past, English makes the verb in the indirect speech past. But in Latin the tense of the infinitive is that used in the original words, e.g.

Scintilla said that Flaccus was working in the field. (indirect speech)
Scintilla said, 'Flaccus is working in the field.' (direct speech)
Scintilla dīxit Flaccum in agrō labōrāre. (indirect speech)

Scintilla said that he had worked for a long time. (indirect speech)
Scintilla said, 'He has worked for a long time.' (direct speech)
Scintilla dīxit eum diū labōrāvisse. (indirect speech)

Scintilla said that he would return home soon. (indirect speech)
Scintilla said, 'He will return home soon.' (direct speech)
Scintilla dīxit eum mox domum reditūrum esse. (indirect speech)

Exercise 41.3

Translate

1 Quīntus cognōvit parentēs suōs Venusiā discessisse.
2 spērāvit sē eōs in viā inventūrum esse.
3 Gāius dīxit sē Capuam iter facere.
4 Quīntus respondit sē Gāium secūtūrum esse.
5 eī quibus Quīntus in viā occurrit negāvērunt sē parentēs eius vīdisse.

6 amīcī quibus Quīntus carmina sua recitāverat dīcēbant ea optima esse.
7 Quīntus gaudēbat Vergilium amīcitiam suam petere.
8 spērābat Vergilium carmina sua probātūrum esse.
9 Vergilius dīxit sē carminibus Quīntī dēlectātum esse.
10 Quīntus respondit sē Vergiliī carmina valdē admīrārī.

Exercise 41.4

Turn the following sentences into indirect statement after **dīxit** (*or* **negāvit**), *e.g.*

puellae laetae sunt = dīxit puellās laetās esse
puellae nōn laetae sunt = negāvit puellās laetās esse

1 magister īrātus est.
2 Quīntus in Italiam redit.
3 Quīntus parentēs quaesīvit.
4 colōnī ab agrīs expulsī sunt.
5 Quīntus parentēs Venusiae nōn inveniet.

Exercise 41.5

Translate into Latin (remember that the reflexives **sē** *and* **suus** *refer back to the subject of the main clause; and that the tense of the infinitive will be the same as that of the direct words)*

1 Marcus said that he would help Quintus.
2 He said that he had been made quaestor of the treasury.
3 He hoped that Quintus would help him.
4 Quintus rejoiced that Marcus trusted him.
5 Quintus knew that the duties would not be difficult.
6 He hoped that he would write many poems (**carmina**).
7 He told his friends that he had written a few poems.
8 His friends said that his poems were very good.
9 Quintus was content and said that he had never been so happy (= denied that he had ever been so happy).

P.S.

Adjectives formed from verbs ending **-ilis**, **-bilis** denote passive qualities, e.g.

admīrā-bilis, -e (admīror)	admirable (= to be admired)
crēd-ibilis, -e (crēdō)	believable, creditable
doc-ilis, -e (doceō)	teachable
fac-ilis, -e (faciō)	doable, easy
flē-bilis, -e (fleō)	lamentable, lamented
horr-ibilis, -e (horreō)	horrible
memorā-bilis, -e (memorō)	memorable
mīrā-bilis, -e (mīror)	wonderful
terr-ibilis, -e (terreō)	terrible

Chapter 42

This chapter introduces no new grammar.

Exercise 42.1

Turn the following active verb forms into the corresponding forms of the passive

1 parātis
2 monēre
3 regere
4 audīvistī
5 caperēmus
6 posuit
7 monēte
8 tulimus
9 fēcērunt
10 ēgisset

Exercise 42.2

Translate

1 Quīntus, cum Pompēium in forō cōnspexisset, ad eum accurrit.
2 amīcum salūtāvit rogāvitque quandō Rōmam revēnisset.
3 Pompēius dīxit sē Rōmam revēnisse ut Octāviānī veniam peteret.
4 Quīntus prō certō habēbat Octāviānum eī veniam datūrum esse.
5 Pompēium rogāvit ut ad cēnam venīret. ille respondit sē posterō diē cum Quīntō libenter cēnātūrum esse.
6 Quīntus servīs convocātīs imperāvit ut omnia ad cēnam parārent.
7 'festīnāte' inquit; 'omnia parāte ut Pompēiī reditum celebrēmus.'
8 plūrimī amīcī Quīntī domum ingressī Pompēium salūtāvērunt.
9 sōle occidente Quīntus amīcīs imperāvit nē domum redīrent.
10 'manēte paulīsper,' inquit, 'ut carmen audiātis quod dē Pompēiī reditū composuī.'

Exercise 42.3

Translate into Latin

1 Pompeius said that for a long time he had hidden (himself) in the mountains.
2 He said that now he had returned to Rome to ask for pardon.
3 Quintus was sure that Octavian would receive him kindly.
4 He asked Pompeius to come to dinner; he said that many friends had been invited.
5 Pompeius promised that he would come.
6 When all the guests had arrived, they enjoyed an excellent dinner and drank much wine.
7 When dinner was finished, Quintus recited the poem which he had written about Pompeius.
8 All the guests, delighted by the poem, praised Quintus.

P.S.

Adjectives ending **-āx** in the nominative singular, formed from the present stem of verbs, denote a habit or tendency, e.g.

loquāx, loquācis	talkative	(loqu-or)
audāx, audācis	daring	(aud(e)-ō)
capāx, capācis	holding	(cap(i)-ō)
rapāx, rapācis	grasping	(rap(i)-ō)
tenāx, tenācis	clinging	(ten(e)-ō)

Chapter 43

Consecutive (result) clauses

Quīntus tam verēcundus erat ut vix quicquam dīcere posset.
Quintus was so shy that he could scarcely say anything.
Quīntus adeō timēbat ut dīcere nōn posset.
Quintus was so nervous that he could not speak.

Clauses expressing consequence are introduced by **ut** + subjunctive, negative **nōn**.

The main clause usually contains one of the words meaning 'so', e.g.

tam (with adjectives and adverbs):
tam fessus erat ut diū dormīret. He was so tired that he slept a long time.

tantus = so great:
tanta erat tempestās ut omnēs timērent. The storm was so great that all were afraid.

tot = so many:
tot spectātōrēs aderant ut locum vacuum invenīre nōn possēmus.
There were so many spectators present that we could not find an empty place.

totiēns = so often:
Vergilius dē tē totiēns mihi dīxit ut carmina tua audīre cupiam.
Virgil has spoken to me of you so often that I want to hear your poems.

ita = in such a way:
Quīntus carmen ita recitāvit ut omnēs eum laudārent.
Quintus recited the poem in such a way that all praised him.

(NB In consecutive clauses the reflexive refers to the subject of the **ut** clause; hence in this sentence **eum**, not **sē**.)

adeō = to such an extent, so much:
tua carmina Maecēnātem adeō dēlectant ut tē cognōscere cupiat.
Your poems please Maecenas so much that he wants to get to know you.

Exercise 43.1

Translate

1 Maecēnās tam prūdēns erat ut Octāviānus eī semper cōnfīderet.
2 litterīs adeō studēbat ut multōs poētās adiuvāret.
3 Vergilium tantī aestimābat ut eum in numerum amīcōrum intimōrum accēperit.
4 Vergilius Maecēnātī dē Quīntō totiēns dīxerat ut ille Quīntum cognōscere vellet.
5 cum Vergilius Quīntum Maecēnātī commendāvisset, ille tam verēcundus erat ut fārī nōn posset.
6 Quīntus putābat Maecēnātem sē contemnere.
7 sed Vergilius dīxit Maecēnātem eum dīlēxisse et carminibus eius dēlectātum esse.
8 tandem Maecēnās Quīntum revocātum iussit in numerō amīcōrum suōrum esse.

In consecutive clauses the normal rules of sequence are not necessarily followed; the tenses of the subjunctive can be varied according to the sense, e.g.

> **tam dīligenter herī labōrābat ut hodiē fessus sit.**
> He worked so hard yesterday that he is tired today.
> **Siciliam ita vastāvit ut restituī nūllō modō possit**. (Cicero *Verr.* 1.4)
> He (has) so plundered Sicily that it can in no way be restored.
> (The plundering took place in the past but the consequence is still present.)

The perfect subjunctive is used to stress the actuality of the event:

> **Maecēnās Vergilium tantī aestimābat ut eum in numerum amīcōrum intimōrum accēperit.**
> Maecenas valued Virgil so highly that he accepted him into the number of his closest friends.

Exercise 43.2

Translate into Latin

1 Many men were so foolish that they despised Quintus because he was the son of a freedman.
2 But Maecenas valued highly all who were talented (**ingeniōsus, -a, -um**).
3 He did not ask whether they were the sons of freedmen or nobly born (= born from a noble family).
4 Maecenas was so busy (= occupied by affairs) that he did not call Quintus back at once.
5 But in the ninth month he called him back and told him to be one of his friends.
6 He said that he had been delighted by Quintus' poems; he promised that he would help him.

P.S.

Inscriptions on tombstones throw a great deal of light on the life of ordinary Roman citizens. Once you have mastered the abbreviations used, you will find them easy to read.

Four funerary inscriptions on girls who died young:

1 *Felicius Simplex, centurion of the Sixth Legion, made the following memorial for his little daughter:*

D.M. SIMPLICIAE FLORENTINAE ANIMAE INNOCENTISSIMAE QUAE VIXIT MENSES DECEM FELICIUS SIMPLEX LEGIONIS VI CENTURIO PATER FECIT

(inscribed on a stone coffin found in York)

D.M. = **dīs mānibus** (sacred) to the deified spirits of the dead (this formula often starts funerary inscriptions, followed by the name of the dead person in the dative, or sometimes the genitive, case)

2 *Panathenais made the following inscription for her daughter who died tragically just before her marriage:*

D.M. s(acrum). Callistē vīxit annīs xvi mēnsēs iii hōras vi et sēmisse: nūptūra īdibus Octōbris, moritur iiii īdūs Octōbrēs: Panathēnais māter pia cārae fīliae fēcit.

(from Mauretania in North Africa)

sēmisse half
īdibus Octōbris on 15 October
iiii = **ante diem quārtum** the fourth day before the Ides (12 October)

3 *The following illustrates how barren and desolate the pagan beliefs about life and death were:*

D.M. sacrum. Aurēliae Vercellae coniugī dulcissimae, quae vīxit plūs minus annīs XVII. 'nōn fuī, fuī, nōn sum, nōn dēsīderō.' Anthimus marītus eius.

plūs minus more or less, approximately
Anthimus . . . supply 'made this monument'

4 *The following is a funerary inscription for a Christian girl, the daughter of a veteran of the Roman army:*

Aurēliae Mariae puellae, virginī innocentissimae, sāncte pergentī ad iūstōs et ēlēctōs in pāce. quae vīxit annōs XVII, mēnsēs V, diēs XVIIII, spōnsāta Aurēliō Damātī diēbus XXV. Aurēlius Iānisirēus veterānus et Sextīlia parentēs īnfēlīcissimae fīliae dulcissimae ac amantissimae contrā vōtum. quī dum vīvent, habent magnum dolōrem. Martyrēs sanctī, in mente habēte Mariam.

(from Aquileia in North Italy)

sāncte pergentī going in holiness
spōnsāta betrothed
contrā vōtum supply
hōc fēcērunt made this monument contrary to their prayers, i.e. they had prayed that she should live

Chapter 44

Conditional clauses

These are clauses introduced by **sī** = 'if' or **nisi** = 'unless/if . . . not', which state a condition on which the truth of the main clause depends, e.g.

1 Simple fact (open) conditions

sī hoc dīcis, errās. If you say this, you are wrong.
sī hoc fēcistī, stultus erās. If you did this, you were foolish.

In these sentences the truth of the main clause is left open, e.g. in the second example the speaker does not say that 'you were foolish' as a fact, but simply says '*If* you did this, you were foolish.'
You have already met many sentences of this type; they present no difficulty; both English and Latin use the indicative.

2 Contrary to fact conditional clauses

sī pater noster adesset, nōs adiuvāret.
If our father were here, he would be helping us (but he is not here).
sī hoc fēcissēs, stultus fuissēs.
If you had done this, you would have been foolish (but you didn't).

The form of the sentence suggests that the main clause is untrue. In this case Latin uses the subjunctive in both the conditional and the main clauses; English uses the conditional tense 'would/should' in the main clause.
The imperfect subjunctive is used to refer to present time, the pluperfect subjunctive to past time, e.g.

sī prūdēns essēs, hoc nōn facerēs.
If you were wise, you would not be doing this (but you are doing it).
sī festīnāvissent, tempore advēnissent.
If they had hurried, they would have arrived in time (but they didn't hurry).
nisi imprūdēns fuissēs, iam incolumis essēs.
Unless you had been imprudent, you would now be safe.
(**fuissēs** refers to past time, **essēs** to present)

3 Future conditional clauses

These are of two sorts:

(a) Future vivid, with the indicative (you have often met these), e.g.

sī domum revēneris, omnia tibi nārrābō.
If you come back home, I will tell you everything.

Notice that Latin uses the future or, more often, the future perfect, in the **sī** clause (English appears to use the present).

(b) Future less vivid, when the condition is represented as improbable, e.g.

sī domum reveniās, omnia tibi nārrem.
If you were to return home, I should tell you everything.
or If you returned home . . .

In these the present subjunctive is used in both the **sī** clause and the main clause.

Exercise 44.1

Translate (NB all the following sentences are 'contrary to fact' or 'future less vivid' conditional clauses, using the subjunctive; be sure you get the time reference (present, past or future) right)

1 sī fortiter pugnāvissētis, hostēs vīcissētis.
2 sī pater noster vīveret, cōnsilium nōbīs daret.
3 nisi Quīntus ē campō fūgisset, ab hostibus captus esset.
4 sī Quīntus prūdēns esset, in Brūtī exercitū nōn mīlitāret.
5 sī statim proficīscāmur, domum ante noctem adveniāmus.
6 sī puerī bonī fuissent, magister fābulam eīs nārrāvisset.
7 magister 'puerī,' inquit, 'sī dīligenter labōrētis, fābulam vōbīs nārrem.'
8 māter fīliae 'sī mē adiuvēs,' inquit, 'pater tē laudet.'
9 puella 'māter,' inquit, 'sī ōtiōsa essem, libenter tē adiuvārem.'
10 puella, nisi occupāta esset, mātrem libenter adiūvisset.

Exercise 44.2

Translate (NB some of the following sentences are 'simple fact' or 'future vivid' conditionals with the indicative, others 'contrary to fact' or 'future less vivid' with the subjunctive; be careful)

1 nisi Pompēius cum Sextō Pompēiō mīlitāvisset, iamdūdum (*long ago*) in Italiam rediisset.
2 sī Pompēius tandem redierit, omnēs gaudēbimus.
3 sī Octāviānum veniam rogāvissēs, ille tibi ignōvisset.
4 sī Octāviānus mihi ignōscat, Rōmae maneam.
5 sī mēcum cēnābis, reditum tuum celebrābimus.
6 sī plūs vīnī bīberitis, plānē ēbriī eritis.
7 nisi Pompēiī reditum celebrārēmus, tantum vīnī nōn biberēmus.
8 sī Quīntus alterum carmen recitābit, ego abībō.
9 nisi puellae tam pulchrae adessent, iamdūdum abiissem.
10 barbarus es, sī hōc carmine nōn dēlectātus es.

Exercise 44.3

Translate into Latin; before translating say what sort of conditional you are writing – 'simple fact', 'contrary to fact', 'future vivid' or 'future less vivid'

1 If you come home soon, I will tell you everything.
2 If you were to set out at once, you would arrive here in two days.
3 If you had not delayed at Rome, I would have met you in Capua.
4 If you waited for me in Capua, you were very foolish.
5 If you were here now, you would be sitting with me under a tree drinking wine.

P.S.

Note the following

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque whoever, whatever
quōcumque (to) wherever, whithersoever
ubicumque wherever
quācumque by whatever way

Chapter 45

Uses of the subjunctive in main clauses

In main clauses the subjunctive has several uses: jussive (used in exhortations and 3rd person commands); deliberative questions; optative (wishes); potential.

1 Jussive (hortatory)

ad forum festīnēmus.	Let us hurry to the forum.
nē domum redeant.	Let them not return home.

You are already familiar with this usage. The negative is **nē**.

2 Deliberative questions

quid faciāmus?	What are we to do?

The subjunctive (1st person singular or plural) is used in questions when the speaker is wondering what to do.

utrum hīc maneam an domum redeam?	Am I to stay here or return home?

Exercise 45.1

Translate

1 quid tibi dīcam?
2 quō eāmus?
3 utrum hostibus resistāmus an fugiāmus?
4 quōmodo molestum illum dīmittam?
5 quandō Rōmā discēdāmus?

3 Optative (wishes)

(utinam) diū vīvās semperque valeās.	May you live long and always be healthy!
(utinam) pater meus adesset.	I wish my father were here!
(utinam) pater meus nē Rōmam abiisset.	I wish my father had not gone away to Rome.

NB **1 utinam** (= I wish that) is often used in wishes to make the meaning clear.

2 The tenses of the subjunctive are used as in 'contrary to fact' conditional clauses, i.e. the present subjunctive is used for a wish for the future, the imperfect for a wish for the present and the pluperfect for a wish for the past.

3 The negative is **nē**:

(utinam) nē in perīculum incidāmus.	May we not fall into danger.

Exercise 45.2

Translate

1 vīvās et valeās!
2 utinam dīves essem.
3 utinam nē mihi haec dīxissēs.
4 deī tē servent.
5 utinam incolumis domum redeās.

4 Potential

velim hoc facere.	I should like to do this.
nōn ausim pugnāre.	I would not dare to fight.

This use of the subjunctive is not common except with **velim, nōlim, ausim** (an irregular present subjunctive form of **audeō**). It is a sort of conditional subjunctive with the 'if' clause omitted, e.g. 'I should like to help you (if I could).' The negative is **nōn**.

Exercise 45.3

In each of the following sentences say what type of subjunctive is being used: jussive (i.e. expressing an exhortation or command), deliberative, optative (i.e. expressing a wish) or potential; then translate

1 quid faciam, amīce? quōmodo Octāviānō persuādeam ut mihi ignōscat?
2 ad palātium eāmus. prō certō habeō eum tibi ignōtūrum esse.
3 utinam Octāviānus nōs benignē accipiat.
4 Octāviāne, velim amīcum meum Pompēium tibi commendāre.
5 salvē, Pompēī. utinam nē inimīcōs meōs tam diū adiūvissēs.
6 sed gaudeō tē tandem vēnisse ut veniam rogēs. tibi libenter ignōscō. nōlim enim quemquam pūnīre quī veniam petit.
7 omnēs inimīcitiās dēpōnāmus. utinam posthāc semper pāce fruāmur et concordiā.

Exercise 45.4

Translate into Latin

1 Are we to stay here or hurry home?
2 Let us stay here; we cannot reach home before night.
3 I would not dare travel (= make the journey) by night.
4 I wish we had not set out so late!
5 I wish we were now safe at home!
6 We are in great danger. May the gods preserve us!
7 Let us set out for home at first light.

P.S. Two doctors

1 *The funerary inscription of a successful freedman:*

P. Decimius P(ūbliī) l(ībertus) Erōs Merula, medicus, clīnicus, chīrurgus, oculārius; VIvir. hic prō lībertāte dedit HS L. hic prō sēvirātū in rem p(ūblicam) dedit HS II. hic in statuās pōnendās in aedem Herculis dedit HS XXX. hic prīdiē quam mortuus est relīquit patrimōnium . . .

(from Assisi)

VIvir the *sēvirī* were priests of the cult of Augustus, the highest office a freedman could attain
HS L 50,000 sesterces
in statuās pōnendās for setting up statues; **aedem** temple
patrimōnium a fortune/estate (figure missing)

2 *A surgeon's victim:*

D.M. Euhelpistī līb(ertī): vīxit annīs XXVII mēns(ibus) IIII diēb(us) XI: flōrentēs annōs mors subita ēripuit. anima innocentissima, quem medicī secārunt et occīdērunt. P. Aelius Aug. līb(ertus) Pecūliāris alumnō suō.

anima a soul (**quem** refers to **anima**, masculine, because the soul is that of a man); **secārunt** cut
alumnō suō for his fosterchild (supply 'made this monument')

Chapter 46

A review chapter.

Exercise 46.1

Put the following indicative verb forms into corresponding forms of the subjunctive

1 amāmus
2 dīcēbant
3 secūtī erant
4 proficīscimur
5 gaudent
6 sunt
7 volēbant
8 ferēbāmus
9 nōlō
10 potes

Exercise 46.2

Translate

1 Maecēnās dīxit sē parvum fundum Quīntō datūrum esse.
2 'tibi opus est ōtiō' inquit 'ut carmina compōnās. velim tē adiuvāre.'
3 eum rogāvit ut posterō diē prīmā hōrā redīret.
4 'eāmus' inquit 'ad collēs Sabīnōs ut fundum īnspiciāmus.'
5 Quīntus, cum fundum vīdisset, tam laetus erat ut vix fārī posset.
6 Quīntus, fundō vīsō, Maecēnātī grātiās reddere cōnātus est.
7 sed Maecēnās dīxit eum omnia illa bene meruisse; nam amīcum fidēlem esse et modestum.
8 nisi multīs negōtiīs occupātus esset, cum Quīntō in fundō mānsisset.
9 posterō diē, Maecēnāte Rōmam profectō, Quīntus vīlicō vocātō dīxit, 'venī mēcum; velim fundum īnspicere.'

10 tōtō fundō īnspectō Quīntus prope fontem sedēns carmen compōnēbat.
11 carmen tam pulchrum composuit ut fōns Bandusia inter fontēs nōbilēs iam numerētur.
12 fundum tantī aestimābat ut ibi semper manēre vellet Rōmamque invītus redīret.

Exercise 46.3

Translate into Latin

When Maecenas said that he would give him a farm, Quintus rejoiced; for he had always wanted to live in the country. Maecenas told him to come early the next day so that they might ride to the Sabine hills and inspect the farm.

Setting out at first light, they arrived there as the sun was setting. Maecenas said, 'If we had ridden quicker, we would have inspected the farm before night. But tomorrow the farm manager will show you everything. Now come in and see the villa.'

The next day Maecenas said that he must return to Rome. 'If I were at leisure,' he said, 'I would stay and inspect the farm with you. But I am so busy that I must return to Rome at once.' Quintus thanked Maecenas again and said goodbye to him. Then he summoned the farm manager and asked him to show him the farm. Quintus was delighted by everything that he saw.

P.S.

The following prepositions/adverbs form comparative and superlative adjectives:

		comparative	*superlative*	
extrā + acc.	outside	**exterior**	**extrēmus**	uttermost, extreme
intrā + acc.	inside	**interior**	**intimus**	innermost, most intimate
post + acc.	after	**posterior**	**postrēmus**	last
prae + acc.	before	**prior**	**prīmus**	first
suprā + acc.	above	**superior**	**suprēmus**	highest, latest
			summus	highest, greatest
ultrā + acc.	beyond	**ulterior**	**ultimus**	furthest, last

Chapter 47

The uses of cum

1 The conjunction **cum** most commonly means 'when'.

In *past* time it is normally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, e.g.

> **cum domum revēnissent, cēnāvērunt.**
> When they had returned home, they dined.
> **cum cēnārent, amīcus quīdam casam intrāvit.**
> When they were dining, a friend entered the house.

But:

(a) As you have seen, if the **cum** clause follows the main clause, the indicative is used, e.g.

cēnābant cum amīcus quīdam casam intrāvit.
They were dining when a friend entered the house.
sōl iam occiderat cum domum revēnērunt.
The sun had already set when they returned home.

(b) If **cum** means 'whenever', the pluperfect indicative is used, e.g.

cum Quīntus ad fundum redierat, semper gaudēbat.
Whenever Quintus had returned to his farm, he always rejoiced.

2 When **cum** meaning 'when' is used in *present* or *future* time it is always followed by the indicative, e.g.

cum Athēnās advēnerō, ad tē scrībam.
When I arrive at Athens I shall write to you.
cum fessī sumus, in hortō quiēscimus.
When we are tired, we rest in the garden.

3 **cum** can also mean 'since'; with this meaning it is always followed by the subjunctive, e.g.

cum fessī simus, in hortō quiēscimus.
Since we are tired, we are resting in the garden.
cum fessī essēmus, domum nōn festīnāvimus.
Since we were tired, we did not hurry home.

4 **cum** followed by the subjunctive occasionally means 'although'; this meaning is usually made clear by the insertion of **tamen** at the beginning of the main clause (**tamen** will then be translated 'still', 'even so'), e.g.

cum fessī simus, tamen dīligenter labōrāmus.
Although we are tired, we are still working hard.

Exercise 47.1

Translate

1 Quīntus Maecēnāsque, cum prīmā hōrā Rōmā discessissent, in collēs Sabīnōs equitāvērunt.
2 vesper iam aderat cum ad vīllam advēnērunt.
3 cum fessus esset Quīntus, tamen fundum īnspicere volēbat.
4 Maecēnās 'cum nox sit,' inquit, 'pauca vidēre possumus.'
5 Quīntus 'cum primum sōl ortus erit,' inquit, 'omnia īnspiciam.'
6 posterō diē cum Maecēnās Rōmam profectus esset, Quīntus vīlicum arcessīvit.
7 vīlicus, cum negōtiīs occupātus esset, tamen ad Quīntum festīnāvit.
8 omnia īnspexerant cum Quīntus vīlicum dīmīsit.
9 Quīntus, cum quiēscere vellet, prope fontem assēdit.
10 cum sub arbore sedēret, carmen composuit.

11 cum aestās vēnerat, Quīntus in collēs festīnābat.
12 cum Rōmam redierat, fundum semper dēsiderābat (*longed for*).

The uses of dum

1 **dum** most commonly means 'while'; with this meaning it is usually followed by the present indicative, even in past time, e.g.

> **dum in forō manēmus, amīcum vīdimus ad nōs currentem.**
> While we were waiting in the forum, we saw a friend running towards us.

But if the action of the **dum** clause goes on throughout the action of the main clause, the imperfect indicative is used, e.g.

> **dum in forō manēbamus, cum amīcīs colloquēbāmur.**
> While (= all the time that) we were waiting in the forum, we talked with friends.

2 **dum** can also mean 'until'; like other temporal conjunctions, it usually takes the indicative, e.g.

> **in forō manēbāmus dum sōl occidit.**
> We waited in the forum until the sun set.
> **hostēs secūtī sumus dum in castra fūgērunt.**
> We followed the enemy until they fled into their camp.

But if the **dum** clause expresses purpose as well as time, it takes the subjunctive, e.g.

> **in forō manēmus dum pater veniat.**
> We are waiting in the forum for our father to come (until our father may come).
> **Antōnius apud Actium morābatur dum mare tranquillum esset.**
> Antony delayed at Actium until the sea should be calm.

Exercise 47.2

Translate

1 dum Antōnius apud Actium morātur, Octāviānī cōpiae castra haud procul posuērunt.
2 dum Antōnius terrā marīque obsidēbātur, mīlitēs eius et famē et morbō moriēbantur.
3 Agrippa Antōnium obsidēbat dum ille ērumpere coāctus est.
4 Antōnius in castrīs mānsit dum mare tranquillum esset.
5 dum Antōnius classem Agrippae oppugnat, Cleopātra subitō fūgit.
6 dum Antōnius cum Cleopātrā fugiēbat, cōpiae eius fortiter pugnābant.
7 Octāviānus exspectāvit dum omnēs sē dēderent.
8 dum Antōnius ad Aegyptum fugit, Octāviānus captīvōs in exercitum suum accēpit.

The connecting relative

> **Apollō lyram Quīntō trādidit; quō factō ēvānuit.**
> Apollo handed his lyre to Quintus; after doing this he vanished (literally: which having been done he vanished).

> **Antōnius Cleopātram uxōrem suam esse prōnūntiāvit. quae cum cognōvissent senātōrēs, statim bellum Cleopātrae indīxerunt.**
> Antony proclaimed that Cleopatra was his wife. When the senators learned this (literally: which things when the senators learned), they at once declared war on Cleopatra.

The relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence instead of a demonstrative. In the first example above, **quō factō = eō factō**, in the second example, **quae cum cognōvissent = cum ea cognōvissent**.

Exercise 47.3

Translate

1 Cleopātra classem suam in fugam dūxit. quae cum vīdisset Antōnius, eam secūtus est.
2 Antōnius Cleopātram vīdit fugientem. quam adeō amāvit ut ipse quoque ē proeliō fūgerit.
3 quibus vīsīs Agrippa Antōniī classem etiam ferōcius oppugnāvit.
4 tandem sē dēdidērunt Antōniī mīlitēs. quōs Octāviānus hūmānē tractātōs in exercitum suum accēpit.
5 quibus cognitīs Antōnius dēspērāvit.

P.S. Alternative verb and noun forms

1 A shortened form of the 3rd person plural of the perfect active is commonly used by the poets: **-ēre** for **-ērunt**, e.g. **parāvēre** for **parāvērunt**. So Horace's spring ode begins **diffūgēre nivēs = diffūgērunt nivēs** (the snows have fled away).

2 In the perfect active of 4th conjugation verbs **v** is often omitted, e.g. **audiit = audīvit, audiērunt = audīvērunt, audierat = audīverat.**
In the perfect infinitive and pluperfect subjunctive, the forms are further shortened by the omission of one **i: audīsse = audīvisse** and **audīssem = audīvissem**, etc.
So also from e.g. **petō: petiit** for **petīvit**, and from **eō: iit** for **īvit**; compounds of **eō** always use this form, e.g. **rediit** (never **redīvit**).
So also we find from 1st conjugation verbs **parāvisset** shortened to **parāsset**, and **parāvisse** shortened to **parāsse**.

3 Note carefully the alternative forms of the future infinitive of **esse: futūrus esse, fore.**

4 The active imperatives have alternative forms as follows: **parā/parātō, parāte/parātōte,** but these are found commonly only in the following:

estō, estōte	be!
scītō, scītōte	know! be assured!
mementō, mementōte	remember!

5 The 2nd person singular of the future passive has alternative forms: **parābere** for **parāberis, monēbere** for **monēberis, regēre** for **regēris, audiēre** for **audiēris, capiēre** for **capiēris.**

6 3rd declension nouns with stems in **-i** have an alternative ablative singular in **-ī**, e.g. **nāvī** for **nāve**; and 3rd declension nouns and adjectives have an alternative accusative plural in **-īs**, e.g. **omnīs cīvīs** for **omnēs cīvēs.** (Note that the **i** is long.)

Chapter 48

Clauses of fearing

1 **Antōnius timēbat nē in manūs hostium caderet.**
Antony feared lest/that he might fall into the hands of the enemy.
Cleopātra verēbatur nē Octāviānō prōderētur.
Cleopatra was afraid she would/might be betrayed to Octavian.
timēmus nē hostēs nōs capiant.
We are afraid the enemy may catch us.

Fears for the future are expressed by **nē** + subjunctive: present subjunctive if the leading verb is present or future; imperfect subjunctive if the leading verb is past.
English introduces such clauses by either 'lest', or 'that', or without any connecting conjunction.

2 **timēmus nē puerī domum ante noctem nōn redeant.**
We are afraid the children may not return home before night.

If the clause of fearing is negative **nē nōn** is used.

3 **timēbāmus longius prōgredī.**
We were afraid to advance further.

Latin, like English, uses an infinitive when the meaning is 'I am afraid to do something.' Thus **hoc facere timeō** = I am afraid to do this, but **timeō nē hoc faciat** = I am afraid he may do this.

Exercise 48.1

Translate

1 Maecēnās timēbat nē ad fundum ante noctem nōn advenīrent.
2 'festīnā, Quīnte,' inquit; 'timeō nē sērō adveniāmus.'
3 Quīntus 'equus meus fessus est; timeō celerius equitāre.'
4 puerī, veritī nē magister sibi īrāscerētur, dīligenter labōrābant.
5 timēbant nē magister sē nōn dīmitteret.
6 puellae, veritae nē puerī sē sequantur, domum festīnant.

NB **1** The reflexives **sē** and **suus** refer back to the leading verb (see numbers 4, 5 and 6 above). (You will notice that **sē** and **suus** refer to the subject of the leading verb not only in indirect statement, question and command, but also to clauses of purpose introduced by **ut** or **nē** (since purpose is a thought in one's head), and to clauses of fearing introduced by **nē** (since the fear is a feeling in one's heart).

2 veritī, veritae (numbers 4 and 6); these are perfect participles, 'having feared', but the English idiom is to use the present, 'fearing'.

Exercise 48.2

Translate the following sentences, in each of which the perfect participle could be translated by an English present (English is less precise in its use of tenses than Latin)

1 ducem secūtī ad urbem mox advēnimus.
2 prīmā lūce profectus domum ante noctem rediī.
3 Cleopātra, verita nē Octāviānō prōderētur, turrem relinquere nōluit.
4 Cleopātra, Antōnium intuita, sciēbat eum moritūrum esse.
5 senex carcerem ingressus custōdēs salūtāvit.

Exercise 48.3

Translate into Latin

1 Let us hurry; I am afraid we may arrive late.
2 Fearing that the master might be angry with them, the boys waited outside the door of the school.
3 The girls were not afraid to enter; for they knew that the master would not be angry with them.
4 Fearing that Antony would be defeated, Cleopatra fled with her ships.
5 Antony was not afraid to fight, but overcome by his love for (= of) Cleopatra he followed her.

P.S. A triumphal arch and a war hero

1 *The following inscription is carved on the triumphal arch in Rome commemorating the emperor Claudius' invasion of Britain (AD 43):*

> TIberiō CLAUDiō DRUSI Fīliō CAISARI AUGUSTO
> GERMANICO PONTIFICI MAXIMO TRIBūniciā
> POTESTATE XI COnsulī V IMPERATORI PATRI PATRIAE
> SENATUS POPULUSQUE ROMANUS QUOD REGES
> BRITANNIAE XI DEVICTOS SINE ULLA IACTURA IN
> DEDITIONEM ACCEPERIT GENTESQUE BARBARAS
> TRANS OCEANUM SITAS PRIMUS IN DICIONEM
> POPULI ROMANI REDEGERIT.

pontificī maximō high priest
tribūniciā potestāte XI holding tribunician power for the eleventh time (i.e. AD 51–2)
senātus populusque Rōmānus after this subject, supply 'dedicated this arch'; **iactūrā** loss
in dīciōnem . . . redēgerit brought under the power of . . .

The letters in small print are omitted, giving common abbreviations.
The inscription begins with the full names and titles of the emperor in the dative case.

2 *A war hero:*

> C. Gaviō L(ūciī) f(īliō) Silvānō, prīmipīlārī leg(iōnis) VIII Aug., tribūnō coh(ortis) II vigilum, tribūnō coh(ortis) XIII urbānae, tribūnō coh(ortis) XII praetōr(iae), dōnīs dōnātō ā dīvō Claud(iō) bellō Britannicō torquibus armillīs phalerīs corōnā aureā, patrōnō colōn(iae), dēcrētō decuriōnum.
>
> (from Turin)

The career of Gavius Silvanus is given in ascending order; he was senior centurion (*prīmipīlāris*) of the Eighth Legion Augusta, which served in Britain in the invasion of Claudius (AD 43). He was promoted to serve in Rome, first as commander of the second cohort of the *vigilēs* (watchmen), then commander of the thirteenth urban cohort (police), lastly as commander of the twelth cohort of the Praetorian guard (the emperor's bodyguard). For his service in Britain he was highly decorated by Claudius, being awarded *torquēs* (chain), *armillae* (bracelets), *phalerae* (medals) and a golden crown. He became the patron of his colony (Turin), and this memorial was erected by decree of the town councillors (*decuriōnēs*). (In AD 65 he took part in the conspiracy against the emperor Nero and, when it failed, committed suicide: see Tacitus *Annals* 15.50, 60, 71.)

Chapter 49

Impersonal verbs

A small number of verbs in English do not have a personal subject, e.g. 'it rains', 'it snows'; it makes no sense to ask 'Who rains?' 'Who snows?' Such verbs are called 'impersonal', since they have no person as subject. In Latin there is a fair number of such verbs, e.g.

pluit	it rains
ningit	it snows
tonat	it thunders
necesse est	it is necessary
fās est	it is right

Many Latin impersonal verbs are not used impersonally in English, e.g.

with the accusative of the person:

(mē) oportet	it behoves me = I ought
(mē) pudet	it shames me = I am ashamed
(mē) iuvat	it delights me = I like to
(mē) taedet	it wearies me = I am tired of (+ genitive)

with the dative of the person:

(mihi) licet	it is allowed to me = I may
(mihi) placet	it pleases me = I decide

They are often followed by an infinitive, e.g.

hoc facere mē oportet.	I ought to do this.
eī placuit domum redīre.	He decided to return home.
nōbīs licuit lūdōs spectāre.	We were allowed to watch the games.

Exercise 49.1

Translate

1 Octāviānō placuit in Oriente morārī.
2 necesse erat prōvinciās praesidiīs cōnfirmāre.
3 tandem eī licuit Rōmam redīre.
4 omnēs cīvēs bellōrum cīvīlium taeduit.
5 quandō nōbīs licēbit pāce fruī?
6 nōs oportet Octāviānō pārēre, quod pācem populō Rōmānō restituit.
7 Maecēnātem iuvābat poētās fovēre.
8 Quīntum urbis strepitūs taedēbat.
9 Maecēnātī placuit Quīntō fundum dare.
10 Quīntum oportuit Rōmam redīre sed eī placuit in fundō manēre.

Intransitive verbs in the passive

Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally in the passive, e.g.

Antōniō nūntiātum est.	It was announced to Antony.
ferōciter pugnātum est.	It was fought fiercely, i.e. there was a fierce battle.

Sometimes verbs of motion are used impersonally in the passive; in such cases you must translate them in the active, supplying a person from the context, e.g.

prīmā lūce profectī sumus; merīdiē ad montem ventum est.
We set out at dawn; at midday we came (literally: it was come) to the mountain.
undique concurritur.
It is run together from all sides, i.e. men run together from all sides.

Verbs which take the dative are used impersonally in the passive:

captīvīs parsum est.	It was spared to the captives, i.e. the captives were spared.
mihi persuāsum est.	I was persuaded.

Exercise 49.2

Translate

1 Antōniō nūntiātum est Octāviānum omnibus cum cōpiīs in Aegyptum prōgredī.
2 eī placuit prope Alexandrīam proelium committere.
3 terrā marīque ferōciter pugnātum est; tandem tamen Antōniī cōpiae fūgērunt.
4 omnibus captīvīs ab Octāviānō parsum est.
5 Octāviānī cōpiae Alexandrīam prōgressae sunt. ubi in urbem ventum est, nūntium ad Cleopātram mīsit.
6 Cleopātrae imperātum est ut turrem relinqueret.
7 nūntius 'sī tē dēdideris,' inquit, 'tibi ignōscētur.'
8 sed eī nōn persuāsum est ut sē dēderet.

Exercise 49.3

Translate the following sentences into Latin, using impersonal verbs for the phrases in heavy type

1 We set out at the first hour and hurried into the hills; before midday **we reached** the top of the mountain.
2 **We decided** to wait there for two hours.
3 But **we were not allowed** to rest for long.
4 For a shepherd warned us not to delay, and **we were persuaded** to descend at once.
5 It was a long and difficult journey, and before we reached home, **I was tired of** mountains.

P.S. The genders of 3rd declension nouns

These have to be learned in each case, but the following general rules will be some help:

1 Nouns ending **-er** in the nominative are masculine, e.g. **pater**, **imber**, except for:
mulier (woman), **māter** (mother), **linter** (boat), which are feminine
iter (journey), **vēr** (spring), which are neuter

2 All nouns ending **-or/-ōs** in the nominative are masculine, e.g. **honor**, **flōs**, except for:
soror (sister), **uxor** (wife), **arbor** (tree), which are feminine
cor (heart), **aequor** (sea), which are neuter

3 All nouns ending **-iō** in the nominative are feminine, e.g. **īnscrīptiō**, except for **centuriō** (centurion), **decuriō** (town councillor).

4 All nouns ending **-ās** in the nominative, e.g. **aetās** (age), are feminine, with a few rare exceptions, e.g. **gigās** (giant).

5 All nouns ending **-ūdō** in the nominative, e.g. **magnitūdō** (greatness, size), are feminine.

6 All nouns ending **-e**, **-us**, **-en** in the nominative, e.g. **mare** (sea), **genus** (race), **flūmen** (river), are neuter.

Chapter 50

Gerunds

ars scrībendī = the art of writing

The gerund is an active verbal noun, declined like **bellum**:

1st	*2nd*	*3rd*	*4th*	*mixed*
para- parandum *preparing*	mone- monendum *warning*	reg- regendum *ruling*	audi- audiendum *hearing*	capi- capiendum *taking*

It is common in the accusative after **ad**, expressing purpose, e.g.

vēnī ad vōbīs succurrendum. I have come to help you.

It is used in the genitive with **causā** = by reason of, for the sake of, as another way of expressing purpose, e.g.

vēnī vōbīs succurrendī causā. I have come to help you.
(Notice that **causā** follows the word it governs.)

It is found in the dative with verbs and phrases requiring a dative, e.g.

nōn satis ōtiī habēbō carmina scrībendō. I shall not have enough leisure for composing poems.

It is common in the ablative expressing cause or means, e.g.

celeriter currendō domum ante noctem advēnī. By running fast I arrived home before night.

NB **1** the gerund of **eō** is **eundum.**

2 In English the present participle (a verbal adjective) and the gerund (a verbal noun) have the same form, e.g. 'writing'. In Latin the verbal adjective and the verbal noun are clearly distinguished, e.g.

Augustus in tablīnō sedēbat epistolam scrībēns.
Augustus was sitting in the study writing a letter.
(**scrībēns** is a verbal adjective describing Augustus)

Augustus nōn satis ōtiī habēbat ad epistolās scrībendum.
Augustus did not have enough leisure for writing letters.
(**scrībendum** is a verbal noun governed by **ad**)

Exercise 50.1

Translate

1 Quīntus artem dīcendī Rōmae didicit.
2 deinde Athēnās vēnit philosophiae stūdendī causā.
3 dīligenter stūdendō multa ibi didicit.
4 Athēnīs discessit ad mīlitandum cum Brūtō.
5 fortissimum sē praebuit in hostibus resistendō.
6 Brūtō mortuō ad Italiam rediit parentēs quaerendī causā.
7 scrība aerāriī ā Marcō factus, satis ōtiī habēbat carmina scrībendō.
8 Octāviānus inimīcīs ignōscendō omnēs cīvēs sibi conciliāvit.
9 Pompēius Rōmam rediit veniam petendī causā.
10 Quīntus omnēs amīcōs convocāvit ad Pompēiī reditum celebrandum.

Exercise 50.2

Translate into Latin

1 We have come to serve with Brutus (use **ad** + gerund).
2 For he is fighting to defend liberty (use gerund + **causā**).
3 Did you not hear the signal to advance (= of advancing)?
4 Do not try to save yourselves by delaying.
5 By fighting bravely we shall defeat the enemy and save the republic.
6 Quintus was ordered to lead his legion against Antony's forces.
7 There was a fierce battle, but in the end Brutus was defeated.
8 Quintus, throwing away his shield (= his shield having been thrown away), saved himself by running to the camp.
9 There it was announced that Brutus was dead.
10 All saved themselves by fleeing into the woods.

P.S. Funerary inscription for a vestal virgin and an epigram on a British lady in Rome

1 A vestal virgin

Bareius Zoticus and his wife dedicate a memorial to Flavia Publicia, a vestal virgin, who after long years of service guarding the sacred fire, rose to become chief vestal virgin:

Fl(āviae) Pūbliciae, v(irginī) V(estālī) maximae sānctissimae ac rēligiōsissimae, quae per omnēs gradūs sacerdōtiī apud dīvīna altāria omnium deōrum et ad aeternōs ignēs diēbus noctibusque piā mente rīte dēserviēns meritō ad hunc locum cum aetāte pervēnit, Barēius Zōticus cum Flāviā Verēcundā suā ob eximiam eius ergā sē benevolentiam. dēdicāta pr(īdiē) Kal(endīs) Oct(ōbris) dominīs nostrīs Valeriānō Aug(ustō) IIII et Galliēnō Aug(ustō) III cōn(sulibus).

maximae chief (vestal virgin)
gradūs sacerdōtiī steps/ranks of the priesthood
rīte duly/according to religious custom
dēserviēns serving diligently
meritō deservedly; **ad hunc locum** i.e. to the post of chief vestal virgin
Bareius Zoticus and his wife (**suā**) (dedicated the memorial to her) because of (**ob**) her outstanding kindness towards them (**ergā sē**) **dēdicāta (est)** . . . (this memorial) was dedicated on 30 September AD 257 (when our lord Valerianus Augustus was consul for the fourth time and Gallienus Augustus for the third)

2 A British lady in Rome

Martial writes an epigram on Claudia Rufina, a British lady who married a Roman, taking a Roman name, and became so Romanized that she might have been born a Roman or even an Athenian:

> Claudia caeruleīs cum sit Rūfīna Britannīs
> ēdita, quam Latiae pectora gentis habet!
> quāle decus fōrmae! Rōmānam crēdere mātrēs
> Italides possunt, Atthides esse suam . . .
> sīc placeat superīs ut coniuge gaudeat ūnō
> et semper nātīs gaudeat illa tribus.
> (Martial 11.53)

cum although; **caeruleīs . . . Britannīs ēdita** born from the blue (i.e. woad-painted) Britons
quam . . . pectora . . . habet how she has the heart(s) of the Latin race = how Roman she has become at heart
Latiae = **Latīnae**, i.e. **Rōmānae**
quāle decus what beauty
Rōmānam (that she is) a Roman
mātrēs Italides Italian (Roman) mothers
Atthides Athenian (mothers)
superīs the gods above

Chapter 51

Gerundives

cēna paranda est.	Supper is to-be-prepared.
puerī monendī sunt.	The children are to-be-warned.
imperium regendum erat.	The empire was to-be-ruled.
magister audiendus est.	The master is to-be-listened-to.

Besides the *gerund* (an active verbal noun), Latin verbs have a passive verbal adjective called the *gerundive* which looks identical with the gerund:

parandus, -a, -um	to be prepared
monendus, -a, -um	to be warned
regendus, -a, -um	to be ruled
audiendus, -a, -um	to be heard
capiendus, -a, -um	to be taken

The gerundive is commonly used instead of a gerund:

Maecēnās poētās incitābat ad carmina compōnenda.
Maecenas used to encourage poets to compose poems.
Maecēnās amīcōs convocāvit ad recitātiōnem audiendam.
Maecenas called together his friends to hear a recitation.

In these examples the nouns (**carmina, recitātiōnem**) are governed by the preposition **ad,** and the gerundives, being adjectives, agree with the nouns. The literal meaning of the examples is:

1 Maecenas encouraged poets to poems to be composed.
2 Maecenas called together his friends to a recitation to be heard.

But English verbs have no gerundive and the Latin idiom is so alien to English that it is better to grasp the gerundive phrase as a whole than to wrestle with the literal meaning. If you do this, such phrases are not difficult.

NB Deponent verbs besides having a gerund have a gerundive, passive in meaning, e.g. **cōnandus, -a, -um** to be tried; **verendus, -a, -um** to be feared; **sequendus, -a -um** to be followed.

Exercise 51.1

Translate

1 Maecēnās amīcōs convocāvit ad poētās audiendōs.
2 inter aliōs Propertius vēnit carminis recitandī causā.
3 carmine optimē recitandō maximum plausum meruit.
4 Tibullus rūs recesserat ad carmina compōnenda.
5 Horātius Tibullum cōnsōlārī cōnātus est epistolā ad eum scribendā.
6 Horātius ad palātium īre solēbat ad Līviam salūtandam.
7 Līvia exemplum praebuit mātrōnae Rōmānae in officiīs perficiendīs.

8 Augustus Horātium rogāvit ut sē adiuvāret in epistolīs scrībendīs.
9 Horātius 'sī prīncipī pāream,' inquit, 'nōn satis ōtiī habeam ad carmina compōnenda.'
10 Maecēnās respondit, 'dīc prīncipī tē nōn satis valēre tantō operī suscipiendō.'

Exercise 51.2

Translate into Latin

One day (**quondam**) the Emperor (**prīnceps**) summoned Quintus to the palace (**palātium**). When he arrived there he found Livia spinning (= making) wool in the tablinum. He asked her why Augustus had summoned him, but she said that she did not know. He hurried to the Emperor, who received him kindly.

'Quintus,' he said, 'I am asking you to help me. I am so busy that I cannot write all my letters. Will you come every day to the palace to help me in writing my letters?'

Quintus was astonished but was not afraid to speak the truth. 'Emperor,' he said, 'I rejoice that you so trust me. I ought to help you. But I am not worthy of so great an honour, and I am afraid that if I were to do this, I would not have enough leisure for composing poems.'

The emperor did not compel Quintus to obey him but accepted his excuse patiently (**aequō animō**).

P.S. Two epigrams

1 *A nightmare doctor:*

lōtus nōbīscum est, hilaris cēnāvit, et īdem
  inventus māne est mortuus Andragorās.
tam subitae mortis causam, Faustīne, requīris?
  in somnīs medicum vīderat Hermocratem.
(Martial 6.53)

lōtus washed, i.e. he took a bath

2 *A noisy schoolmaster:*

quid tibi nōbīscum est, lūdī scelerāte magister,
  invīsum puerīs virginibusque caput?
nōndum cristātī rūpēre silentia gallī:
  murmure iam saevō verberibusque tonās . . .
vīcīnī somnum nōn tōtā nocte rogāmus:
  nam vigilāre leve est, pervigilāre grave est.
discipulōs dīmitte tuōs. vīs, garrule, quantum
  accipis ut clāmās, accipere ut taceās?
(Martial 9.68)

quid . . . est? What have we to do with you?; **scelerāte** villanous
invīsum . . . caput creature (literally: head) hateful to . . .
cristātī . . . gallī the crested cocks
verberibus tonās you thunder with blows; **vigilāre** to lie awake
pervigilāre to lie awake all night
garrule chatterbox!
vīs . . . accipere will you accept . . .

Chapter 52

Gerundives of obligation

lūdī omnī modō ōrnandī sunt.
The games must be (are to be) embellished in every way.
hoc carmen tibi scrībendum est.
This poem must be written by you, i.e. You must write this poem.

The gerundive is commonly used with **esse** expressing obligation (must/ought/have to). The person concerned is in the dative.

In English we often prefer to make such sentences active in form with the person concerned as the subject, e.g.

templum nōbīs aedificandum est.
We must build a temple.
multae recitātiōnēs mihi audiendae erant.
I had to listen to many recitations.
ad palātium vōbīs festīnandum erit.
You will have to hurry to the palace.

The gerundive of intransitive verbs is used impersonally in such expressions, literally 'it will have to be hurried by you'.

Exercise 52.1

Translate

1 lūdī summā rēligiōne celebrandī sunt.
2 tōtī populō fēriae agendae sunt.
3 sacrificia Augustō in monte Capitōlīnō facienda erant.
4 tertiō diē omnibus cīvibus ad Palātium conveniendum erat.
5 carmen Horātiī chorō puerōrum puellārumque cantandum erit.
6 festīnāte, amīcī; statim proficīscendum est.
7 nox adest. sī morābimur, in montibus tōtam noctem manendum erit.
8 nōn poterimus domum hodiē pervenīre; hīc manendum est dum sōl oriātur.
9 pāstor quaerendus est quī nōs in casam suam accipiet.
10 sī pāstōrem nōn invēnerimus, in silvīs dormiendum erit; sīc tūtī erimus.

The gerundive is sometimes found agreeing with the object of verbs such as **cūrō, mittō, dō** in phrases expressing purpose or intent:

Augustus corpus Vergiliī cūrāvit Neāpolī sepeliendum.
Augustus arranged for (cared for) Virgil's body to be buried at Naples.

Exercise 52.2

Translate

1 Maecēnās epistolam cursōrī (*his runner*) trādidit ad Quīntum ferendam.
2 Maecēnās multōs amīcōs convocandōs cūrāvit ad recitātiōnem audiendam.
3 omnibus bellīs cōnfectīs Augustus lūdōs saeculārēs celebrandōs cūrāvit.
4 Quīntus carmen composuit Apollinī Diānaeque cantandum.

Exercise 52.3

Translate into Latin

1 Since all wars are finished, the doors of the temple of Janus must be shut.
2 The peace which we now enjoy must be preserved for ever.
3 We must celebrate the new age with games (= the new age is to be celebrated by us).
4 Horace has written an excellent poem to be sung by a chorus.
5 All the citizens must hurry to the Palatine mount (= it is to be hurried by all the citizens).
6 There we shall have to listen to the song which Horace has written.

Exercise 52.4

Translate into Latin

Quintus said that on his farm he could enjoy leisure for composing poems. He liked to read the books of the ancients and lie idle in the shade. But in fact whenever he returned to his farm, he always had to work hard. He called his farm manager and arranged for the fields to be ploughed; he sent out boys to guard the sheep; he himself with his own hands used to move stones from the fields. The grapes had to be picked and the wine had to be made. When evening came, he often used to ask his neighbours to dinner; after they had dined modestly, they sat in the garden drinking wine and talking about philosophy. You could scarcely say that Quintus was an idle (**ignāvus, -a, -um**) man, but he was content with his life and was always sad when he had to return to Rome.

P.S. Memorābilia: famous lines from Virgil

1 omnia vincit Amor: et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (*Ecl.* 10.69)

2 fēlīx quī potuit rērum cognōscere causās. (*Geo.* 2.490)
(of Lucretius, poet, philosopher and scientist)

3 fortūnātus et ille deōs quī nōvit agrestēs. (*Geo.* 2.493)
deōs agrestēs the gods of the country

4 tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem. (*Aen.* 1.33)
tantae mōlis erat so great a task it was

5 equō nē crēdite, Teucrī.
quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs. (*Aen.* 2.47–8)
et even

6 revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem
mittite; forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit. (*Aen.* 1.202–3)
(Aeneas encourages his followers when they are wrecked in Libya)

forsan . . . iuvābit perhaps you will delight

7 vīxī et quem dederat cursum Fortūna perēgī. (*Aen.* 4.652)
(Dido speaks, just before her suicide)

8 Trōs Anchīsiadēs, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō:
noctēs atque diēs patet ātri iānua Dītis;
sed revocāre gradūs superāsque ēvadere ad aurās,
hoc opus, hic labor est. (*Aen.* 6.126–9)
(The Sibyl warns Aeneas of the dangers of attempting to go down to the underworld)

patet is open
ātrī . . . Dītis of black Death

9 stābant ōrāntes prīmī trānsmittere cursum
tendēbantque manūs rīpae ulteriōris amōre. (*Aen.* 6.313–14)
(Aeneas sees the souls of the dead waiting to cross the river Styx into the underworld)

trānsmittere to cross

Chapter 53

The predicative dative

vīlicus Quīntō magnō auxiliō erat.
His farm manager was a great help to Quintus.
fūmus strepitusque urbis Quīntō odiō erant.
The smoke and racket of the city were hateful to Quintus.

In certain phrases Latin uses a noun in the dative after the verb **esse** instead of a complement in the nominative; thus the first example above means literally: 'The farm manager was *for a great help* to Quintus.' The second means literally: 'The smoke and racket of the city were *for a hatred* to Quintus.'

The commonest of such phrases are:

auxiliō esse	to be a help to
cordī esse	to be dear to (**cor, cordis**, n. heart)
cūrae esse	to be a care to, a cause of anxiety to
exemplō esse	to be an example to
exitiō esse	to be a cause of destruction to
odiō esse	to be hateful to
salūtī esse	to be a cause of safety to
ūsuī esse	to be useful to

Exercise 53.1

Translate

1 segetēs Quīntō magnae cūrae erant.
2 grandinēs (*hailstones*) nōnnumquam ūvīs exitiō fuērunt.
3 fundus Quīntō semper cordī erat.
4 Līvia exemplō erat mātrōnīs Rōmānīs.
5 fēminae dissolūtae (*licentious*) eī odiō erant.
6 Līvia Augustō magnō auxiliō fuit.
7 'nōnne vīs hunc canem emere? magnō ūsuī tibi erit.'
8 'canem iam habeō quī mihi cordī est ovēsque bene custōdit.'
9 'sed tuus canis īnfirmus est; sine dubiō hic canis auxiliō tibi erit.'
10 'ille canis saevus esse mihi vidētur; timeō nē exitiō ovibus sit.'

Exercise 53.2

Translate and identify the following parts of the verbs **dīcō** *and* **loquor**

1 dīcēns
2 dīxistis
3 dictus
4 dīcendum
5 dictūrus
6 dīcendus
7 dīc
8 dīxisse
9 dīcēmus
10 dīcāmus
11 locūtus
12 loquī
13 loquendum
14 loquēns
15 locūtūrus esse
16 loquerētur
17 loquere
18 locūtī essent
19 loquāmur
20 loquēbāris

The relative with the subjunctive

> **Quīntus servōs ēmīsit quī segetēs meterent, puerōs dēsignāvit quī ovēs custōdīrent.**
> Quintus sent out slaves to reap the corn, he appointed boys to guard the sheep.

The relative with the subjunctive can be used to express purpose; in the example above, **quī . . . meterent** means literally 'who might reap'; **quī . . . custōdīrent** means 'who might guard'.

> **prīmā lūce profectī sumus quō celerius domum advenīrēmus.**
> We set out at first light to reach (so that we might reach) home more quickly.

quō celerius literally means 'by which the more quickly'; purpose clauses containing a comparative are usually introduced by **quō**, not **ut**.

Exercise 53.3

Translate

1 Augustus quīnque legiōnēs in Oriente relīquit quae fīnēs prōvinciārum custōdīrent.
2 quattuor classēs īnstrūxit quae praedōnibus (*pirates*) exitiō essent mercātōribusque salūtī.
3 in urbe Rōmā vigiliās (*watches*) īnstituit quae cīvēs ā latrōnibus (*robbers*) incendiīsque tuerentur.
4 viās pūblicās per Italiam custōdīvit quō tūtius viātōrēs iter facerent.
5 Quīntus nūntium ad Maecēnātem mīsit, quī eī dīceret sē mox Rōmam reditūrum esse.

Exercise 53.4

Translate into Latin

1 This dog was a great help to the shepherd.
2 For he was very useful in defending the sheep.
3 And so he was dear to the heart of the shepherd.
4 When he was wounded by a wolf, the shepherd was very concerned for him (= he was a great care to the shepherd).
5 The shepherd's wife looked after the dog with the greatest care but did no good (= achieved nothing).
6 The shepherd summoned the doctor to cure him (= the dog) but he could not save him.
7 The shepherd's wife said that he must buy another dog.
8 But the new dog was no use to the shepherd in guarding the sheep.
9 The shepherd asked his master to give him a good dog to guard his sheep.
10 The master sent a messenger to say that he would soon give him an excellent dog.

Exercise 53.5

Translate into Latin

Dear Maecenas,

When I left Rome, I promised to return in five days. But I am still here on my farm. I ask you to forgive me. I cannot bear the heat (**calor, calōris,** m.) of summer in the city; I must stay in the hills until autumn comes. If I returned to Rome now, I would without doubt be ill, and you would be sad if you heard that I had died of fever (**febris, febris,** f.).

Besides, I am very busy. I am writing a poem about the art of poetry (**ars poētica**), which is very long and difficult. When summer is over, I shall go down to Naples and spend the winter there. But as soon as spring returns and I see the first swallow (**hirundō, hirundinis,** f.), I shall hurry to Rome and hope to see you there.

Your loving friend, Quintus.

P.S. Memorābilia: famous lines from Horace

1 nātūram expellās furcā, tamen usque recurret.
(*Epistles* 1.10.24)

furcā with a pitchfork
usque always

2 caelum nōn animum mūtant quī trāns mare currunt.
(*Epistles* 1.11.27)

3 dum loquimur, fūgerit invida
aetās: carpe diem, quam minimum crēdula posterō.
(*Odes* 1.11.7)

invida aetās jealous time
quam minimum crēdula posterō trusting as little as possible in tomorrow

4 multīs ille bonīs flēbilis occidit. (*Odes* 1.24.9)

5 aequam mementō rēbus in arduīs
servāre mentem. (*Odes* 2.3.1)

rēbus in arduīs in difficult things/in a crisis

6 omnēs eōdem cōgimur (*Odes* 2.3.25)

eōdem the same way, i.e. to death

7 sī frāctus illābātur orbis,
impavidum ferient ruīnae. (*Odes* 3.3.7)

illābātur were to fall on (him)
orbis the globe, the sky
impavidum fearless; supply 'him' = 'the good man'

Chapter 54

Summary of the uses of ut

ut + the indicative means either 'as' or 'when', e.g.

Horātius est vir ingeniōsus, ut dīcunt.	Horace is a clever man, as they say.
magister īrātus est, ut vidētur.	The master is angry, as it seems.
ego ita erō ut mē esse oportet.	I shall be such as I should be.
haec rēs sīc est ut nārrō.	This situation is such as I say.
ut vēnī cōram tē, pauca locūtus sum.	When I came into your presence, I said little.
ut domum rediimus, laetī cēnāvimus.	When we returned home, we dined happily.

ut + the subjunctive is used:

(a) in purpose clauses (see chapter 34)
(b) in indirect commands (see chapter 35)
(c) in consecutive clauses (see chapter 43)

Other uses of **ut** will be met when you read Latin texts.

Exercise 54.1

Translate the following sentences and explain the constructions in bold type

1 Augustus, **bellīs cīvīlibus cōnfectīs**, pācem populō Rōmānō reddidit.
2 sed imperium Rōmānum numquam tūtum **fuisset, nisi** fīnēs ad flūmina Rhēnum Dānuviumque **prōtulisset**.
3 **ut haec efficeret**, multōs annōs aut ipse aut ducēs eius mīlitābant multāsque gentēs externās imperiō adiēcērunt.
4 poētae canēbant **eum** cōpiās in Parthōs **ductūrum esse**, **nē** clādem ā Crassō acceptam **relinqueret** inultam.
5 nesciēbant tamen **quae** Augustus in animō **habēret**; ille enim nūllum bellum **suscēpit, nisi** pugnāre necesse **erat.**
6 ūnam clādem accēpit quā Vārus cum tribus legiōnibus in Germānia dēlētus est. **cuius clādis** Augustus numquam oblītus est.
7 tandem, **pāce** tōtum per imperium **restitūtā**, lūdōs saeculārēs celebrāre **eī placuit**.
8 **Quīntō carmen scrībendum erat, quod** chorus puerōrum puellārumque in lūdīs **cantāvit**.
9 **cum** Maecēnās **periisset, Quīntum vītae taeduit**.
10 nam verēbātur **nē** omnibus amīcīs mortuīs sōlus **relinquerētur**.

Exercise 54.2

Write short sentences in Latin to illustrate the following constructions and translate them

1 indirect statement
2 indirect command
3 indirect question
4 purpose clause
5 consecutive clause
6 ablative absolute
7 impersonal verb
8 predicative dative
9 gerund
10 gerundive of obligation

P.S. Augustī testāmentum

Augustus survived Horace by twenty-two years, dying at the age of seventy-seven in AD 14. By the time of his death he had established the imperial system so firmly that he was able to hand over power to his stepson, Tiberius, and leave behind him a dynasty which was to rule the Roman world for the next fifty years. He had given the Roman world peace and order, but at a heavy cost; liberty had been replaced by monarchy, which was to degenerate into tyranny under emperors such as Nero.

Below are six extracts from the *Rēs Gestae Dīvī Augustī* (The Achievements of the Divine Augustus – Augustus was declared divine after his death; hence he is called *Dīvus*). This was the testament which Augustus wrote shortly before his death, in which he outlined his career and all that he claimed to have achieved for Rome. It was read out in the senate after his death; it was then engraved on two bronze pillars set up in Rome. These have been lost, but copies were made in various parts of the empire and some of these have been partially preserved. The most complete copy is from Ancyra in southern Turkey, engraved on the wall of a mosque, which had previously been the temple of Rome and Augustus (see illustration, p. 183).

Translate the following extracts and write a short historical commentary on each (most of the events to which Augustus refers have been described in our narrative, but to explain some you may need the help of a book on Roman history)

1 eōs quī parentem meum trucīdāvērunt in exsilium expulī et posteā, cum bellum īnferrent reīpūblicae, vīcī bis aciē. (Here explain whom Augustus means by **parentem meum**. Who were **eōs quī . . . trucīdāvērunt**? What battles is he referring to? How true is his account of these events?)

trucīdāvērunt	murdered
bis	twice

2 bella terrā et marī cīvīlia externaque tōtō in orbe terrārum saepe gessī, victorque omnibus veniam petentibus cīvibus pepercī. externās gentēs, quibus tūtō ignōscere potuī, cōnservāre quam dēlēre māluī.

3 templum Iānī, quod clausum esse maiōrēs nostrī voluērunt cum per tōtum imperium Rōmānum terrā marīque esset parta pāx, ter mē prīncipe senātus claudendum esse cēnsuit.

esset parta had been won
cēnsuit voted

4 omnium prōvinciārum populī Rōmānī, quibus fīnitimae fuērunt gentēs quae nōn pārērent imperiō nostrō, fīnēs auxī. Aegyptum imperiō populī Rōmānī adiēcī. prō quō meritō senātūs cōnsultō Augustus appellātus sum.

omnium prōvinciārum is governed by **fīnēs; fīnitimae** bordering
prō quō meritō for this service, achievement; **senātūs cōnsultō** by decree of the senate

5 in cōnsulātū sextō et septimō postquam bella cīvīlia exstīnxeram, per cōnsēnsum ūniversōrum potītus omnium rērum, rempūblicam ex meā potestāte in senātūs populīque Rōmānī arbitrium trānstulī.

in cōnsulātū . . . septimō i.e. 28 and 27 BC
potītus (+ gen.) having control of
arbitrium the rule

6 post id tempus auctōritāte omnibus praestitī, potestātis autem nihil amplius habuī quam cēterī quī in magistrātū quōque conlēgae fuērunt.

praestitī (+ dat.) I excelled
nihil amplius no more
in magistrātū quōque in each magistracy/office

7 cum scrīpsī haec annum agēbam septuāgēsimum sextum.

septuāgēsimum seventieth

Posterity saw Augustus' rule in a different light, looking back on the tyranny of some of his successors. A hundred years later, Tacitus, the greatest of the Roman historians, began his *Annals*, which described events from the death of Augustus, with an attack on the changes in the Roman state and character for which Augustus was responsible.

Read the following and summarize Tacitus' account in your own words

ubi mīlitēs dōnīs, populum annōnā, cūnctōs dulcēdine ōtiī pellexit, īnsurgēbat paulātim, mūnia senātūs, magistrātuum, lēgum in sē trahēbat, nūllō adversante, cum ferōcissimī aut per bellum aut per prōscrīptiōnem cecidissent, cēterī nōbilium quantō quis servitiō prōmptior erat, tantō magis opibus et honōribus extollerentur et, novīs ex rēbus auctī, tūta et praesentia quam vetera et perīculōsa māllent . . . igitur versō cīvitātis statū nihil usquam erat prīscī et integrī mōris: omnēs iussa prīncipis aspectābant.

(*Annals* 1.2)

annōnā by free corn, the dole
dulcēdine the sweetness, the attractions;
pellexit he coaxed, seduced
īnsurgēbat he increased his powers
mūnia the functions
quantō quis servitiō prōmptior erat the readier any was for slavery
tantō magis so much the more
extollerentur they were raised
tūta et praesentia things safe and present, i.e. their present safety
usquam anywhere
nihil . . . prīscī et integrī mōris none of the old upright behaviour

P.P.S. The death of the centurion Lucilius

You encountered Lucilius as the centurion who was responsible for training Quintus and Pompeius when they joined the army of Brutus in chapter 35. He was a historical character who died in AD *14 serving in the army on the eastern frontier of the empire.*

When Augustus died, the legions stationed on the eastern frontier of the empire mutinied. The commanding officer, Blaesus, succeeded in quelling this mutiny and arrested and imprisoned the ringleaders. But it soon broke out again and the soldiers freed those who had been imprisoned. In the ensuing riot, stirred up by a soldier called Vibulenus, the centurion Lucilius was killed, as Tacitus describes:

flagrantior inde vīs, plūrēs sēditiōnī ducēs. et Vibulēnus quīdam gregārius mīles, ante tribūnal Blaesī adlevātus circumstantium umerīs, 'vōs' inquit 'hīs innocentibus et miserrimīs lūcem et spīritum reddidistis: sed quis frātrī meō vītam, quis frātrem mihi reddit? quem nocte proximā Blaesus iugulāvit per gladiātōrēs suōs, quōs in exitium mīlitum habet atque armat. respondē, Blaese; ubi cadāver abiēcistī? nē hostēs quidem sepultūrā invident. cum ōsculīs, cum lacrimīs dolōrem meum implēverō, mē quoque trucīdārī iubē.'

incendēbat haec flētū et pectus atque ōs manibus verberāns. sīc tantum tumultum excīvit ut mīlitēs haud multum ab exitiō lēgātī abessent. tribūnōs tamen et praefectum castrōrum extrūsērunt, sarcinae fugientium dīreptae sunt, et centuriō Lūcīlius interficitur, cui vocābulum 'cēdō alteram' dederant, quia frāctā vīte in tergō mīlitis alteram clārā vōce et rūrsus aliam poscēbat.

(*Annals* 1.23)

flagrantior (erat) vīs the violence was (even) fiercer
gregārius mīles a common soldier
adlevātus lifted up
vōs i.e. Blaesus' fellow soldiers who had freed the arrested mutineers **(hīs innocentibus et miserrimīs)**
iugulāvit murdered; **cadāver** corpse
sepultūrā invident begrudge burial
implēverō I have satisfied
trucīdārī to be murdered
ōs his face; **excīvit** he stirred up
haud multum abessent were not far from
extrūsērunt they drove out
sarcinae the packs
dīreptae sunt were plundered
vocābulum the nickname
'cēdō alteram' give (me) another
vīte vine-staff

Appendix I Rome's imperial mission

tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō
(hae tibi erunt artēs) pācīque impōnere mōrem,
parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.

(*Aeneid* 6.851–3)

1 **mementō** remember to! (an old imperative form)
2 **pācīque impōnere mōrem** and to impose custom on peace = to make peace customary
3 **subiectīs** the conquered
dēbellāre to war down, overcome by war

The *Res Gestae Divi Augusti*, Ancyra

1 Augustus

This is Augustus' account of his conquests (see map, p. 110 above):

mare pācāvī ā praedōnibus . . . omnium prōvinciārum populī Rōmānī quibus fīnitimae fuērunt gentēs quae nōn pārērent imperiō nostrō fīnēs auxī. Galliās et Hispāniās prōvinciās, item Germāniam, quā inclūdit Oceanus ā Gādibus ad ōstium Albis flūminis, pācāvī. Alpēs ē regiōne eā quae proxima est Hadriānō marī ad Tuscum pācāvī nūllī gentī bellō per iniūriam inlātō . . . Aegyptum imperiō Rōmānō adiēcī . . . Pannoniōrum gentēs, quās ante mē prīncipem populī Rōmānī exercitus numquam adiit, dēvictas . . . imperiō populī Rōmānī subīecī, prōtulīque fīnēs Illyricī ad rīpam flūminis Dānuī.

(*Res Gestae Divi Augusti* 25–30)

1 **pācāvī** I pacified, made peaceful
ā praedōnibus from pirates
omnium prōvinciārum is governed by **fīnēs** (line 3)
2 **fīnitimae** bordering
4 **item** likewise
quā inclūdit Oceanus where the Ocean forms the boundary
5 **ad ōstium Albis** to the mouth of the Elbe
6 **Hadriānō marī** the Adriatic sea
7 **per iniūriam** unjustly
10 **flūminis Dānuī** of the river Danube

2 Virgil

In the following two passages Virgil gives his view of Rome's imperial mission. In the first Jupiter prophesies the future of the descendants of Aeneas:

> Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia condet
> moenia Rōmānōsque suō de nōmine dīcet.
> hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō:
> imperium sine fīne dedī. quīn aspera Iūnō
> cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovēbit
> Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātam . . .
> nāscētur pulchrā Trōiānus orīgine Caesar,
> imperium Oceanō, fāmam quī terminet astrīs . . .
> aspera tum positīs mītēscent saecula bellīs:
> cāna Fidēs et Vesta, Remō cum frātre Quirīnus
> iūra dabunt; dīrae ferrō et compāgibus artīs
> claudentur Bellī portae; Furor impius intus
> saeva sedēns super arma et centum vīnctus aēnīs
> post tergum nōdīs fremet horridus ōre cruentō.
>
> (*Aeneid* 1.276–96)

1 **excipiet gentem** will take over the race; Jupiter has already foretold events from the Trojans' arrival in Latium up to the foundation of Rome by Romulus, son of Mars

1–2 **Māvortia . . . moenia** the walls of Mars

2 **dīcet** will call them

3 **mētās rērum** bounds of power

4 **quīn aspera Iūnō** even fierce Juno; Juno had always been the enemy of the Trojans and tried to prevent Aeneas reaching Italy

7 **Caesar** Augustus; his full name owing to his adoption by Julius Caesar was: C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus Augustus. The Julian *gēns* claimed descent from Iulus, Aeneas' son; hence he is **Trōiānus**. Virgil makes the reign of Augustus and the establishment of the Pax Romana the culmination of Roman history

8 **imperium . . . astrīs = quī imperium Oceanō terminet . . .** to bound his empire with the Ocean, his glory with the stars

9 **aspera . . . saecula** the fierce generations **mītēscent** will grow gentle

10 **cāna Fidēs** grey-haired Faith; Fides represents the old-fashioned Roman virtues of loyalty and good faith: Vesta, goddess of the hearth and home, represents traditional family ties

Remō . . . Quirīnus Quirinus is another name for Romulus; the killing of Remus by his brother is the epitome of civil war. Now they will be united

11 **dīrae ferrō et compāgibus artīs** grim with iron and close-knit fastenings, i.e. (gates) grim with close-knit fastenings of iron

12 **Bellī portae** the gates of War; the gates of the temple of Janus were closed when there was peace throughout the Roman empire

Furor impius wicked Madness; throughout the *Aeneid* Furor is opposed to Pietas; now at last Pietas will triumph and Furor – mad strife, the cause of a hundred years of civil war – will be confined

13–14 **centum aēnis . . . nōdīs** bound by a hundred bronze knots behind its back

14 **fremet** shall growl; **cruentō** bloodstained

In Book 6 of the Aeneid, *Aeneas goes down into the underworld to consult his dead father. Anchises shows him the souls of his descendants waiting to be born and foretells their imperial mission. In this pageant of Roman history, Aeneas first sees the souls of the kings descended from him who will rule over Alba Longa, ending with Romulus, the founder of Rome. From Romulus he jumps to Augustus, the second founder of Rome:*

hūc geminās nunc flecte aciēs, hanc aspice gentem
Rōmānōsque tuōs. hīc Caesar et omnis Iūlī
prōgeniēs magnum caelī ventūra sub axem.
hic vir, hic est, tibi quem prōmittī saepius audīs,
Augustus Caesar, dīvī genus, aurea condet
saecula quī rūrsus Latiō regnāta per arva
Sāturnō quondam, super et Garamantas et Indōs
prōferet imperium; iacet extrā sīdera tellūs,
extrā annī sōlisque viās, ubi caelifer Atlās
axem umerō torquet stellīs ardentibus aptum . . .

After Augustus Anchises shows Aeneas the souls of heroes of earlier times – the kings of Rome, then the great men of the republic, ending with the two Scipios who had defeated the Carthaginians and Quintus Fabius Maximus who had saved Italy from Hannibal. He breaks off this pageant to prophesy Rome's mission; others (the Greeks) will excel in the arts and sciences, but Rome will bring peace to the world:

excūdent aliī spīrantia mollius aera
(crēdō equidem), vīvōs dūcent de marmore vultūs,
ōrābunt causās melius, caelīque meātūs
dēscrībent radiō et surgentia sīdera dīcent:
tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō,
(hae tibi erunt artēs), pācīque impōnere mōrem,
parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.

(*Aeneid* 6.788–853)

1 **hūc . . . aciēs** now turn your two eyes this way
2–3 **Iūlī prōgeniēs** the descendants of Iulus (Aeneas' son)
3 **caelī ventūra sub axem** about to/destined to come beneath the vault of heaven
5 **dīvī genus** the son of a god; Julius Caesar was deified by decree of the senate after his death
5–6 **aurea condet saecula quī = quī aurea saecula condet**
6–7 **Latiō . . . Saturnō quondam** throughout the fields in Latium once ruled by Saturn; the god Saturn, according to legend, ruled over Latium in the Golden Age
7 **Garamantas et Indōs** the Garamantes were a tribe in North Africa, conquered by the Romans in 19 BC. Augustus had received an embassy from India the same year. These two peoples represent the ends of the world
8–9 **iacet . . . viās** the land lies beyond the stars, beyond the paths of the year and the sun, i.e. beyond the Zodiac and the annual path of the sun. Virgil means that the land beyond the Garamantes and the Indians, to which Augustus will extend the empire, lies beyond all known geographical limits
9 **caelifer Atlās** heaven-bearing Atlas, i.e. Atlas who holds up the heavens. The giant Atlas supports the heavens on his shoulders and turns (**torquet**) the axle-tree (**axem**) of the bowl of heaven, studded with shining stars (**stellīs ardentibus aptum**)
11 **excūdent** will beat out
spīrantia mollius aera bronzes (bronze statues) that breath more softly (i.e. more lifelike)
12 **equidem** I (emphatic)
dē marmore from marble
13 **ōrābunt causās melius** i.e. they will excel in rhetoric
caelī meātūs the wanderings (of the stars) of heaven
14 **radiō** with the (astronomer's) rod
15–17 see p. 183 above

3 Tacitus

The Romans invaded Britain in AD 43 and quickly brought the lowlands under their control, consolidating on a line from the Severn to the Trent. After that their advance into the highland zones was slower and more uncertain and they nearly lost out altogether when their harsh rule resulted in the rebellion of Boudicca (= Boadicea) in AD 60–61. In AD 77 Agricola was appointed governor; he first consolidated earlier conquests, finally subduing Wales and the central highlands of Britain. He then embarked on a series of campaigns which carried him into the highlands of Scotland. In his last campaign in AD 84 he advanced as far as the region of Aberdeen and defeated the Caledonians, who made a last stand at the Mons Graupius (probably in the Grampian hills).

The historian Tacitus married Agricola's daughter; he wrote a life of his father-in-law in which he describes in detail the battle of the Mons Graupius, the last and greatest of Agricola's victories. By a long tradition ancient historians attributed speeches to generals before key battles. In the speech made by Calgacus, the leader of the Caledonian forces, Tacitus gives us a picture of the Roman imperial mission as seen by the conquered.

Britannī nihil frāctī pugnae priōris ēventū et ultiōnem aut servitium expectantēs, tandemque doctī commūne perīculum concordiā prōpulsandum, lēgātiōnibus et foederibus omnium cīvitātium vīrēs excīverant. iamque super trīgintā mīlia armātōrum aspiciēbantur, et adhūc adfluēbat omnis iuventūs, cum Calgacus apud contractam multitūdinem proelium poscentem in hunc modum locūtus fertur:

'quotiēns causās bellī et necessitātem nostram intueor, magnus mihi animus est hodiernum diem cōnsēnsumque vestrum initium lībertātis tōtī Britanniae fore: nam et

1 **nihil frāctī** quite unbroken; **nihil** is used adverbially; **pugnae priōris** the previous year Agricola had defeated the Britons when they made a sudden attack on the ninth legion; **ultiōnem** vengeance
3 **prōpulsandum (esse)** must be repulsed
4–5 **vīrēs** the strength, the powers; **excīverant** had roused; **super** above = more than
6 **iuventūs** the youth
6–7 **apud contractam multitūdinem** before a crowd assembled
7 **in hunc modum** as follows (in this way)
8 **fertur** is said
9 **quotiēns** as often as, whenever
10 **magnus mihi animus est** (+ acc. and inf.) I have great confidence that
11 **fore = futūrum esse**
11–12 **et ūniversī coīstis** you are both all united (you have all come together)
12 **et servitūtis expertēs (estis)** and you are untouched by (having no part in) slavery
14 **quae . . . honesta** supply **sunt**
16 **īnfestiōrēs (sunt)** are more hostile (than the waves and rocks)
17 **per obsequium** by obedience
18 **raptōrēs orbis** plunderers of the world
postquam . . . terrae after the land(s) has failed them plundering everything, i.e. when there is no more land left for them to plunder
19 **scrūtantur** they fix their eyes on; **locuplēs** wealthy; **avārī (sunt)** they are greedy
20 **ambitiōsī** ambitious = eager for glory
satiāverit will satisfy (will have satisfied)
21 **opēs atque inopiam** wealth and want
parī adfectū with equal eagerness
22 **auferre trucīdāre rapere** the infinitives are used as nouns which are the object of **appellant** (they call plundering, murdering, raping empire)
23 **sōlitūdinem** a desert
24 **līberōs . . . ac propinquōs suōs** his own children and relatives
24–5 **nātūra . . . voluit** nature has willed that . . .
25 **per dīlectūs** by levies, by conscription
26 **libīdinem** lust

ūniversī coīstis et servitūtis expertēs, et nūllae ultrā terrae ac nē mare quidem sēcūrum, imminente nōbīs classe Rōmānā. ita proelium atque arma, quae fortibus honesta, eadem etiam ignāvīs tūtissima sunt . . . nūlla iam ultrā gēns, nihil nisi fluctūs et saxa, et īnfestiōrēs Rōmānī, quōrum superbiam frūstra per obsequium ac modestiam effugiās. raptōres orbis, postquam cūncta vastantibus dēfuēre terrae, mare scrūtantur: sī locuplēs hostis est, avārī, sī pauper, ambitiōsī, quōs nōn Oriēns, nōn Occidēns satiāverit: sōlī omnium opēs atque inopiam parī adfectū concupīscunt. auferre trucīdāre rapere falsīs nōminibus imperium atque ubi sōlitūdinem faciunt, pācem appellant.

'līberōs cuique ac propinquōs suōs nātūra cārissimōs esse voluit: hī per dīlectūs alibī servītūrī auferuntur; coniugēs sorōrēsque etiam sī hostīlem libīdinem effūgērunt, nōmine amīcōrum atque hospitum polluuntur. bona fortūnaeque in tribūtum, ager atque annus in frūmentum, corpora ipsa ac manūs silvīs ac palūdibus ēmūniendīs inter verbera et contumēliās conteruntur. nāta servitūtī mancipia semel vēneunt, atque ultrō ā dominīs aluntur: Britannia servitūtem suam cotīdiē emit, cotīdiē pāscit . . . ita sublātā spē veniae tandem sūmite animum . . . Brigantēs fēminā duce exūrere colōniam, expugnāre castra . . . exuere iugum potuēre: nōs integrī et indomitī et in lībertātem ēdūcātī, prīmō statim congressū ostendāmus, quōs sibi Calēdonia virōs sēposuerit.

'hīc dux, hīc exercitus: ibi tribūta et metalla et cēterae servientium poenae, quās in aeternum perferre aut statim ulcīscī in hōc campō est. proinde itūrī in aciem et maiōrēs vestrōs et posterōs cōgitāte.'

(*Agricola* 29–33)

The Caledonians were defeated in a hard fought battle, but shortly afterwards Agricola was recalled and his successors made no attempt to follow up this victory. Consequently the Caledonians remained free.

27 **polluuntur** are polluted, raped

27–9 **bona . . . ager . . . corpora** these are all subjects of **conteruntur** = are wasted away

28 **ager atque annus** our land and its yearly produce; **in frūmentum** on the corn tax

29 **silvīs . . . ēmūniendīs** in making roads through forests and marshes

29–30 **inter verbera et contumēliās** to the accompaniment of blows and insults

30 **nāta servitūtī mancipia** slaves born for (into) servitude

31 **semel vēneunt** are sold once (and for all)
ultrō . . . aluntur are even fed
Britannia = Britannī

32 **pāscit** feeds; the Britons buy their slavery by paying tribute and feed it by paying corn tax

33 **Brigantēs** Tacitus refers to the great revolt of AD 60–61 led by Boudicca, who was queen of the Iceni (not the Brigantes; Tacitus seems to have made an error here)

34 **exūrere** (to burn) and **expugnāre** (to storm) all depend on **potuēre** (= **potuērunt**). Boudicca's army burnt down the Roman colony of Camulodunum (Colchester), defeated the ninth legion in battle and destroyed several Roman forts. The province was only saved after a tremendous battle in which nearly 80,000 Britons fell according to Tacitus

35 **integrī et indomitī** untouched and unsubdued
in lībertātem ēdūcātī trained/brought up for liberty

36 **prīmō . . . congressū** at the first clash

36–7 **quōs sibi Calēdonia virōs sēposuerit** what sort of men Caledonia has kept for herself in reserve

38 **hīc dux** supply **est; hīc** (here) = on this side, **ibi** (there) = on the Roman side, i.e. if you are defeated by the Romans
metalla the mines

39 **poenae** penalties

39–40 **perferre . . . ulcīscī** to endure . . . to avenge; the infinitives depend on **in hōc campō est:** it depends on this field (of battle) whether you endure . . . or avenge
proinde and so; **in aciem** into battle

41 **posterōs** your descendants

Appendix 2 Continuous indirect speech

Indirect statements are expressed by the accusative and infinitive; if there is more than one indirect statement, the subject of the second and subsequent infinitives is often omitted, if it is the same as that of the first:

Horātius ad fundum suum Rōmā discessūrus Maecēnātī dīxit sē quīnque diēbus tantum mānsūrum esse; deinde Rōmam regressum eum revīsūrum esse.
When Horace was about to leave Rome for his farm, he said to Maecenas that he would stay for only five days; then he would return to Rome and revisit him.

The reflexives **sē** and **suus** always refer to the subject of the introductory verb:

Horātius ad Maecēnātem scrīpsit sē cōnstituisse rūre manēre; veniam sibi daret; reditūrum esse cum vēr vēnisset. sī anteā in urbem redīret, sine dubiō aegrōtātūrum esse.
Horace wrote to Maecenas that he had decided to stay in the country; he (Maecenas) must forgive him; he would return when spring came. If he returned to the city before that, he would undoubtedly be ill.

Indirect commands (or requests) are in the subjunctive *without* **ut**; if negative, they are introduced by **nē**.

All subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive, following the sequence of tenses, i.e. present or perfect subjunctive if the introductory verb is present, future or perfect with have; imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive if the introductory verb is past.

Indirect questions are introduced by an interrogative word and have verbs in the subjunctive, following the sequence of tenses.

Maecēnās ad Horātium rescrīpsit sē eum valdē dēsīderāre. nē diūtius rūre morārētur. quandō Rōmam reditūrus esset?
Maecenas wrote back to Horace that he missed him a lot. He must not (let him not) delay any longer in the country. When would he come back to Rome?

Appendix 3 Uses of the indicative and subjunctive

The *indicative* is used in statements and questions in main clauses.

In subordinate clauses, the verb is in the indicative in:

1 definite relative clauses
2 causal clauses when the cause is stated as a fact*
3 temporal clauses*
4 open and future vivid conditional clauses
5 concessive clauses introduced by **quamquam** (= although)

*for the uses of **cum** with subjunctive, see below

The *subjunctive* is used in all types of clause which are not expressing facts:

1 in main clauses

(a) jussive subjunctive (negative **nē**):

domum redeāmus.	Let us return home.
nē domum redeat.	Let him not return home.
nē hoc fēcerīs/nē hoc faciās.	Do not do this.

(b) deliberative subjunctive:

utrum domum redeāmus an hīc maneāmus?
Are we to return home or stay here?

(c) wishes (negative **nē**):

deī nōs servent.	May the gods preserve us.
utinam nē domī mānsissem.	I wish I had not stayed at home.

(d) potential subjunctive (negative **nōn**), e.g. **velim** (I should like to), **nōlim, mālim, ausim** (I should dare to):

nōn ausim hoc facere.	I should not dare to do this.

(e) in contrary to fact and future less vivid conditional clauses:

sī domī mānsissēs, incolumis fuissēs.
If you had stayed at home, you would have been safe.
sī domī iam essēs, incolumis essēs.
If you were now at home, you would be safe.
sī domum maneās, in perīculum nōn cadās.
If you were to stay at home, you would not fall into danger.

2 in subordinate clauses

(a) clauses of purpose, introduced by **ut/nē**
(b) indirect commands, introduced by **ut/nē**
(c) indirect questions
(d) clauses of fearing, introduced by **nē/nē nōn**
(e) (i) causal clauses introduced by **cum** = since
 (ii) causal clauses where the cause is not stated as a fact:

condemnātus est quod senem occīdisset.
He was condemned for killing the old man/on the grounds that he had killed the old man.

(f) (i) temporal clauses introduced by **cum** (= when) in past time (see chapter 47)
 (ii) temporal clauses expressing purpose as well as time:

in forō manēbat dum pater redīret.
He was waiting in the forum for his father to return.
(Compare: **in forō manēbat dum pater rediit**. He waited in the forum until his father returned.)

in Italiam redī antequam ā mīlitibus capiāris.
Return to Italy before you are caught by the soldiers.
(Here the **antequam** clause expresses both time and purpose, which we cannot do in English.)

(g) concessive clauses introduced by **cum** (= although) and **quamvīs** (= however much):

quamvīs dīves esset, nihil pauperibus dabat.
Although he was rich, he gave nothing to the poor.

(h) relative clauses expressing purpose or consequence:

nūntium mīsit quī patrī omnia dīceret.
He sent a messenger to tell his father everything.
servus dignus est quī praemium accipiat.
The slave is worthy to receive a reward.

(i) all subordinate clauses in indirect speech (see Appendix 2 above)

In all the types of clause listed above, except for those introduced by **cum**, the subjunctive is used because they are not expressing facts (e.g. a purpose is an idea in someone's head; indirect speech is not an expression of fact but a report by someone who may be wrong or lying).

(j) clauses of result or consequence introduced by **ut/ut nōn** have their verbs in the subjunctive although they often express facts:

tam fessus erat ut diū dormīret.
He was so tired that he slept a long time.

Reference grammar

NOUNS

	1st declension	*2nd declension*		*3rd declension*	
	stems in **-a**	stems in **-o**		stems in consonants	
	feminine	*masculine*	*neuter*	*masc. & fem.*	*neuter*
singular					
nom.	puell-a	colōn-us	bell-um	rēx	lītus
gen.	puell-ae	colōn-ī	bell-ī	rēg-is	lītor-is
dat.	puell-ae	colōn-ō	bell-ō	rēg-ī	lītor-ī
acc.	puell-am	colōn-um	bell-um	rēg-em	lītus
abl.	puell-ā	colōn-ō	bell-ō	rēg-e	lītor-e
plural					
nom.	puell-ae	colōn-ī	bell-a	rēg-ēs	lītor-a
gen.	puell-ārum	colōn-ōrum	bell-ōrum	rēg-um	lītor-um
dat.	puell-īs	colōn-īs	bell-īs	rēg-ibus	lītor-ibus
acc.	puell-ās	colōn-ōs	bell-a	rēg-ēs	lītor-a
abl.	puell-īs	colōn-īs	bell-īs	rēg-ibus	lītor-ibus

	3rd declension		*4th declension*		*5th declension*
	stems in **-i**		stems in **-u**		stems in **-e**
	masc. & fem.	*neuter*	*masc.*	*neuter*	*feminine*
singular					
nom.	nāvis	mare	grad-us	corn-ū	r-ēs
gen.	nāv-is	mar-is	grad-ūs	corn-ūs	r-eī
dat.	nāv-ī	mar-ī	grad-uī	corn-uī	r-eī
acc.	nāv-em	mare	grad-um	corn-ū	r-em
abl.	nāv-e	mar-ī	grad-ū	corn-ū	r-ē
plural					
nom.	nāv-ēs	mar-ia	grad-ūs	corn-ua	r-ēs
gen.	nāv-ium	mar-ium	grad-uum	corn-uum	r-ērum
dat.	nāv-ibus	mar-ibus	grad-ibus	corn-ibus	r-ēbus
acc.	nāv-ēs	mar-ia	grad-ūs	corn-ua	r-ēs
abl.	nāv-ibus	mar-ibus	grad-ibus	corn-ibus	r-ēbus

Notes

1 The vocative is the same as the nominative for all nouns of all declensions except for 2nd declension masculine nouns in **-us**, e.g. **colōn-us**, which form vocative singular **-e**, e.g. **colōn-e**, and in **-ius**, e.g. **fīli-us**, which form vocative singular **-ī**, e.g. **fīl-ī**.

2 All nouns of the 1st declension are feminine except for a few which are masculine by meaning, e.g. **nauta** a sailor, **agricola** a farmer.

3 2nd declension masculine nouns with nominative singular **-er**, e.g. **puer**, **ager**: some keep **-e-** in the other cases, e.g. **puer**, **puer-ī**; others drop it, e.g. **ager**, **agr-ī**.

The genitive singular of masculine nouns ending **-ius** and neuter nouns ending **-ium** in nominative is often contracted from **-iī** to **-ī**, e.g. **fīlī**, **ingenī**.

4 The following 2nd declension nouns have minor irregularities: **deus** a god has nominative plural **deī** or **dī**, genitive plural **deōrum** or **deum**, ablative plural **deīs** or **dīs**; **vir**, **virī** man has genitive plural **virōrum** or **virum**.

5 3rd declension. The gender of all 3rd declension nouns has to be learned.

Genitive plural: the general rule is that nouns with stems in **-i** have genitive plural **-ium**, those with stems in consonants have genitive plural **-um**. All nouns with nominative **-is**, e.g. **nāvis**, have stems in **-i**. And so do nouns the nominative of which ends in two consonants, e.g. **fōns**, **urbs**, genitive plural **fontium**, **urbium** (their original nominative was, e.g. **urbis**).

Nouns with stems in **-i** have alternative forms for ablative singular, e.g. **nāve** or **nāvī**, and for accusative plural, e.g. **nāvēs** or **nāvīs**.

6 Most 4th declension nouns are masculine; **manus** is the only common noun which is feminine. There are very few neuter nouns; the only common one is **cornū** horn or the wing of an army.

7 All 5th declension nouns are feminine except for **diēs**, which is masculine.

ADJECTIVES

Masculine & neuter 2nd declension; feminine 1st declension

singular	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
nom.	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um
acc.	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um
gen.	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-ī
dat.	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō
abl.	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō

plural			
nom.	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
acc.	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a
gen.	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
dat.	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs
abl.	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs

Note

Similarly, **miser, misera, miserum** (keeping **-e-** like **puer**) and **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** (dropping the **-e-**, like **ager**).

3rd declension

	consonant stems		stems in **-i**	
singular	*m. & f.*	*n.*	*m. & f.*	*n.*
nom.	pauper	pauper	omnis	omn-e
acc.	pauper-em	pauper	omn-em	omn-e
gen.	pauper-is	pauper-is	omn-is	omn-is
dat.	pauper-ī	pauper-ī	omn-ī	omn-ī
abl.	pauper-e	pauper-e	omn-ī	omn-ī

	consonant stems		stems in **-i**	
plural	*m. & f.*	*n.*	*m. & f.*	*n.*
nom.	pauper-ēs	pauper-a	omn-ēs	omn-ia
acc.	pauper-ēs	pauper-a	omn-ēs	omn-ia
gen.	pauper-um	pauper-um	omn-ium	omn-ium
dat.	pauper-ibus	pauper-ibus	omn-ibus	omn-ibus
abl.	pauper-ibus	pauper-ibus	omn-ibus	omn-ibus

Notes

1 Most 3rd declension adjectives have stems in **-i**. Other types of adjective with stems in **-i** are: **ingēns** (neuter **ingēns**), genitive **ingent-is**; **ferōx** (neuter **ferōx**), genitive **ferōc-is**; **celer** (f. **celere**, n. **celere**), genitive **celer-is**.

2 3rd declension adjectives with stems in consonants are few, eg. **dīves, dīvit-is**; **pauper, pauper-is**; **vetus, veter-is**; and the comparative adjective, eg. **fortior** (*n.* **fortius**), genitive **fortiōr-is**.

	alter (one or the other of two)			**uter** (which of two?)		
	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
nom.	alter	altera	alterum	uter	utra	utrum
acc.	alterum	alteram	alterum	utrum	utram	utrum
gen.	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
dat.	alterī	alterī	alterī	utrī	utrī	utrī
abl.	alterō	alterā	alterō	utrō	utrā	utrō

Plural like that of **bon-ī**, **bon-ae**, **bon-a**. Similarly: **uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque** (each of two).

The following adjectives have the same characteristic, i.e. gen. sing. **-īus**, dat. sing. -ī:

alius, alia, aliud	other	*gen. sing.*	**alīus**	*dat. sing.*	**aliī**
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum	no		**nūllīus**		**nūllī**
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	any		**ūllīus**		**ūllī**
sōlus, sōla, sōlum	only		**sōlīus**		**sōlī**
tōtus, tōta, tōtum	whole		**tōtīus**		**tōtī**
ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one		**ūnīus**		**ūnī**

Comparison of adjectives

Most adjectives add **-ior** to the stem to form the comparative and **-issimus** to form the superlative:

positive	*comparative*	*superlative*
longus	**longior**	**longissimus**
long	longer	longest, very long
trīstis	**trīstior**	**trīstissimus**
sad	sadder	saddest, very sad

The comparative declines as a 3rd declension adjective (consonant stem):

	singular		*plural*	
	m. & f.	*n.*	*m. & f.*	*n.*
nom.	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
acc.	longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
gen.	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
dat.	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
abl.	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

The superlative declines like **bonus, bona, bonum.**

The following common adjectives have irregular comparison:

positive	*comparative*	*superlative*
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	peior	pessimus
magnus	maior	maximus
multus	plūs*	plūrimus
parvus	minor	minimus

* **plūs** in the singular is a neuter noun, declining: **plūs, plūs, plūris, plūrī, plūre.** So **plūs cibī** = more (of) food.
In the plural it is an adjective: **plūrēs, plūra** etc. So **plūrēs puellae** = more girls.

Adjectives ending -**er** in the nominative double the **-r-** in the superlative, e.g.

miser, **miserior**, **miserrimus**
pulcher, **pulchrior**, **pulcherrimus**
celer, **celerior**, **celerrimus**

Six adjectives with nominative **-ilis** double the **-l-** in the superlative:

facilis (easy), **facilior**, **facillimus**
difficilis (difficult), **difficilior**, **difficillimus**
gracilis (slender), **gracilior**, **gracillimus**
humilis (low), **humilior**, **humillimus**
similis (like), **similior**, **simillimus**
dissimilis (unlike), **dissimilior**, **dissimillimus**

Other adjectives with nominative **-ilis** form regular superlatives, e.g. **amābilis** (loveable), **amābilior**, **amābilissimus**.

ADVERBS

1 From **bonus** type adjectives, adverbs are usually formed by adding **-ē** to the stem, e.g. **lent-us** slow: **lent-ē** slowly; **miser** miserable: **miser-ē** miserably. A few add **-ō**, e.g. **subit-us** sudden: **subit-ō** suddenly.

2 From 3rd declension adjectives, adverbs are usually formed by adding **-ter** to the stem, e.g. **fēlīx** fortunate: **fēlīci-ter** fortunately; **celer** quick: **celeri-ter** quickly. A few 3rd declension adjectives use the accusative neuter singular as an adverb, e.g. **facilis** easy, **facile** easily; so also comparative adverbs, e.g. **fortior** braver, **fortius** more bravely.

3 There are many adverbs which have no corresponding adjectival form, e.g. **diū**, **quandō**? **iam**, **semper**.

4 Comparison of adverbs. The comparative adverb is the same as the neuter accusative of the comparative adjective; the superlative adverb is formed by changing the nominative ending **-us** to **-ē**, e.g.

adjective	*adverb*	*comparative adverb*	*superlative adverb*
longus	longē	longius	longissimē
fortis	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē

Note the following irregular adverbs:

adjective	*adverb*	*comparative adverb*	*superlative adverb*
bonus	bene	melius	optimē
malus	male	peius	pessimē
facilis	facile	facilius	facillimē
magnus	magnopere	maius	maximē
multus	multum	plūs	plūrimum
parvus	paulum	minus	minimē
prīmus	prīmum	–	–

NUMERALS

cardinals

1	ūnus	I	16	sēdecim	XVI
2	duo	II	17	septendecim	XVII
3	trēs	III	18	duodēvīgintī	XVIII
4	quattuor	IV	19	ūndēvīgintī	XIX
5	quīnque	V	20	vīgintī	XX
6	sex	VI	30	trīgintā	XXX
7	septem	VII	40	quadrāgintā	XL
8	octō	VIII	50	quīnquāgintā	L
9	novem	IX	100	centum	C
10	decem	X	200	ducentī, -ae, -a	CC
11	ūndecim	XI	300	trecentī, -ae, -a	CCC
12	duodecim	XII	400	quadringentī, -ae, -a	CCCC
13	tredecim	XIII	1,000	mīlle	M
14	quattuordecim	XIV	2,000	duo mīlia	
15	quīndecim	XV			

Notes

1 The numbers 4–100 do not decline; 200–900 decline like **bonī, -ae, -a**.

2 **mīlle** does not decline; **mīlia** is a 3rd declension noun, so:

mīlle passūs = 1,000 paces (a mile)

duo mīlia passuum = 2,000 (of) paces (2 miles)

3 Adverbial numbers: **semel, bis, ter** (once, twice, three times etc.); **centiēs/centiēns** 100 times, **mīliēs/mīliēns** 1,000 times.

ordinals

1st	prīmus, -a, -um	6th	sextus, -a, -um	20th	vīcēsimus, -a, -um
2nd	secundus, -a, -um/alter, -a, -um	7th	septimus, -a, -um	100th	centēsimus, -a, -um
3rd	tertius, -a, -um	8th	octāvus, -a, -um	1,000th	mīllēsimus, -a, -um
4th	quārtus, -a, -um	9th	nōnus, -a, -um		
5th	quīntus, -a, -um	10th	decimus, -a, -um		

Declension of **ūnus, duo, trēs**

	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

PRONOUNS

singular personal pronouns

nom.	ego (I)	tū (you)	
acc.	mē	tē	sē (himself, herself)
gen.	meī	tuī	suī
dat.	mihi	tibi	sibi
abl.	mē	tē	sē

Possessive adjectives:

meus, -a, -um (my)
tuus, -a, -um (your)
suus, -a, -um (his own)

plural

nom.	nōs (we)	vōs (you)	
acc.	nōs	vōs	sē (themselves)
gen.	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
abl.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē

noster, nostra, nostrum (our)
vester, vestra, vestrum (your)
suus, -a, -um (their own)
All decline like **bonus, -a, -um**, but the vocative of **meus** is **mī**

singular	*demonstrative pronouns*								
	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
nom.	hic	haec	hoc (this)	ille	illa	illud (that)	is	ea	id (he, she, it;
acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud	eum	eam	id that)
gen.	huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus	eius	eius	eius
dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī	eī	eī	eī
abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō	eō	eā	eō
plural									
nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa	eī	eae	ea
acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa	eōs	eās	ea
gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs	eīs	eīs	eīs
abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs	eīs	eīs	eīs

singular							*relative pronoun*		
	m.	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*	*m.*	*f.*	*n.*
nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum (self)	īdem	eadem	idem (same)	quī	quae	quod (who, which)
acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem	quem	quam	quod
gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	cuius	cuius	cuius
dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	cui	cui	cui
abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	quō	quā	quō
plural									
nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	eīdem	eaedem	eadem	quī	quae	quae
acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem	quōs	quās	quae
gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	quibus	quibus	quibus
abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	quibus	quibus	quibus

quīdam (a certain, a) declines like the relative pronoun with the suffix **-dam**:

nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam
acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam etc.

The interrogative pronoun **quis**? (who? what?):

nom.	quis?	quis?	quid?
acc.	quem?	quam?	quid? (the rest exactly like the relative pronoun)

The interrogative adjective **quī**? (which? what?):

nom. quī? quae? quod? (exactly like the relative pronoun)

The indefinite pronoun **aliquis** (someone, something) declines like **quis**? with the prefix **ali-**:

nom. aliquis aliquis aliquid etc.

quisquam, **quicquam** (anyone, anything, after a negative) declines like **quis** with the suffix **-quam**:

nom. quisquam quisquam quicquam

Interrogatives and demonstratives

quis? quī?	who? which?	**is, ille, iste** that	**quō?**	where to?	**eō, illō** to there
uter?	which of two?	**alter** one or the other of two	**quā?**	by what way?	**eā** by that way
quālis?	of what kind?	**tālis** of such kind, such	**quam?**	how?	**tam** so
quantus?	how great?	**tantus** so great	**quandō?**	when?	**tum** then
ubi?	where?	**ibi, illīc, istīc** there	**quotiēns?**	how often?	**totiēns** so often
unde?	from where?	**inde** from there			

VERBS

Active

Indicative

	1st conjugation	*2nd conjugation*	*3rd conjugation*	*4th conjugation*	*mixed conjugation*
	stems in **-a**	stems in **-e**	stems in consonants	stems in **-i**	
present					
singular	1 par-ō	mone-ō	reg-ō	audi-ō	capi-ō
	2 parā-s	monē-s	reg-is	audī-s	capi-s
	3 para-t	mone-t	reg-it	audi-t	capi-t
plural	1 parā-mus	monē-mus	reg-imus	audī-mus	capi-mus
	2 parā-tis	monē-tis	reg-itis	audī-tis	capi-tis
	3 para-nt	mone-nt	reg-unt	audi-unt	capi-unt
future					
singular	1 parā-bō	monē-bō	reg-am	audi-am	capi-am
	2 parā-bis	monē-bis	reg-ēs	audi-ēs	capi-ēs
	3 parā-bit	monē-bit	reg-et	audi-et	capi-et
plural	1 parā-bimus	monē-bimus	reg-ēmus	audi-ēmus	capi-ēmus
	2 parā-bitis	monē-bitis	reg-ētis	audi-ētis	capi-ētis
	3 parā-bunt	monē-bunt	reg-ent	audi-ent	capi-ent
imperfect					
singular	1 parā-bam	monē-bam	regē-bam	audiē-bam	capiē-bam
	2 parā-bās	monē-bās	regē-bās	audiē-bās	capiē-bās
	3 parā-bat	monē-bat	regē-bat	audiē-bat	capiē-bat
plural	1 parā-bamus	monē-bāmus	regē-bāmus	audiē-bāmus	capiē-bāmus
	2 parā-bātis	monē-bātis	regē-bātis	audiē-bātis	capiē-bātis
	3 parā-bant	monē-bant	regē-bant	audiē-bant	capiē-bant
perfect					
singular	1 parāv-ī	monu-ī	rēx-ī	audīv-ī	cēp-ī
	2 parāv-istī	monu-istī	rēx-istī	audīv-istī	cēp-istī
	3 parāv-it	monu-it	rēx-it	audīv-it	cēp-it
plural	1 parāv-imus	monu-imus	rēx-imus	audīv-imus	cēp-imus
	2 parāv-istis	monu-istis	rēx-istis	audīv-istis	cēp-istis
	3 parāv-ērunt	monu-ērunt	rēx-ērunt	audīv-ērunt	cēp-ērunt
future perfect					
singular	1 parāv-erō	monu-erō	rēx-erō	audīv-erō	cēp-erō
	2 parāv-eris	monu-eris	rēx-eris	audīv-eris	cēp-eris
	3 parāv-erit	monu-erit	rēx-erit	audīv-erit	cēp-erit
plural	1 parāv-erimus	monu-erimus	rēx-erimus	audīv-erimus	cēp-erimus
	2 parāv-eritis	monu-eritis	rēx-eritis	audīv-eritis	cēp-eritis
	3 parāv-erint	monu-erint	rēx-erint	audīv-erint	cēp-erint
pluperfect					
singular	1 parāv-eram	monu-eram	rēx-eram	audīv-eram	cēp-eram
	2 parāv-erās	monu-erās	rēx-erās	audīv-erās	cēp-erās
	3 parāv-erat	monu-erat	rēx-erat	audīv-erat	cēp-erat
plural	1 parāv-erāmus	monu-erāmus	rēx-erāmus	audīv-erāmus	cēp-erāmus
	2 parāv-erātis	monu-erātis	rēx-erātis	audīv-erātis	cēp-erātis
	3 parāv-erant	monu-erant	rēx-erant	audīv-erant	cēp-erant

Subjunctive

	1st conjugation	*2nd conjugation*	*3rd conjugation*	*4th conjugation*	*mixed conjugation*
present					
singular	1 par-em	mone-am	reg-am	audi-am	capi-am
	2 par-ēs	mone-ās	reg-ās	audi-ās	capi-ās
	3 par-et	mone-at	reg-at	audi-at	capi-at
plural	1 par-ēmus	mone-āmus	reg-āmus	audi-āmus	capi-āmus
	2 par-ētis	mone-ātis	reg-ātis	audi-ātis	capi-ātis
	3 par-ent	mone-ant	reg-ant	audi-ant	capi-ant
imperfect					
singular	1 parār-em	monēr-em	reger-em	audīr-em	caper-em
	2 parār-ēs	monēr-ēs	reger-ēs	audīr-ēs	caper-ēs
	3 parār-et	monēr-et	reger-et	audīr-et	caper-et
plural	1 parār-ēmus	monēr-ēmus	reger-ēmus	audīr-ēmus	caper-ēmus
	2 parār-ētis	monēr-ētis	reger-ētis	audīr-ētis	caper-ētis
	3 parār-ent	monēr-ent	reger-ent	audīr-ent	caper-ent
perfect					
singular	1 parāv-erim	monu-erim	rēx-erim	audīv-erim	cēp-erim
	2 parāv-erīs	monu-erīs	rēx-erīs	audīv-erīs	cēp-erīs
	3 parāv-erit	monu-erit	rēx-erit	audīv-erit	cēp-erit
plural	1 parāv-erīmus	monu-erīmus	rēx-erīmus	audīv-erīmus	cēp-erīmus
	2 parāv-erītis	monu-erītis	rēx-erītis	audīv-erītis	cēp-erītis
	3 parāv-erint	monu-erint	rēx-erint	audīv-erint	cēp-erint
pluperfect					
singular	1 parāv-issem	monu-issem	rēx-issem	audīv-issem	cēp-issem
	2 parāv-issēs	monu-issēs	rēx-issēs	audīv-issēs	cēp-issēs
	3 parāv-isset	monu-isset	rēx-isset	audīv-isset	cēp-isset
plural	1 parāv-issēmus	monu-issēmus	rēx-issēmus	audīv-issēmus	cēp-issēmus
	2 parāv-issētis	monu-issētis	rēx-issētis	audīv-issētis	cēp-issētis
	3 parāv-issent	monu-issent	rēx-issent	audīv-issent	cēp-issent
Imperative					
singular	parā	monē	rege	audī	cape
plural	parāte	monēte	regite	audīte	capite
Infinitives					
present	parāre	monēre	regere	audīre	capere
perfect	parāvisse	monuisse	rēxisse	audīvisse	cēpisse
future	parātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rēctūrus esse	audītūrus esse	captūrus esse
Participles					
present	parāns	monēns	regēns	audiēns	capiēns
future	parātūrus	monitūrus	rēctūrus	audītūrus	captūrus
Gerund	parandum	monendum	regendum	audiendum	capiendum
Supine	parātum	monitum	rēctum	audītum	captum

Passive

Indicative

	1st conjugation	*2nd conjugation*	*3rd conjugation*	*4th conjugation*	*mixed conjugation*
	stems in **-a**	stems in **-e**	stems in consonants	stems in **-i**	
present					
singular	1 par-or	mone-or	reg-or	audi-or	capi-or
	2 parā-ris	monē-ris	reg-eris	audī-ris	cap-eris
	3 parā-tur	monē-tur	reg-itur	audī-tur	cap-itur
plural	1 parā-mur	monē-mur	reg-imur	audī-mur	cap-imur
	2 parā-minī	monē-minī	reg-iminī	audī-minī	cap-iminī
	3 para-ntur	mone-ntur	reg-untur	audi-untur	capi-untur
future					
singular	1 parā-bor	monē-bor	reg-ar	audi-ar	capi-ar
	2 parā-beris	monē-beris	reg-ēris	audi-ēris	capi-ēris
	3 parā-bitur	monē-bitur	reg-ētur	audi-ētur	capi-ētur
plural	1 parā-bimur	monē-bimur	reg-ēmur	audi-ēmur	capi-ēmur
	2 parā-biminī	monē-biminī	reg-ēminī	audi-ēminī	capi-ēminī
	3 parā-buntur	monē-buntur	reg-entur	audi-entur	capi-entur
imperfect					
singular	1 parā-bar	monē-bar	reg-ēbar	audi-ēbar	capi-ēbar
	2 parā-bāris	monē-bāris	reg-ēbāris	audi-ēbāris	capi-ēbāris
	3 parā-bātur	monē-bātur	reg-ēbātur	audi-ēbātur	capi-ēbātur
plural	1 parā-bāmur	monē-bāmur	reg-ēbāmur	audi-ēbāmur	capi-ēbāmur
	2 parā-bāminī	monē-bāminī	reg-ēbāminī	audi-ēbāminī	capi-ēbāminī
	3 parā-bantur	monē-bantur	reg-ēbantur	audi-ēbantur	capi-ēbantur
perfect					
singular	1 parātus sum	monitus sum	rēctus sum	audītus sum	captus sum
	2 parātus es	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus est				
plural	1 parātī sumus				
	2 parātī estis				
	3 parātī sunt				
future perfect					
singular	1 parātus erō	monitus erō	rēctus erō	audītus erō	captus erō
	2 parātus eris	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus erit				
plural	1 parātī erimus				
	2 parātī eritis				
	3 parātī erunt				
pluperfect					
singular	1 parātus eram	monitus eram	rēctus eram	audītus eram	captus eram
	2 parātus erās	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus erat				
plural	1 parātī erāmus				
	2 parātī erātis				
	3 parātī erant				

Subjunctive

	1st conjugation	*2nd conjugation*	*3rd conjugation*	*4th conjugation*	*mixed conjugation*
present					
singular	1 par-er	mone-ar	reg-ar	audi-ar	capi-ar
	2 par-ēris	mone-āris	reg-āris	audi-āris	capi-āris
	3 par-ētur	mone-ātur	reg-ātur	audi-ātur	capi-ātur
plural	1 par-ēmur	mone-āmur	reg-āmur	audi-āmur	capi-āmur
	2 par-ēminī	mone-āminī	reg-āminī	audi-āminī	capi-āminī
	3 par-entur	mone-antur	reg-antur	audi-antur	capi-antur
imperfect					
singular	1 parār-er	monēr-er	reger-er	audīr-er	caper-er
	2 parār-ēris	monēr-ēris	reger-ēris	audīr-ēris	caper-ēris
	3 parār-ētur	monēr-ētur	reger-ētur	audīr-ētur	caper-ētur
plural	1 parār-ēmur	monēr-ēmur	reger-ēmur	audīr-ēmur	caper-ēmur
	2 parār-ēminī	monēr-ēminī	reger-ēminī	audīr-ēminī	caper-ēminī
	3 parār-entur	monēr-entur	reger-entur	audīr-entur	caper-entur
perfect					
singular	1 parātus sim	monitus sim	rēctus sim	audītus sim	captus sim
	2 parātus sīs	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus sit				
plural	1 parātī sīmus				
	2 parātī sītis				
	3 parātī sint				
pluperfect					
singular	1 parātus essem	monitus essem	rēctus essem	audītus essem	captus essem
	2 parātus essēs	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus esset				
plural	1 parātī essēmus				
	2 parātī essētis				
	3 parātī essent				
Imperative					
singular	parāre	monēre	regere	audīre	capere
plural	parāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī	capiminī
Infinitives					
present	parārī	monērī	regī	audīrī	capī
perfect	parātus esse	monitus esse	rēctus esse	audītus esse	captus esse
future	parātum īrī	monitum īrī	rēctum īrī	audītum īrī	captum īrī
Participle					
perfect	parātus	monitus	rēctus	audītus	captus
Gerundive	parandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus	capiendus

Deponent verbs

	indicative	*subjunctive*	
present	cōnor	cōner	
future	cōnābor	–	
imperfect	cōnābar	cōnārer	
perfect	cōnātus sum	cōnātus sim	
future perfect	cōnātus erō	–	
pluperfect	cōnātus eram	cōnātus essem	
Imperative			
	singular cōnāre	*plural* cōnāminī	
Infinitives			
	present cōnārī	*perfect* cōnātus esse	*future* cōnātūrus esse
Participles			
	present cōnāns	*perfect* cōnātus	*future* cōnātūrus
Gerund	cōnandum		
Gerundive	cōnandus		

Irregular verbs

	sum: I am	**possum**: I am able	**eō**: I go
present			
singular	1 sum	possum	eō
	2 es	potes	īs
	3 est	potest	it
plural	1 sumus	possumus	īmus
	2 estis	potestis	ītis
	3 sunt	possunt	eunt
future			
singular	1 erō	pot-erō	ī-bō
	2 eris	pot-eris	ī-bis
	3 erit	pot-erit	ī-bit
plural	1 erimus	pot-erimus	ī-bimus
	2 eritis	pot-eritis	ī-bitis
	3 erunt	pot-erunt	ī-bunt
imperfect			
singular	1 eram	pot-eram	ī-bam
	2 erās	pot-erās	ī-bās
	3 erat	pot-erat	ī-bat
plural	1 erāmus	pot-erāmus	ī-bāmus
	2 erātis	pot-erātis	ī-bātis
	3 erant	pot-erant	ī-bant
perfect stem	**fu-**	**potu-**	**i-**
singular	1 fu-ī	potu-ī	i-ī
	2 fu-istī	potu-istī	īstī
	3 fu-it	potu-it	i-it
plural	1 fu-imus	potu-imus	i-imus
	2 fu-istis	potu-istis	īstis
	3 fu-ērunt	potu-ērunt	i-ērunt

future perfect	fu-erō etc.	potu-erō etc.	i-erō etc.
pluperfect	fu-eram etc.	potu-eram etc.	i-eram etc.
Imperative			
singular	es, estō	–	ī
plural	este	–	īte
Infinitives			
present	esse	posse	īre
perfect	fuisse	potuisse	īsse
future	futūrus esse, fore	–	itūrus esse
Participles			
present	–	(potēns)	iēns, euntis
future	futūrus	–	itūrus
Gerund	–	–	eundum

volō, velle, voluī	I wish, I am willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī	I am unwilling, I refuse
mālō, mālle, māluī	I prefer
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum	I carry, bear

present				*active*	*passive*
singular	1 volō	nōlō	mālō	ferō	feror
	2 vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	fers	ferris
	3 vult	nōn vult	māvult	fert	fertur
plural	1 volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	ferimus	ferimur
	2 vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	fertis	feriminī
	3 volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	ferunt	feruntur
future					
singular	1 volam	nōlam	mālam	feram	ferar
	2 volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ferēs	ferēris
	3 volet etc.	nōlet etc.	mālet etc.	feret etc.	ferētur etc.
imperfect	volēbam etc.	nōlēbam etc.	mālēbam etc.	ferēbam etc.	ferēbar etc.
perfect	voluī etc.	nōluī etc.	māluī etc.	tulī etc.	lātus sum etc.
future perfect	voluerō etc.	nōluerō etc.	māluerō etc.	tulerō etc.	lātus erō etc.
pluperfect	volueram etc.	nōlueram etc.	mālueram etc.	tuleram etc.	lātus eram etc.
Imperative	–	nōlī	–	fer	ferre
	–	nōlīte	–	ferte	feriminī
Infinitives					
present	velle	nōlle	mālle	ferre	ferrī
perfect	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	tulisse	lātus esse
future	–	–	–	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī
Participles					
present	volēns	nōlēns	–	ferēns	–
perfect	–	–	–	–	lātus
future	–	–	–	lātūrus	–
Gerund	–	–	–	ferendum	–
Gerundive	–	–	–	–	ferendus

Principal parts of verbs

Regular verbs of 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations

	present	*infinitive*	*perfect*	*supine*
1st	parō	parāre	parāvī	parātum
2nd	moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
4th	audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum

The following are irregular:

1st conjugation

1 Perfect **-uī**

cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum	I lie down
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum	I forbid

2 Perfect with lengthened vowel

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum	I help
lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum	I wash

3 Reduplicated perfect

dō, dare, dedī, datum	I give
stō, stāre, stetī, statum	I stand

2nd conjugation

1 Perfect **-uī**, supine **-tum**

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum	I teach
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum	I hold

2 Perfect **-vī**

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum	I destroy
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum	I weep

3 Perfect **-sī**

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum	I increase
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsum	I burn, am on fire
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum	I order
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum	I stay, remain
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum	I laugh
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum + dat.	I persuade

4 Perfect with lengthened vowel

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum	I beware
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum + dat.	I favour
foveō, fovēre, fōvī, fōtum	I cherish, look after
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum	I move
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum	I sit
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum	I see

5 Perfect with no change

respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum	I answer

4th conjugation

1 Perfect in **-uī**

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum I open

2 Perfect with lengthened vowel

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum I feel
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum I come

3rd conjugation

1a Perfect **-sī**, supine **-tum**

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum	I pick
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum	I say, tell
dūcō, ducere, dūxī, ductum	I lead
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum	I carry, wear
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum	I marry
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum	I rule
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum	I write
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum	I take
surgō*, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum	I rise, get up (**surrigō**)
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum	I cover
trahō*, trahere, trāxī, tractum	I drag (**traghō**)
vehō*, vehere, vēxī, vectum	I carry (**veghō**)
vīvō*, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum	I live (**vigvō**)

Note

1 verbs marked *****: the forms in parentheses are the original form of the verb.
2 **regō, surgō, mittō** lengthen the vowel of the stem in the perfect.
3 Compound verbs usually form the perfect in the same way as the simple verb, e.g. **prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum**
remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissum

1b Perfect **-sī**, supine **-sum**

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum	I yield ('go' in compounds)
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum	I shut
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum	I escape
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum	I play
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	I send
plaudō, plaudere, plausī, plausum	I clap, applaud

2a Perfect stem the same as the present, supine **-tum**

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum	I decide
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum	I march, hasten
induō, induere, induī, indūtum	I put on
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum	I loose

2b Perfect stem the same as the present, supine **-sum**

accendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsum	I light (a fire)
ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum	I climb
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsum	I climb down
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum	I defend
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	I turn
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsum	I visit

2c Perfect stem the same as the present but no supine

bibō, bibere, bibī	I drink
metuō, metuere, metuī	I fear
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī	I go to see

3 Verbs lengthening stem vowel in the perfect, supine **-tum**

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum	I do, I drive
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum	I drive together, I compel
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum	I buy
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum	I read, I gather
frangō*, frangere, frēgī, frāctum	I break
relinquō*, relinquere, relīquī, relictum	I leave
rumpō*, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum	I burst open
vincō*, vincere, vīcī, victum	I conquer

Note

Verbs marked * insert **n** (**m** before **p**) in the present, which is dropped in perfect and supine, e.g. **fra-n-gō**, original stem **fragō**, hence **frēgī, frāctum**.

4a Verbs with reduplicated perfect, supine **-tum**

addō, addere, addidī, additum	I add (so all compounds of **dō**)
canō, canere, cecinī, cantum	I sing
(cōn)sistō, (cōn)sistere, (cōn)stitī, (cōn)stitum	I stand
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum	I touch

4b Verbs with reduplicated perfect, supine **-sum**

cadō, cadere, cecidī, casum	I fall
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum	I beat, kill
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum	I run
discō, discere, didicī	I learn
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsum + dat.	I spare
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum	I drive
poscō, poscere, poposcī	I demand

NB Compounds of **cadō**, **caedō**, **currō** and **pellō** do not have reduplicated perfects, e.g.

occidō, occidere, occidī, occasum	I fall down, die
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsum	I kill
occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum	I run to meet, meet
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum	I drive out

5 Verbs forming perfect **-vī/-uī**

arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītum	I summon
colō, colere, coluī, cultum	I cultivate
petō, petere, petīvī, petītum	I seek
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum	I place
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum	I ask, seek
sinō, sinere, sīvī, situm	I allow
dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī, dēsitum	I cease

6 Inceptive verbs

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum	I get to know, learn
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum	I grow
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum	I get to know
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum	I rest

7 Mixed conjugation

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum	I take
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum	I desire
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum	I make, do
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum	I flee

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum	I throw
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum	I seize
(īn)spiciō, (īn)spicere, (īn)spexī, (īn)spectum	I look at

Deponent verbs

1st conjugation (all regular)

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	I try

2nd conjugation

cōnfiteor, cōnfitērī, cōnfessus sum	I confess
vereor, verērī, veritus sum	I fear

3rd conjugation

fruor, fruī, (frūctus sum) + abl.	I enjoy
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum	I speak
queror, querī, questus sum	I complain
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	I follow
īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum + dat.	I am angry
nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum	I obtain
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum	I am born
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum + gen.	I forget
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum	I set out
amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum	I embrace
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum	I slip
revertor, revertī, reversus sum	I return
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum + abl.	I use

4th conjugation

experior, experīrī, expertus sum	I try
orior, orīrī, ortus sum	I arise

Mixed conjugation

gradior, gradī, gressus sum	I walk
morior, morī, mortuus sum (fut. part. **moritūrus**)	I die
patior, patī, passus sum	I suffer
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum	I advance

Semi-deponent verbs

2nd conjugation

audeō, audēre, ausus sum	I dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum	I rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum	I am accustomed

3rd conjugation

cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum + dat.	I trust

Irregular

fīō, fierī, factus sum	I am made, I become

PREPOSITIONS

The following take the accusative:

ad	to, towards
ante	before
apud	at
circum	around
contrā	against
extrā	outside
in	into, onto, to, against
inter	among
per	through
post	after, behind
prope	near
propter	on account of
secundum	along
sub	up to; towards (of time)
super	above
trāns	across
ultrā	beyond

The following take the ablative:

ā/ab	from, by
cum	with
dē	down from; about
ē/ex	out of
in	in, on
prō	in front of, on behalf of
sine	without
sub	under

CONJUNCTIONS

Coordinating	
atque	and
aut	or
aut . . . aut	either . . . or
enim*	for
ergō	and so
et	and
et . . . et	both . . . and
igitur*	therefore, and so
itaque	and so
nam	for
nec/neque	and not, nor
nec/neque . . . nec/neque	neither . . . nor
-que	and
sed	but
tamen*	but, however

*these come second word in their sentence

Subordinating	
antequam	before
cum	when, since, although
dōnec	until
dum	while, until
nē	lest, that not
nisi	unless
priusquam	before
postquam	after
quamquam	although
quod	because
sī	if
ubi	when
ut + indicative	as, when
ut + subjunctive	**1** that (purpose, command) **2** that (consequence)

Vocabulary

Latin – English

The numbers after the words indicate the chapter vocabularies in which the words occur; those with no number have not been learned.
Principal parts of all verbs are given except for regular verbs of the 1st conjugation, which are listed with infinitive only.

ā/ab + abl. (7) from; by
abhinc ago
abiciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectum (38) I throw away
absēns, absentis (44) absent
absum, abesse, āfuī + abl. (18) I am away from, I am absent
ac/atque and
accūsō, accūsāre (47) I accuse
accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (4) I approach
accendō, accendere, accendī, accēnsum (27) I set fire to
accidit, accidere, accidit (26) it happens
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum (9) I receive
accurrō, accurrere, accurrī, accursum I run to
aciēs, aciēī, *f.* (54) line of battle, battle
acūtus, -a, -um sharp, acute
ad + acc. (3) towards, to
addō, addere, addidī, additum I add
addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum I lead to; I influence
adeō (adv.) (43) so, to such an extent
adfluō, adfluere, adfluxī, adfluctum I flow to, flock in
adhūc (18) still
adiciō, adicere, adiēcī, adiectum (49) I add to
adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptum (39) I take away
adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum (33) I help
administrō, administrāre (33) I manage, administer
admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis, *f.* (16) wonder
admīror, admīrārī (41) I admire, wonder at
admittō, admittere, admīsī, admissum I let in, admit; I commit
adsistō, adsistere, adstitī + dat. I stand by
adsum, adesse, adfuī (4) I am present
adulēscēns, adulēscentis, *m.* (48) young man
adversor, adversārī + dat. I oppose
adoptō, adoptāre I adopt
adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum (5) I arrive
adventus, adventūs, *m.* (29) arrival
adversus, -a, -um (32) facing, contrary, against
aedēs, aedium, *f. pl.* (21) house
aedificium, -ī, *n.* (19) building
aedificō, aedificāre (11) I build
aeger, aegra, aegrum (23) sick, ill
aegrē with difficulty
aegrōtō, aegrōtāre (54) I am ill
aequus, -a, -um (30) equal, fair
aerārium, -ī, *n.* (40) treasury
aestās, aestātis, *f.* (45) summer
aestimō, aestimāre (40) I value
aetās, aetātis, *f.* (49) age
afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectum I affect
affīgō, affīgere, affīxī, affīxum I affix
age, agite (34) come on!
ager, agrī, *m.* (3) field
agnōscō, agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitum (38) I recognize
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum (19) I drive; I do, manage
agora, -ae, *f.* agora, city centre
āiō (imperfect **āiēbam**) (45) I say
alibī elsewhere
aliquamdiū (46) for some time
aliquandō (38) sometimes
aliquis, aliquid (21) someone, something
alius, alia, aliud (5) other, another
  aliī . . . aliī some . . . others
alter, altera, alterum (29) one or the other (of two); second
altus, -a, -um (19) high, deep
amātor, amātōris, *m.* lover
amātōrius, -a , -um of love
ambitiō, ambitiōnis, *f.* ambition
ambō, ambae, ambō (53) both
ambulō, ambulāre (1) I walk
amīcitia, -ae, *f.* (41) friendship
amīcus, -ī, *m.* (4) friend
amīcus, -a, -um friendly
amō, amāre (12) I love
amoenus, -a, -um pleasant, lovely
amor, amōris, *m.* (12) love
amplus, -a, -um (46) large
an? (29) or?
anima, -ae, *f.* soul
animus, -ī, *m.* (12) mind
  in animō habeō I have in mind, intend
annus, -ī, *m.* (18) year
ante + acc. (12) before
anteā (adv.) (34) before
antequam (conj.) (34) before
antīquus, -a, -um (30) old, ancient
ānxietās, ānxietātis, *f.* (23) anxiety
ānxius, -a, -um (3) anxious
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum (19) I open
apertus, -a, -um (19) open
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritum (52) I appear, am seen
appellō, appellāre (20) I call (by name)
apud + acc. (47) at the house of, with
aqua, -ae, *f.* (2) water
āra, -ae, *f.* (52) altar
arbor, arboris, *f.* (13) tree
arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītum (30) I summon
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsum (26) I am on fire
argentum, -ī, *n.* (28) silver, money
arithmētica, -ae, f. arithmetic
arma, armōrum, *n. pl.* (11) arms, weapons
armātus, -a, -um (26) armed
arrīdeō, arrīdēre, arrīsī, arrīsum + dat. I smile at
arripiō, arripere, arripuī, arreptum (45) I snatch up
arrogāns, arrogantis arrogant
ars, artis, *f.* (43) art, skill
ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum (3) I climb

asinus, -ī, *m.* ass
aspectō, aspectāre I look at
assequor, assequī, assecūtus sum (49) I pursue, catch up, attain
astō, astāre, astitī + dat. I stand by, help
at (45) but
atque (32) and
ātrium, -ī, *n.* (21) hall
attendō, attendere, attendī, attentum I attend
attentē attentively
attonitus, -a, -um astonished
auctōritās, auctōritātis, *f.* (44) influence, authority
audāx, audācis daring, rash
audeō, audēre, ausus sum (40) I dare
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum (3) I hear
audītor, audītōris, *m.* listener, audience
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum I carry away
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum (27) I increase
aula, -ae, *f.* courtyard
aura, -ae, *f.* (13) breeze, air
aureus, -a, -um (52) golden
auris, auris, *f.* (45) ear
aurum, -ī, *n.* (41) gold
aut . . . aut (12) either . . . or
autem (47) but
auxilium, -ī, *n.* (15) help
āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum (44) I turn away
avis, avis, *f.* (41) bird

balnea, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (23) baths
barbarus, -a, -um (49) barbarian
beātus, -a, -um (41) blessed, happy
bellum, -ī, *n.* (11) war
bene (8) well
benignus, -a, -um (27) kind
bibō, bibere, bibī (9) I drink
bis (51) twice
bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (32) goods
bonus, -a, -um (5) good
brevis, breve (25) short

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum (3) I fall
caelum, -ī, *n.* (10) sky, heaven
campus, -ī, *m.* (25) field, plain
candidātus, -ī, *m.* (17) candidate
candidus, -a, -um (17) white
canis, canis, *c.* (7) dog
canō, canere, cecinī, cantum (14) I sing
cantō, cantāre (44) I sing (of)
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum (7) I take
capsula, -ae, *f.* box, satchel
captīvus, -a, -um (48) captive
caput, capitis, *n.* (26) head
carcer, carceris, *m.* (48) prison
careō, carēre, caruī + abl. I lack, am without
carmen, carminis, *n.* (14) song
carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum (42) I pluck, pick
cārus, -a, -um (7) dear
casa, -ae, *f.* (1) house, cottage
castra, castrōrum, *n. pl.* (11) camp
castus, -a, -um chaste, pure
cāsus, -ūs, *m.* (22) mishap, misfortune
caupōna, -ae, *f.* inn
causa, -ae, *f.* (26) cause, reason
  causā + gen. (50) for the sake of
cautus, -a, -um (33) cautious
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum (24) I beware
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (49) I yield, give way to
celebrō, celebrāre (52) I celebrate
celer, celeris quick
celeritās, celeritātis, *f.* (23) speed
celeriter (6) quickly
cēlō, cēlāre (36) I hide
cēna, -ae, *f.* (1) dinner
cēnō, cēnāre (1) I dine
centum a hundred
centuriō, centuriōnis, *m.* (14) centurion
certē certainly
certus, -a, -um (33) certain; resolved
  aliquem certiōrem faciō (32) I inform someone
  prō certō habeō I am certain
cessō, cessāre (35) I idle, linger
cēterī, cēterae, cētera (6) the others, the rest
chorus, -ī, *m.* (30) chorus
cibus, -ī, *m.* (3) food
circā + acc. (46) around; about (of time)
circum + acc. (8) around
circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum I surround
circumspectō, circumspectāre I look around
circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, -statum I stand around
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (15) I surround
circumvolō, circumvolāre I fly around
cīvīlis, cīvīle (27) of citizens, civil
cīvis, cīvis, *c.* (15) citizen
clādēs, clādis, *f.* (37) disaster
clam (32) secretly
clāmō, clāmāre (5) I shout
clāmor, clāmōris, *m.* (10) shout
clārus, -a, -um (21) clear, bright, famous
classis, classis, *f.* (47) fleet
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum (19) I shut
clēmentia, -ae, *f.* (47) mercy
cliēns, clientis, *m.* (24) client, dependant
coepī, coepisse (54) I began
cōgitō, cōgitāre (37) I think, reflect
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum (11) I get to know, learn
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum (32) I compel
cohors, cohortis, *f.* cohort
colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctum (27) I gather, collect
collis, collis, *m.* (11) hill
collocō, collocāre (47) I place, position
colloquium, -ī, *n.* (41) conversation, talk
colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum (41) I talk with
collum, -ī, *n.* neck
colō, colere, coluī, cultum (13) I till; I worship
colōnus, -ī, *m.* (3) farmer
comes, comitis, *c.* (7) companion
cōmis, cōme friendly
comitia, -ōrum, *n. pl.* elections
comitor, comitārī, comitātus sum (44) I accompany
commendō, commendāre I introduce, commend
committō, committere, commīsī, commissum (33) I entrust

commōtus, **-a**, **-um** (12) moved
commoveō, **commovēre**, **commōvī**, **commōtum** I move deeply
cōmoedia, **-ae**, *f.* comedy
comparō, **comparāre** (32) I acquire, get
complector, **complectī**, **complexus sum** (38) I embrace
compōnō, **compōnere**, **composuī**, **compositum** I put together, compose
comprehendō, **comprehendere**, **comprehendī**, **comprehēnsum** (48) I seize
conciliō, **conciliāre** I unite, conciliate
conclāmō, **conclāmāre** I shout aloud
concordia, **-ae**, *f.* harmony
concurrō, **concurrere**, **concurrī**, **concursum** I run together
condō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditum** (29, 41) I store; I found
condūcō, **condūcere**, **condūxī**, **conductum** I hire
cōnfectus, **-a**, **-um** (19) finished
cōnficiō, **cōnficere**, **cōnfēcī**, **cōnfectum** (21) I finish
cōnfīdō, **cōnfīdere**, **cōnfīsus sum** + dat. (29) I trust
cōnfirmō, **cōnfirmāre** (49) I strengthen, encourage
cōnfugiō, **cōnfugere**, **cōnfūgī** (47) I flee for refuge
coniciō, **conicere**, **coniēcī**, **coniectum** (8) I hurl
coniungō, **coniungere**, **coniūnxī**, **coniūnctum** (36) I join together
coniūrātus, **-ī**, *m.* conspirator
conlēga, **-ae**, *m.* colleague
cōnor, **cōnārī**, **cōnātus sum** (36) I try
cōnscendō, **cōnscendere**, **cōnscendī**, **cōnscēnsum** (9) I board (a ship)
cōnsecrō, **cōnsecrāre** I consecrate
cōnsēnsus, **-ūs**, *m.* (49) agreement, consensus
cōnservō, **cōnservāre** I preserve, save
cōnsilium, **-ī**, *n.* (11) plan
cōnsistō, **cōnsistere**, **cōnstitī**, **cōnstitum** (32) I halt, stand still
cōnsōlātiō, **cōnsōlātiōnis**, *f.* cōnsōlātion, comfort
cōnsōlor, **cōnsōlārī**, **cōnsōlātus sum** (36) I comfort, console
cōnspectus, **cōnspectūs**, *m.* (24) sight, view
cōnspiciō, **cōnspicere**, **cōnspexī**, **cōnspectum** (18) I catch sight of
cōnstituō, **cōnstituere**, **cōnstituī**, **cōnstitūtum** (6) I decide
cōnstruō, **cōnstruere**, **cōnstruxī**, **cōnstructum** I construct, build
cōnsul, **cōnsulis**, *m.* (15) consul
cōnsulō, **cōnsulere**, **cōnsuluī**, **cōnsultum** I consult
cōnsūmō, **cōnsūmere**, **cōnsūmpsī**, **cōnsūmptum** I consume, eat
contemnō, **contemnere**, **contempsī**, **contemptum** (40) I despise
contendō, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentum** (14) I walk, march
contentus, **-a**, **-um** (22) content
conterō, **conterere**, **contrīvī**, **contrītum** I wear out
continuō (19) immediately
continuus, **-a**, **-um** continuous, on end
contrā + acc. against, opposite
conveniō, **convenīre**, **convēnī**, **conventum** (9) I come together, meet
conventus, **-ūs**, *m.* meeting
convīva, **-ae**, *c.* (42) guest
convīvium, **-ī**, *n.* (42) dinner party
convocō, **convocāre** (7) I call together
cōpia, **-ae**, *f.* plenty
cōpiae, **-ārum**, *f. pl.* (32) forces
cor, **cordis**, *n.* (53) heart
cornū, **-ūs**, *n.* (37) horn; wing of an army
corōna, **-ae**, *f.* (42) crown, garland
corpus, **corporis**, *n.* body
corripiō, **corripere**, **corripuī**, **correptum** (32) I seize, steal
cotīdiē (21) every day
crās (27) tomorrow
crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditum** + dat. (17) I believe, trust
creō, **creāre** I elect, appoint
crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētum** (28) I grow, increase
crūdēlis, **crūdēle** (24) cruel
cubō, **cubāre**, **cubuī**, **cubitum** (38) I lie down, recline
cum + abl. (5) with
cum (conjunction) (17) when, since, although
cum prīmum (28) as soon as
cūnctus, **-a**, **-um** (54) all
cupiō, **cupere**, **cupīvī**, **cupītum** (6) I desire, want
cūr? (4) why
cūra, **-ae**, *f.* care
cūrō, **cūrāre** (4) I care for, look after
currō, **currere**, **cucurrī**, **cursum** (3) I run
currus, **-ūs**, *m.* (22) chariot
cursus, **-ūs**, *m.* (22) running; a course
custōdiō, **custōdīre**, **custōdīvī**, **custōdītum** (16) I guard
custōs, **custōdis**, *m.* (16) guard

dē + abl. (10) down from
dē + abl. (15) about
dea, **-ae**, *f.* (12) goddess
dēbeō, **dēbēre**, **dēbuī**, **dēbitum** (7) I ought, must
dēcidō, **dēcidere**, **dēcidī** I fall down
decimus, **-a**, **-um** tenth
dēcrētum, **-ī**, *n.* decree
dēdecus, **dēdecoris**, *n.* (48) disgrace
dēditiō, **dēditiōnis**, *f.* surrender
dēdō, **dēdere**, **dēdidī**, **dēditum** (15) I give up, surrender
dēfendō, **dēfendere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsum** (7) I defend
dēfēnsor, **dēfēnsōris**, defender, protector
deinde (17) then, next
dēlectō, **dēlectāre** (30) I please, delight
dēleō, **dēlēre**, **dēlēvī**, **dēlētum** (49) I destroy
dēmittō, **dēmittere**, **dēmīsī**, **dēmissum** (48) I send down, let down
dēnārius, **-ī**, *m.* a penny
dēnique (24) finally, lastly
dēpōnō, **dēpōnere**, **dēposuī**, **dēpositum** (13) I put down
dēscendō, **dēscendere**, **dēscendī**, **dēscēnsum** I descend, come down
dēscrībō, **dēscrībere**, **dēscrīpsī**, **dēscrīptum** I write down, describe
dēserō, **dēserere**, **dēseruī**, **dēsertum** I desert
dēsertus, **-a**, **-um** deserted
dēsīderium, **-ī**, *n.* (50) longing
dēsīderō, **dēsīderāre** (50) I long for, miss
dēsiliō, **dēsilīre**, **dēsiluī** I jump down
dēsinō, **dēsinere**, **dēsiī**, **dēsitum** (36) I cease
dēsistō, **dēsistere**, **dēstitī**, **destitum** I cease from
dēspērātiō, **dēspērātiōnis**, *f.* despair
dēspērō, **dēspērāre** (12) I despair
dēspiciō, **dēspicere**, **dēspexī**, **dēspectum** (34) I look down on

dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī + dat. (43) I fail
deus, -ī, *m.* (12) god
dēvincō, dēvincere, dēvīcī, dēvictum I conquer, subdue
dēvōrō, dēvōrāre I swallow down, devour
dexter, dextra, dextrum (28) right
dextrā (manū) (28) on the right (hand)
dī immortālēs! immortal gods!
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum (5) I say
dictātor, dictātōris, *m.* (15) dictator
dictō, dictāre I dictate
diēs, diēī, *m.* (18) day
in diēs daily
difficilis, difficile (19) difficult
difficultās, difficultātis, *f.* (38) difficulty
diffugiō, diffugere, diffūgī I flee away
dignus, -a, -um + abl. (16) worthy (of)
dīligenter (6) carefully, hard
dīligentia, -ae, *f.* (25) care, diligence
dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum (43) I esteem, love
dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum (6) I send away, dismiss
dīrus, -a, -um (38) terrible, dire
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (17) I go away, depart
disciplīna, -ae, *f.* (35) training, discipline, learning
discipulus, -ī, *m.* (20) pupil
discō, discere, didicī (18) I learn
discurrō, discurrere, discurrī, discursum (44) I run about
dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositum I arrange, dispose
disserō, disserere, disseruī, dissertum (31) I discuss
diū (4) for a long time
diūtius for a longer time, longer
dīves, dīvitis (30) rich
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum (32) I divide
dīvīnus, -a, -um (13) divine
dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* (17) riches
dō, dare, dedī, datum (5) I give
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum (6) I teach
doctor, doctōris, *m.* teacher
doctrīna, -ae, *f.* (51) teaching, doctrine
doctus, -a, -um (29) learned
doleō, dolēre, doluī (51) I feel pain, I grieve for
dolor, dolōris, *m.* (33) pain, grief
dolus, -ī, *m.* (48) trick
domicilium, -ī, *n.* lodging
domina, -ae, *f.* (13) mistress
dominor, dominārī, dominātus sum + dat. (47) I control, dominate
dominus, -ī, *m.* (21) master
domum (6) (to) home
dōnec (35) until
dōnō, dōnāre (42a) I give
domus, domūs, *f.* home
dōnum, -ī, *n.* (30) gift
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītum (4) I sleep
dubitō, dubitāre (34) I doubt, hesitate
dubius, -a, -um (30) doubtful
sine dubiō (30) without doubt
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum (3) I lead; I draw (water)
dulcis, dulce (29) sweet
dum (11) while
duo, duae, duo (5) two
dux, ducis, *c.* leader

ē/ex + abl. (8) out of, from
eam, eum (3) her, him
eās, eōs (4) them
ēbrius, -a, -um drunk
ecce! look!
ēdō, ēdere, ēdidī, ēditum I give out, utter, publish
edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsum (28) I eat
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum (17) I effect, do
effugiō, effugere, effūgī, effugitum I flee away, escape
effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsum I pour out
ego (6) I (acc. **mē**)
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum (36) I go out of
ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum (42) I slip out of
ēloquentia, -ae, *f.* eloquence
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum (5) I buy
enim (17) for
eō, īre , iī, itum (6) I go
eō (adv.) (14) thither, (to) there
epistola, -ae, *f.* (21) letter
eques, equitis, *m.* (31) horseman
equidem = ego quidem I (emphatic)
equitēs, equitum, *m. pl.* (31) cavalry
equitō, equitāre (47) I ride (a horse)
equus, -ī, *m.* horse
ergō (27) and so
ēripiō, ēripere, eripuī, ēreptum (45) I snatch away, rescue
errō, errāre (11) I wander; I err, am wrong
et (1) and
et ... et (15) both ... and
etiam (12) also, even
euge! good!
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum (16) I escape
ēventus, -ūs, *m.* outcome
ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī, ēversum (32) I overturn
ēvigilō, ēvigilāre I wake up
ēvolō, ēvolāre I fly out
excitō, excitāre (13) I rouse, wake up
excūsātiō, excūsātiōnis, *f.* excuse
exemplum, -ī, *n.* (16) example
exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum (6) I go out
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum (14) I exercise, train
exercitus, -ūs, *m.* army
exitium, -ī, *n.* (27) destruction
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum (31) I drive out
explōrō, explōrāre I explore
expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositum I put out; I explain
exsilium, -ī, *n.* (49) exile
exspectō, exspectāre (8) I wait for
exstinguō, exstinguere, exstīnxī, exstīnctum I put out, quench, destroy
externus, -a, -um external, foreign
extrā + acc. (19) outside
exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtum I take off, throw off

fābula, -ae, *f.* (2) story, play
fābulōsus, -a, -um fabulous, from a story
facile (20) easily
facilis, facile (20) easy
facilitās, facilitātis, *f.* (25) ease, facility
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum (5) I do; I make
falsus, -a, -um false
fāma, -ae, *f.* (11) fame, reputation, report

famēs, famis, *f.* (47) hunger
familia, -ae, *f.* (14) family, household
fānum, -ī, *n.* shrine
fās (indecl.) (49) right
fātum, -ī, *n.* (40) fate, destiny
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum + dat. (22) I favour, support
fēmina, -ae, *f.* (1) woman
feriō, ferīre (26) I strike
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum (11) I carry, bear
ferōx, ferōcis (24) fierce
ferrum, -ī, *n.* (32) iron; sword
ferula, -ae, *f.* cane
ferus, -a, -um wild
fessus, -a, -um (1) tired
festīnō, festīnāre (1) I hurry
fēstus, -a, -um festal, feast
fidēlis, fidēle (46) faithful, loyal
fīlia, -ae, *f.* (2) daughter
fīliolus, -ī, *m.* (33) little son
fīlius, -ī, *m.* (3) son
fīnis, fīnis, *m.* (31) end
fīnēs, fīnium *m. pl.* (31) boundaries, territory
fīnitimus, -a, -um on the boundaries, neighbouring
fīō, fierī, factus (24) I am made, I become
flamma, -ae, *f.* flame
flēbilis, flēbile to be wept for, lamentable
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum (18) I weep
flētus, -ūs, *m.* weeping
flōs, flōris, *m.* (14) flower
fluctus, -ūs, *m.* (47) wave
flūmen, flūminis, *n.* (16) river
fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum (46) I flow
foedus, foederis, *n.* (16) treaty
fōns, fontis, *m.* spring, fountain
for, fārī, fātus sum (43) I speak, say
fōrma, -ae, *f.* (13) shape, beauty
forsitan (39) perhaps
forte (35) by chance
fortis, forte (7) brave
fortiter (7) bravely
forum, -ī, *n.* forum, city centre
foveō, fovēre, fōvī, fōtum I cherish, support, assist
frāctus, -a, -um (22) broken
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum (22) I break
frāter, frātris, *m.* (7) brother
frīgidus, -a, -um (54) cold
frīgus, frīgoris, *n.* (46) cold
frūmentum, -ī, *n.* (16) grain
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum + abl. (41) I enjoy
frūstrā in vain
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum (7) I flee
fūmus, -ī, *m.* smoke
fundus, -ī, *m.* (46) farm
fūnus, fūneris, *n.* funeral
furor, furōris, *m.* madness
futūra, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (38) the future

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (9) I rejoice;
+ abl. I rejoice in
gaudium, -ī, *n.* joy
gēns, gentis, *f.* (49) race, people
genus, generis, *n.* (24) sort, kind, race
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum (14) I carry, wear
mē gerō (30) I behave myself
rem gerō (30) I conduct a matter
gladius, -ī, *m.* (26) sword
glōria, -ae, *f.* (14) glory
gradus, -ūs, *m.* (20) step
grāmen, grāminis, *n.* grass
grātiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* (20) thanks
grātiās agō + dat. (20) I give thanks
grātulātiō, grātulātiōnis, *f.* congratulations
grātus, -a, -um (29) pleasing; grateful
gravis, grave (17) heavy, grave, serious

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum (9) I have
prō certō habeō (42) I am sure that
habitō, habitāre (10) I inhabit, live
hasta, -ae, *f.* (8) spear
haud (15) not
herī (30) yesterday
hērōs, hērōis, *m.* hero
hīc (8) here
hic, haec, hoc (15) this
hiems, hiemis, *f.* (12) winter
hilaris, hilare (31) cheerful
hodiē (14) today
hodiernus, -a, -um (51) of today, today's
homō, hominis, *c.* (10) human being, man
honestus, -a, -um (33) honourable
honor, honōris, *m.* (43) honour, office
hōra, -ae, *f.* (17) hour
horreō, horrēre, horruī (41) I tremble, shudder at
horribilis, horribile horrible
horridus, -a, -um rough, savage
hortus, -ī, *m.* (5) garden
hospes, hospitis, *c.* (53) host, guest
hostis, hostis, *m.* (11) enemy
hūc (8) hither, this way
hūc...illūc (19) this way and that
hūmānus, -a, -um (29) human; humane, kind

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī (5) I lie (down)
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum (7) I throw
iam (4) now, already
iamdūdum (45) long ago
iānua, -ae, *f.* (6) door
ibi (12) there
īdem, eadem, idem (31) the same
igitur (17) therefore, and so
ignāvus, -a, -um lazy, cowardly
ignis, ignis, *m.* (18) fire
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum + dat. (40) I pardon, forgive
ignōtus, -a, -um (11) unknown
ille, illa, illud (4) that; he, she, it
illīc there
illūminō, illūmināre I light up, illuminate
illūstrō, illūstrāre I light up, illustrate
imber, imbris, *m.* (44) rain
immemor, immemōris + gen. (38) forgetful of
immineō, imminēre, + dat. (33) I hang over, threaten
immortālis, immortāle (31) immortal
imperātor, imperātōris, *m.* (14) general

imperium, -ī, *n.* (12) order
imperium Rōmānum (26) the Roman empire
imperō, imperāre + dat. (11) I order
impius, -a, um (36) impious, wicked
improbus, -a, -um (45) immoral, bad
imprūdēns, imprūdentis imprudent, foolish
impudēns, impudentis impudent, shameless
in + acc. (2) into, to
in + abl. (5) in, on
incendium, -ī, *n.* fire
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsum I set on fire
incertus, -a, -um uncertain
incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsum I fall into
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum I begin
incitō, incitāre (51) I urge on, incite
inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsum I shut in
incolumis, incolume (8) safe
inde (28) thence, from there
indignus, -a, -um + abl. (43) unworthy (of)
induō, induere, induī, indūtum (20) I put on (clothes)
ineō, inīre, iniī, initum (18) I enter, begin
īnfāns, īnfantis, *c.* (33) infant, baby
īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (12) unhappy, unlucky
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum I bring into, bring against
īnfirmus, -a, -um (41) weak
ingēns, ingentis (9) huge
ingeniōsus, -a, -um (21) clever, talented
ingenium, -ī, *n.* (21) character, talents
ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum (36) I go into, enter
inimīcus, -ī, *m.* (24) enemy
initium, -ī, *n.* (52) beginning
innocēns, innocentis innocent, harmless
inquit (3) he/she says
inquiunt they say
īnscrīptiō, īnscrīptiōnis, *f.* inscription
īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* ambush, trap
īnsignis, īnsigne (25) outstanding, distinguished
īnspiciō, īnspicere, īnspexī, īnspectum I look at
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtum I establish, train
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstruxī, īnstructum I set up, establish, teach, train
īnsula, -ae, *f.* (9) island
īnsum, inesse, īnfuī (23) I am in, I am among
integer, integra, integrum whole, fresh, upright, honest
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum (20) I understand
intentē intently
inter + acc. (9) between, among
interdum (39) from time to time
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum (37) I kill
intersum, interesse, interfuī + dat. (21) I am among, I take part in
intereā (12) meanwhile
intimus, -a, -um (45) innermost, most intimate
intrō, intrāre (1) I go into, enter
intueor, intuērī, intuitus sum (38) I gaze at
intus (adv.) inside
inultus, -a, -um unavenged
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum (11) I find
invideō, invidēre, invīdī, invīsum + dat. (13) I envy
invidia, -ae, *f.* (45) envy, spite
invīsus, -a, -um (54) hated
invītō, invītāre I invite
invītus, -a, -um (19) unwilling
invocō, invocāre I call on, invoke
iocus, -ī, *m.* joke
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (15) himself, herself, itself
īra, -ae, *f.* (7) anger
īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum + dat. (48) I become angry
īrātus, -a, -um (2) angry
irrīdeō, irrīdere, irrīsī, irrīsum I laugh at
irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptum I burst in
is, ea, id (14) he, she, it; that
ita (43) so, thus
itaque (6) and so, therefore
iter, itineris, *n.* (18) journey
iterum (6) again
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum (6) I order
valēre iubeō (18) I bid goodbye
iūcundus, -a, -um (29) pleasant, delightful
iūdicium, -ī, *n.* (45) judgement, law-court
iugum, -ī, *n.* yoke
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.* (19) Jupiter
iūs, iūris, *n.* (25) right, justice
iussum, -ī, *n.* order
iuvenis, iuvenis, *m.* (14) young man
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum (2) I help
(me) iuvat, iuvāre, iūvit (49) it pleases, delights (me)

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum (36) I slip, slide
labor, labōris, *m.* (9) work, suffering
labōriōsus, -a, -um laborious, toilsome
labōrō, labōrāre (1) I work
lacerō, lacerāre I tear to pieces
lacrima, -ae, *f.* (18) tear
laetus, -a, -um (1) happy, joyful
lāna, -ae, *f.* wool
lapis, lapidis, *m.* stone
lateō, latēre, latuī (48) I lie hidden
lātus, -a, -um (21) wide, broad
latus, lateris, *n.* (34) side, lung
laudō, laudāre (2) I praise
lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum (14) I wash
lectus, -ī, *m.* bed, couch
lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, *f.* embassy
lēgātus, -ī, *m.* (32) deputy, officer, envoy
legiō, legiōnis, *f.* (14) legion
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum (17) I read
lēnis, lēne (46) gentle
lentē (4) slowly
levis, leve (41) light
lēx, lēgis, *f.* (25) law
libēns, libentis willing
libenter (29) gladly
liber, librī, *m.* (20) book
līber, lībera, līberum (16) free
līberālis, līberāle (54) generous, liberal
līberō, līberāre (16) I free
lībertās, lībertātis, *f.* (31) freedom
lībertīnus, -a, -um of a freedman; a freedman
lībertus, -ī, *m.* freedman
mihi licet, licēre, licuit (49) it is permitted for me, I am allowed, I may
līmen, līminis, *n.* (30) threshold

littera, litterae, *f.* (6) a letter
litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.* (25) literature
lītus, lītoris, *n.* (10) shore
locus, locī, *m.* (**loca, locōrum,** *n. pl.*) (14) a place
longē (18) far
longus, -a, -um (18) long
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (36) I speak
lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī (25) I shine
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum (6) I play
lūdus, lūdī, *m.* (4) school, game
lūdī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* (22) the games
lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, luctum I mourn
lūmen, lūminis, *n.* (30) light
lūna, -ae, *f.* (28) moon
lupus, -ī, *m.* wolf
lūx, lūcis, *f.* (13) light
lyra, -ae, *f.* (40) lyre

maestus, -a, -um (50) sad
magister, magistrī, *m.* (6) master
magnificē magnificently
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, *f.* great size
magnopere (24) greatly
magnus, -a, -um (4) great, big
maiestās, maiestātis, *f.* majesty
maiōrēs, maiōrum, *m. pl.* (54) ancestors
mala, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (36) evils, troubles
malignus, -a, -um malignant, spiteful
mālō, mālle, māluī (23) I prefer
malus, -a, -um (5) bad
māne (27) early (in the morning)
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum (3) I stay, remain, await
manus, manūs, *f.* (20) hand; band (of people)
marītus, -ī, *m.* (13) husband
māter, mātris, *f.* (8) mother
mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.* marriage
mātrōna, -ae, *f.* married woman
maximus, -a, -um (22) very great, greatest
mē (acc.) (6) me
medicus, -ī, *m.* doctor
meditor, meditārī, meditātus sum (45) I think over, meditate
medius, -a, -um (19) middle
meminī, meminisse + gen. or acc. (50) I remember
memor, memoris + gen. (38) mindful of, remembering
memoria, -ae, *f.* memory
mēns, mentis, *f.* (44) mind
mēnsa, -ae, *f.* table
mēnsis, mēnsis, *m.* (33) month
mercātor, mercātōris, *m.* merchant
mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum (46) I deserve, earn
merīdiēs, merīdiēī, *m.* (21) midday
meritum, -ī, *n.* deserts, reward
meus, -a, -um (6) my
mīles, mīlitis, *m.* (14) soldier
mīlitāris, mīlitāre (35) of soldiers, military
mīlitia, -ae, *f.* (42a) warfare, military service
mīlitō, mīlitāre (31) I serve (as a soldier), I campaign
mīlle a thousand
mīlle passūs a mile
mīlia, mīlium, *n. pl.* thousands; **mīlia passuum** miles
minor, minārī, minātus sum + dat. (49) I threaten
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum (50) I wonder at, admire
mīrus, -a, -um (40) wonderful
miser, misera, miserum (4) miserable
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum (3) I send
modestus, -a, -um (50) modest, moderate
modicus, -a, -um (53) moderate, modest, small
modo only; lately
modo . . . modo (41) now . . . now
modus, -ī, *m.* (52) way; kind, sort
moenia, moenium, *n. pl.* (15) walls, fortifications
mollis, molle (51) soft
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum (9) I warn, advise
mōns, montis, *m.* (10) mountain
monumentum, -ī, *n.* monument
mora, -ae, *f.* (23) delay
morbus, -ī, *m.* (47) disease
morior, morī, mortuus sum (36) I die
moror, morārī, morātus sum (36) I delay
mors, mortis, *f.* (8) death
mortālis, mortāle (41) mortal
mortuus, -a, um (8) dead
mōs, mōris, *m.* (30) custom
mōs maiōrum (30) the custom of our ancestors
mox (1) soon
mulier, mulieris, *f.* (47) woman
multitūdō, multitūdinis, *f.* (25) multitude, crowd
multus, -a, -um (4) much, many
mūnus, mūneris, *n.* (46) gift, duty; (gladiatorial) show
murmur, murmuris, *n.* murmur
murmurō, murmurāre I murmur
mūrus, -ī, *m.* (8) wall
mūtō, mūtāre (50) I change

nam (3), **namque** (44) for
nārrō, nārrāre (2) I tell, narrate
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (43) I am born
nātus, -ī, *m.* son
nauta, -ae, *m.* (10) sailor
nāvigō, nāvigāre (7) I sail
nāvis, nāvis, *f.* (7) ship
nē (34) lest, in order not to
nē . . . quidem not even
nec/neque (5) nor, and not
nec/neque . . . nec/neque (6) neither . . . nor
necesse est (41) it is necessary
necessitās, necessitātis, *f.* necessity
nefās (indecl.) (49) wrong
neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum I neglect
negō, negāre (41) I deny, say that . . . not
negōtium, -ī, *n.* (29) business
nēmō, nēminis, *c.* (13) no one
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum (39) I do not know
nescioquis, nescioquid (45) someone/something or other
niger, nigra, nigrum black
nihil/nīl (44) nothing
nimis too much
nimium, -ī, *n.* + gen. (23) too much
nisi (29) unless; except
nōbilis, nōbile (22) famous, noble
noctū (38) by night
nocturnus, -a, -um (53) of the night, nocturnal
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (15) I am unwilling, I refuse
nōmen, nōminis, *n.* (11) name

nōmine by name, called
nōn (1) not
nōndum not yet
nōnnūllī, -ae, -a (31) some
nōnnumquam (51) sometimes
nōtus, -a, -um (11) known
novus, -a, -um (9) new
nox, noctis, *f.* (9) night
nūbēs, nūbis, *f.* (28) cloud
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum + dat. (30) I marry
nūgae, -ārum *f. pl.* trifles, nonsense
nūllus, -a, -um (13) no
num? (26) surely not?
num (39) whether (in indirect questions)
numerō, numerāre (24) I count
numerus, -ī, *m.* (17) number
numquam (13) never
nunc (12) now
nūndinae, -ārum, *f. pl.* market day
nūntius, -ī, *m.* (12) message; messenger
nūper (30) lately
nūptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* (30) wedding
nūptiālis, nūptiāle (30) of a wedding, nuptial

obeō, obīre, obiī, obitum I go to meet, meet; I die
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum + gen. or acc. (54) I forget
obscūrō, obscūrāre I darken
obses, obsidis, *c.* (16) hostage
obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessum (47) I besiege
obviam eō + dat. I come to meet
Occidēns, Occidentis, *m.* the West
occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsum (34) I fall, die; I set (of sun)
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsum (7) I kill
occupātus, -a, -um occupied, busy
occupō, occupāre (32) I seize, occupy
occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum + dat. (11) I meet
Oceanus, -ī, *m.* Ocean
oculus, -ī, *m.* (12) eye
ōdī, ōdisse (54) I hate
odium, -ī, *n.* (47) hatred
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum (46) I offer
officium, -ī, *n.* (31) duty
ōlim (47) once (in past), some time (in future)
olīva, -ae, *f.* olive; olive tree
ōmen, ōminis, *n.* omen
ōmittō, ōmittere, ōmīsī, ōmissum (45) I let go, neglect
omnīnō (35) altogether, completely
omnipotēns, omnipotentis all powerful
omnis, omne (7) all
onus, oneris, *n.* (45) burden
opēs, opum, *f. pl.* (54) wealth
mē oportet, oportēre, oportuit (49) I ought
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum (31) I oppress
oppugnō, oppugnāre (7) I attack
optimus, -a, -um (17) very good, best
optō, optāre (46) I wish for, pray for
opus, operis, *n.* (35) work; fortification
opus est mihi + abl. (36) I have need of
ōra, -ae, *f.* shore
ōrāculum, -ī, *n.* (34) oracle
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.* (17) speech
ōrātor, ōrātōris, *m.* (21) speaker, orator
orbis, orbis, *m.* (27) circle, globe
orbis terrārum (27) the world
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.* (24) rank, line, order
Oriēns, Orientis, *m.* (44) the East
orīgo, orīginis, *f.* origin
orior, orīrī, ortus sum (36) I arise, rise
ōrnō, ōrnāre (52) I adorn
ōrō, ōrāre (10) I beg, pray
ōs, ōris, *n.* mouth, face
ōsculum, -ī, *n.* kiss
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum (11) I show
ōtiōsus, -a, -um (33) at leisure, idle
ōtium, -ī, *n.* (27) leisure, idleness
ovis, ovis, *f.* (41) sheep

paene (19) nearly
pānis, pānis, *m.* bread
parātus, -a, -um (1) prepared, ready
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsum + dat. (42a) I spare
parēns, parentis, *c.* (14) parent
pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritum + dat. (22) I obey
parō, parāre (2) I prepare
pars, partis, *f.* (26) part
partēs, partium, *f. pl.* (32) political party
parvus, -a, -um (9) small
pāstor, pāstōris, *m.* shepherd
pater, patris, *m.* (7) father
patior, patī, passus sum (36) I suffer
patria, -ae, *f.* (11) fatherland
patrius, -a, -um (42a) of one's father
paucī, -ae, -a (9) few
paulātim (41) little by little
paulīsper (23) for a little (time)
paulum (38) a little
pauper, pauperis (15) poor
paupertās, paupertātis, *f.* (39) poverty
pāx, pācis, *f.* (16) peace
pectus, pectoris, *n.* (43) heart, breast
pecūnia, -ae, *f.* (17) money
pecus, pecoris, *n.* (46) herd, flock
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum I drive
penātēs, penātium, *m. pl.* household gods
penitus deeply
per + acc. (5) through, throughout
peragō, peragere, perēgī, perāctum (53) I complete, accomplish, pass (of time)
perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum (22) I lose, waste, destroy
perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductum I lead, conduct
pereō, perīre, periī, peritum (30) I perish, die
pererrō, pererrāre I wander through
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum (12) I carry out, complete
perīculum, -ī, *n.* (10) danger
perītus, -a, -um + gen. (35) skilled in
perlegō, perlegere, perlēgī, perlēctum I read through
perpetuus, -a, -um everlasting, perpetual
perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpī, perruptum I break through
persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum (45) I follow after, pursue
persōna, -ae, *f.* character

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum + dat. I persuade

perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum (26) I reach

pēs, pedis, *m.* (36) foot

pessimus, -a, -um (17) very bad, worst

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum (12) I ask, seek, pursue

philosophia, -ae, *f.* (27) philosophy

philosophus, -ī, *m.* philosopher

pictūra, -ae, *f.* picture

pictor, pictōris, *m.* painter

pietās, pietātis, *f.* (54) piety, goodness, loyalty

pius, -a, -um (36) pious, good, loyal

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum + dat. (12) I please

  mihi placet (12) it pleases me to; I decide

plānē clearly, extremely

plaudō, plaudere, plausī, plausum I clap, applaud

plausus, -ūs, *m.* (51) applause

plēnus, -a, -um (+ abl.) (27) full (of)

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque (37) several

plērumque often, usually

plūrimus, -a, -um (22) very many, most

plūs, plūris, *n.* more

poēma, poēmatis, *n.* poem

poēta, -ae, *m.* (20) poet

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum (53) I promise

pompa, -ae, *f.* procession

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum (5) I put, place

populus, -ī, *m.* (14) people

porta, -ae, *f.* (8) gate

portō, portāre (2) I carry

portus, portūs, *m.* (27) port

poscō, poscere, poposcī (16) I demand

possideō, possidēre, possēdī, possessum (46) I possess

possum, posse, potuī (8) I am able, I can

post + acc. (12) after

posteā (14) afterwards

posterus, -a, -um the next

posthāc (40) after this, hereafter

postquam (conj.) after

postrīdiē (15) the next day

postulō, postulāre (35) I demand

potēns, potentis (30) powerful

potestās, potestātis, *f.* (27) power

pōtō, pōtāre (53) I drink

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitum I offer, give, show

praeceptum, -ī, *n.* (51) precept, advice

praedīcō, praedīcere, praedīxī, praedictum I predict, foretell

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (32) I put x (acc.) in command of y (dat.)

praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissum I send ahead

praemium, -ī, *n.* (24) reward, prize

praesēns, praesentis (50) present

praesidium, -ī, *n.* (16) garrison

praesum, praeesse, praefuī + dat. (32) I am in command of

praetereā (21) moreover

praetereō, praeterīre, praeteriī, praeteritum (24) I pass, go past

praetor, praetōris, *m.* praetor

precēs, precum *f. pl.* (51) prayers

precor, precārī, precātus sum (52) I pray

prīmum (adv.) (10) first

  quam prīmum (38) as soon as possible

prīmus, -a, -um (6) first

prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.* (7) prince

prīncipia, -ōrum, *n. pl.* headquarters

prīscus, -a, -um (52) old, old-fashioned

prīvātus, -a, -um (43) private

prō + abl. (26) in front of; on behalf of, for

probō, probāre (41) I approve of

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum (4) I go forward, proceed

procul (15) far from, far off

prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditum (38) I betray

proelium, -ī, *n.* (15) battle

prōferō, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātum I bring forward, bring out

prōficiō, prōficere, prōfēcī, prōfectum (40) I make progress, accomplish

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (36) I set out

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum (36) I advance

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum (36) I prevent

prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī, prōmissum (17) I promise

prōnūntiō, prōnūntiāre I proclaim

prope + acc. (6) near

prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositum (53) I put out, explain

prōpositum, -ī, *n.* intention, plan

propter + acc. (29) because of, on account of

prōspectō, prōspectāre (41) I look out at

prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectum (34) I look out at

prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvīdī, prōvīsum (24) I foresee

prōvincia, -ae, *f.* (49) province

proximus, -a, -um nearest, next

prūdēns, prūdentis (27) sensible, wise

prūdentia, -ae, *f.* prudence, good sense

pūblicus, -a, -um public

pudor, pudōris, *m.* (43) shame, modesty

puella, puellae, *f.* (1) girl

puer, puerī, *c.* (3) boy; child

puerīlis, puerīle (25) of boys, childish

pugna, -ae, *f.* (7) fight

pugnō, pugnāre (7) I fight

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (13) pretty, beautiful

pulchritūdō, pulchritūdinis, *f.* beauty

pulsō, pulsāre I hit, knock

pulvis, pulveris, *m.* (54) dust

pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītum (35) I punish

pupa, -ae, *f.* doll

puppis, puppis, *f.* stern

pūrus, -a, -um pure

putō, putāre (47) I think

pyra, -ae, *f.* pyre

quadrīga, -ae, *f.* four-horsed chariot

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum (10) I ask; I look for

quālis, quāle? of what kind?

quam how (in exclamations); than (24);

  quam + superlative, e.g. **quam celerrimē** = as quickly as possible (25)

quamquam (24) although

quandō? (29) when?

quantus, -a, -um? (26) how great?
quasi (49) as if, like
-que (8) and
queror, querī, questus sum (39) I complain
quī, quae, quod (13) who, which
quia (43) because
quid? (53) why?
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (14) a certain, a
quidem (44) indeed
quiēs, quiētis, *f.* (54) rest
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum (10) I rest
quis, quid? (5) who, what?
quis, quid (40) anyone, anything
quisquam, quicquam (29) anyone, anything (after a negative)
quisquis, quicquid (51) whoever, whatever
quō? (22) whither? where to?
quōcumque (45) (to) wherever
quod (4) because
quōmodo? (15) how?
quondam once, some time
quoque (16) also
quot? (34) how many?

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum (22) I snatch, seize, steal
rārō (adv.) rarely
recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessum (51) I go back, retire
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum (32) I take back
mē recipiō (32) I retreat
recitō, recitāre (20) I read aloud, recite
rēctē (20) straight, rightly
rēctus, -a, -um (20) straight, right
recurrō, recurrere, recurrī, recursum I run back
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum (8) I give back, return
redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum (3) I go back, return
reditus, -ūs, *m.* (42) return
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum (23) I bring back; I report
rēgia, -ae, *f.* palace
rēgīna, -ae, *f.* (11) queen
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum I rule
regredior, regredī, regressus sum (36) I go back
rēligiō, rēligiōnis, *f.* (52) reverence, piety
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum (8) I leave behind
reliquus, -a, -um (28) remaining
removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum I move back, remove
rēmus, -ī, *m.* oar
renovō, renovāre (42) I renew
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum (15) I drive back
reportō, reportāre I carry back; I win (a victory)
requīrō, requīrere, requīsīvī, requīsītum I seek for, ask
rēs, reī, *f.* (21) thing, matter
rē vērā (21) in truth, really, in fact
resistō, resistere, restitī + dat. (7) I resist
respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectum I look back (at)
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum (5) I answer
respōnsum, -ī, *n.* (40) answer, reply
rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, *f.* (21) public affairs; the republic
restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtum (49) I restore
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum (23) I hold back
reverentia, -ae, *f.* reverence
revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum (44) I turn back
revertor, revertī, reversus sum (44) I turn back, return
revīsō, revīsere, revīsī I revisit
revocō, revocāre I call back
rēx, rēgis, *m.* (7) king
rīdeō, rīdere, rīsī, rīsum (20) I laugh
rīpa, -ae, *f.* bank
rīsus, -us, *m.* laughter, smile
rogō, rogāre (5) I ask, I ask for
rūmor, rūmōris, *m.* rumour, report
rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum (16) I burst, break
ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum (27) I rush
rūrsus (35) again
rūs, rūris, *n.* (38) the country; *pl.* estates
rūre (38) in the country
rūsticus, -a, um rustic, country

sacer, sacra, sacrum (19) sacred, holy
sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, *m.* (34) priest
sacrificium, -ī, *n.* (52) sacrifice
saeculum, -ī, *n.* (49) generation, age
saepe (4) often
saeviō, saevīre I rage
saevus, -a, -um (35) savage
saliō, salīre, saluī, saltum I jump
saltus, -ūs, *m.* dancing
salūs, salūtis, *f.* (53) safety; greetings
salūtō, salūtāre (2) I greet
salvē, salvēte! (21) greetings!
sānctitās, sānctitātis, *f.* sanctity, holiness
sānctus, -a, - um (52) holy
sanguis, sanguinis, *m.* blood
sapiēns, sapientis (52) wise
satis + gen. (26) enough
saxum, -ī, *n.* (10) rock
scelestus, -a, -um (27) wicked, criminal
scelus, sceleris, *n.* (47) crime
schola, -ae, *f.* (20) school, schoolroom; lecture
scholam habeō (29) I give a lecture
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum (34) I know
scrība, -ae, *m.* (50) scribe, secretary
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum (6) I write, I draw
sculptor, sculptōris, *m.* sculptor
scūtum, -ī, *n.* (35) shield
sēcūrus, -a, um free from care, safe
secundus, -a, -um (35) second; favourable
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum (3) I sit
sēditiō, sēditiōnis, *f.* mutiny, sedition
seges, segetis, *f.* (46) corn crop
semel (51) once
semper (11) always
senātor, senātōris, *m.* senator
senātus, -ūs, *m.* (15) senate
senecta, -ae, *f.* (54) old age
senēscō, senēscere, senuī I grow old
senex, senis, *m.* (14) old man
senior, seniōris (31) older, senior
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum (30) I feel, realize
sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultum I bury
sepulcrum, -ī, *n.* tomb
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (36) I follow
serēnus, -a, -um clear, serene
sērō late
serpēns, serpentis, *m.* (48) serpent
serviō, servīre, serviī, servītum + dat. (40) I serve

servitium, -ī, *n.* slavery
servō, servāre (8) I save
servus, -ī, *m.* slave
sevērus, -a, -um (20) severe
sī (13) if
sīc (9) thus, like that
sīcut (29) just as, like
signum, -ī, *n.* (22) sign, signal, seal
silentium, -ī, *n.* (42) silence
silva, -ae, *f.* (18) wood, forest
similis, simile (50) like
simul (46) together, at the same time
simul ac/atque (54) as soon as
simulō, simulāre (45) I pretend
sine + abl. (18) without
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum (28) left
  sinistrā (manū) (28) on the left (hand)
sinō, sinere, sīvī, situm (21) I allow
situs, -a -um (34) sited, positioned
socius, -ī, *m.* companion, ally
sōl, sōlis, *m.* (30) sun
sōlācium, -ī, *n.* (51) comfort
soleō, solēre, solitus sum (40) I am accustomed to
sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis, *f.* loneliness; desert
sollicitus, -a, -um (33) anxious
sōlus, -a, -um (8) alone
  nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam (16) not only . . . but also
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum (28) I loose, cast off
somnium, -ī, *n.* (40) dream
somnus, -ī, *m.* (11) sleep
sonus, -ī, *m.* (13) sound
sordidus, -a, -um dirty
soror, sorōris, *f.* (21) sister
sors, sortis, *f.* (53) lot, fate
spectāculum, -ī, *n.* (24) sight, show
spectātor, spectātōris, *m.* (24) spectator
spectō, spectāre (5) I look at
spērō, spērāre (22) I hope
spīritus, -ūs, *m.* breath
spēs, speī, *f.* (21) hope
squālidus, -a, -um filthy
statim (5) at once
statua, -ae, *f.* (16) statue
status, -ūs, *m.* state
  status rērum state of affairs
stō, stāre, stetī, statum (11) I stand
strēnuus, -a, -um energetic
strepitus, -ūs, *m.* noise, din
studeō, studēre, studuī + dat. (18) I study
studium, -ī, *n.* (21) study
stultus, -a, -um foolish
sub + abl. (10) under
sub + acc. (35) up to (of place); towards (of time)
subitō (2) suddenly
subitus, -a, -um sudden
sublātus, -a, -um past participle passive of **tollō**
succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum + dat. (11) I (run to) help
sum, esse, fuī (17) I am
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum (25) I take (up); I put on
summus, -a, -um (16) highest; greatest

super + acc. (29) above, over
superbus, -a, -um (24) proud
superō, superāre (17) I overcome
superus, -a, -um above
supplex, supplicis, *c.* suppliant
supplicō, supplicāre + dat. (30) I beg, supplicate, pray to
supprimō, supprimere, suppressī, suppressum I suppress
suprēmus, -a, -um (51) highest, last
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum (4) I rise, get up
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptum (40) I undertake
suspicor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum (48) I suspect
sustulī perfect of **tollō**
suus, -a, -um (14) his, her, their (own)

tabellārius, -ī, *m.* postman
taberna, -ae, *f.* stall, shop, pub
tablīnum, -ī, *n.* (21) study (the room)
tabula, -ae, *f.* writing tablet
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum (9) I am silent
tacitus, -a, -um (9) silent
mē taedet, taedēre, taeduit + gen. (49) I am tired of
tālis, tāle (22) such
tam (18) so
tamen (17) but, however
tandem (4) at last
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum (42a) I touch
tantum (45) only
tantus, -a, -um (12) so great
tardus, -a, -um (44) late
taurus, -ī, *m.* (46) bull, ox
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum I cover
tēlum, -ī, *n.* (35) missile, javelin
tellūs, tellūris, *f.* (54) earth
tempestās, tempestātis, *f.* storm
templum, -ī, *n.* (11) temple
temptō, temptāre (15) I try, attempt
tempus, temporis, *n.* (18) time
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum I stretch
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum (13) I hold
tepidus, -a, -um warm
ter (51) three times
tergum, -ī, *n.* (35) back
terra, terrae, *f.* (3) earth, land
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum I terrify
territus, -a, -um (8) terrified, frightened
terror, terrōris, *m.* (36) terror, fear
testāmentum, -ī, *n.* will
theātrum, -ī, *n.* (26) theatre
timeō, timēre, timuī (8) I fear, I am afraid
timidus, -a, -um timid
timor, timōris, *m.* (26) fear
toga, -ae, *f.* (15) toga
togātus, -a, -um wearing a toga
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum (10, 30) I raise, lift
tot (indecl.) (32) so many
totiēns (32) so often
tōtus, -a, -um (9) whole
tractō, tractāre I treat, handle
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum (5) I hand over
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum I drag
trāiciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectum (47) I throw across
tranquillitās, tranquillitātis, *f.* calm

tranquillus, -a, -um calm
trāns + acc. (15) across
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum (18) I cross
trānsferō, trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātum I carry across, transfer
trēs, tria (5) three
tribūnal, tribūnālis, *n.* platform
tribūnus mīlitum (35) tribune of the soldiers
trīstis, trīste (12) sad
trīstitia, -ae, *f.* sadness
triumphus, -ī, *m.* (48) triumph
trucīdō, trucīdāre I slaughter, murder
tū (6) you (sing.)
tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum (53) I protect
tum then
tumultus, -ūs, *m.* (25) uproar, riot
tumulus, -ī, *m.* (54) mound, tomb
tunica, -ae, *f.* tunic
turba, -ae, *f.* (22) a crowd
turpis, turpe (40) ugly, disgraceful
turris, turris, *f.* (48) tower
tūtus, -a, -um (51) safe
tuus, -a, -um (6) your
tyrannus, -ī, *m.* (26) tyrant

ubi (19) where
ubi (conj.) (4) when
ubīque (19) everywhere
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum I avenge
ūllus, -a, -um (27) any
ultimus, -a, -um (26) furthest, last
ultiō, ultiōnis, *f.* vengeance
ultrā + acc. (49) beyond
umbra, -ae, *f.* shadow
umerus, -ī, *m.* shoulder
umquam (13) ever
unda, -ae, *f.* (10) wave
unde? (23) whence? from where?
undēvīgintī nineteen
undique (23) from all sides
ūniversī, -ae, -a (49) all
ūnus, -a, -um (5) one
urbs, urbis, *f.* (7) city
urna, -ae, *f.* water pot
usque continually
  usque ad right up to
ūsus, -ūs, *m.* (53) use
ut + indic. (29) as, when
ut + subj. (34) in order to (purpose); (43) so that (consequence)
uter, utra, utrum? (29) which (of two)?
  utrum . . . an? (whether) . . . or?
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two)
utinam + subj. I wish that
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum + abl. (40) I use
ūva, -ae, *f.* grape
uxor, uxōris, *f.* (9) wife

vacuus, -a, -um (19) empty
valdē very
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum (33) I am strong, I am well
  valēre iubeō I bid goodbye to
validus, -a, -um (49) strong
vallis, vallis, *f.* (41) valley
vāllum, -ī, *n.* (38) rampart
vānus, -a, -um vain, empty
vehemēns, vehementis (31) violent
vehō, vehere, vēxī, vectum (24) I carry
vēla, -ōrum, *n. pl.* sails
vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditum (18) I sell
venēnum, -ī, *n.* (48) poison
venia, -ae, *f.* (42) pardon
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum (4) I come
ventus, -ī, *m.* (11) wind
Venusīnī, *m.* the people of Venusia
vēr, vēris, *n.* (18) spring
verberō, verberāre I beat, lash
verbum, -ī, *n.* (10) word
verēcundus, -a, -um shy
vereor, verērī, veritus sum (36) I fear
versus, versūs, *m.* (20) verse
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum (8) I turn
vērus, -a, -um (17) true
  vēra dīcere (17) I speak the truth
vesper, vesperis, *m.* (22) evening
vestīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (19) clothes
vestis, vestis, *f.* clothes
veterānus, -ī, *m.* (39) veteran
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum (35) I forbid, order not to
vetus, veteris (22) old
vexō, vexāre (27) I worry, I annoy
via, -ae, *f.* (2) road, way
viātor, viātōris, *m.* (28) traveller
vīcīnus, -a, -um (46) neighbouring, near
victor, victōris, *m.* victor
victōria, -ae, *f.* (24) victory
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum (3) I see
videor, vidērī, vīsus sum (36) I seem
vīgintī twenty
vīlicus, -ī, *m.* bailiff, farm manager
vīlla, -ae, *f.* (32) villa, country house
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum (7) I conquer
vīnum, -ī, *n.* (11) wine
vir, virī, *m.* (9) man
vīrēs, vīrium, *f. pl.* strength
virgō, virginis, *f.* (16) maiden, virgin
virīlis, virīle (25) manly, of a man
virtūs, virtūtis, *f.* (16) virtue, excellence, courage
vīs (acc. **vim**; abl. **vī**) *f.* (54) force, violence
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsum (21) I visit
vīta, -ae, *f.* (29) life
vītō, vītāre (41) I avoid
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum (13) I live
vīvus, -a, -um (28) living, alive
vix (10) scarcely
vocō, vocāre (2) I call
volō, velle, voluī (15) I wish, I am willing
volō, volāre (22) I fly
voluptās, voluptātis, *f.* (51) pleasure
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtum (54) I roll, turn over
vōtum, -ī, *n.* (46) prayer
vōx, vōcis, *f.* (13) voice
vulnus, vulneris, *n.* (17) wound
vultus, -ūs, *m.* (20) face, expression

Vocabulary English – Latin

Regular verbs are given with infinitive only.

about **dē** + abl.
Academy **Acadēmīa, -ae,** *f.*
accept, I **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum**
accustomed, I am **soleō, solēre, solitus sum**
achieve, I **prōficiō, prōficere, prōfēcī, prōfectum**
advance, I **prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum**
affair **rēs, reī,** *f.*
afraid, I am **timeō, timēre, timuī; vereor, verērī, veritus sum**
again **iterum**
against **contrā** + acc.; **in** + acc.
age **aetās, aetātis,** *f.*; new age **novum saeculum**
all **omnis, omne**
allowed, I am **mihi licet, licēre, licuit**
alone **sōlus, -a, -um**
also **quoque**
always **semper**
ancient **vetus, veteris**
and **et, -que**
and so **itaque, igitur**
angry **īrātus, -a, -um**
angry, I become **īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum** + dat.
announce, I **nūntiō, nūntiāre**
another **alius, alia, aliud**
answer, I **respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum**
anxious **ānxius, -a, -um**
Apollo **Apollō, Apollinis**
approach **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (ad)**
army **exercitus, -ūs,** *m.*
arrange for, I **cūrō, cūrāre**
arrive, I **adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum**
ask, ask for, I **rogō, rogāre**
astonished **attonitus, -a, -um**
Athens **Athēnae, -ārum,** *f. pl.*
at once **statim**
attack, I **oppugnō, oppugnāre**
autumn **autumnus, -ī, m.**

battle **proelium, -ī,** *n.*
bear, I **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**
because **quod**
become, I **fīō, fierī, factus sum**
before (adverb) **anteā**
before (conjunction) **antequam**
before (preposition) **ante** + acc.
besides **praetereā**
better **melior, melius**
big **magnus, -a, -um**
bigger **maior, maius**
board (a ship), I **cōnscendō, cōnscendere, cōnscendī, cōnscēnsum**
book **liber, librī,** *m.*
born, I am **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum**
boy **puer, puerī, m.**
bring, I = carry **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**
  = lead **dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum**
burn, I **ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsum**
busy **rēbus occupātus, -a, -um**
but **sed**
buy, I **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum**
by **ā/ab** + abl.

call, I **vocō, vocāre**
calm **tranquillus, -a, -um**
calmly **aequō animō**
camp **castra, -ōrum,** *n. pl.*
can, I **possum, posse, potuī**
captain (of ship) **magister, magistrī,** *m.*
care **cūra, -ae,** *f.*
care for, I **cūrō, cūrāre**
carry, I **portō, portāre; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**
celebrate, I **celebrō, celebrāre**
centurion, **centuriō, centuriōnis,** *m.*
children **puerī, -ōrum,** *c.*
chorus **chorus, -ī,** *m.*
citizen **cīvis, cīvis,** *c.*
civil **cīvīlis, cīvīle**
climb, I **ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum**
come, I **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum**
comfort, I **cōnsōlor, cōnsōlārī, cōnsōlātus sum**
companion **comes, comitis,** *c.*
compel, I **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum**
compose, I **compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositum**
content **contentus, -a, -um** + abl.
country (as opposed to town) **rūs, rūris,** *n.*
  native country **patria, -ae,** *f.*
courage **virtūs, virtūtis,** *f.*
cross, I **trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum**
crowd **turba, -ae,** *f.*

danger **perīculum, -ī,** *n.*
dare, I **audeō, audēre, ausus sum**
day **diēs, diēī,** *m.*
  every day **cotīdiē**
dead **mortuus, -a, -um**
dear **cārus**
decide, I **cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum; mihi placet, placēre, placuit**
defeat, I **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum**
defend, I **defendō, defendere, defendī, defēnsum**
delay **mora, -ae,** *f.*
delay, I **moror, morārī, morātus sum**
delight, I **dēlectō, dēlectāre**
Delphi **Delphī, Delphōrum,** *m. pl.*
deny, I **negō, negāre**
descend, I **dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsum**
despise, I **contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptum**
die, I **morior, morī, mortuus sum**
difficult **difficilis, difficile**
dine, I **cēnō, cēnāre**
dinner **cēna, -ae,** *f.*
dismiss, I **dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum**

doctor **medicus, -ī,** *m.*
dog **canis, canis,** *c.*
don't **nōlī, nōlīte**
door **iānua, -ae,** *f.*
doubtful **dubius, -a, -um**; without doubt **sine dubiō**
drag **trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum**
drink, I **bibō, bibere, bibī**
duty **officium, -ī,** *n.*

each (of two) **uterque, utraque, utrumque**
easily **facile**
easy **facilis, facile**
eat, I **edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsum**
emperor **prīnceps, prīncipis,** *m.*
end, in the **tandem**
enemy **hostēs, hostium,** *m. pl.*
enjoy, I **gaudeō, gaudēre** + abl.; **fruor, fruī, frūctus sum** + abl.
enough **satis** + gen.
enter, I **ineō, inīre, iniī, initum**; **ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum**
evening **vesper, vesperis,** *m.*
ever, for **semper**; **in perpetuum**
every day **cotīdiē**
everything = all things **omnia**
excellent **optimus, -a, -um**
excuse **excūsātiō, excūsātiōnis,** *f.*
exercise, I **exerceō, exercēre**
expression **vultus, -ūs,** *m.*

fact, in **rē vērā**
family **genus, generis,** *n.*; = household **familia, -ae,** *f.*
farm **fundus, -ī,** *m.*
farm manager **vīlicus, -ī,** *m.*
farmer **colōnus, -ī,** *m.*
father **pater, patris,** *m.*
fear, I **timeō, timēre, timuī**; **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**
few **paucī, -ae, -a**
field **ager, agrī,** *m.*
fierce **ferōx, ferōcis**
fifty **quīnquāgintā**
fight, I **pugnō, pugnāre**
find, I **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum**
finish, I **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum**
fire **ignis, ignis,** *m.*
flee, I **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum**
follow, I **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**
foolish **stultus, -a, -um**
for = on behalf of **prō** + abl.
forces **cōpiae, -ārum,** *f. pl.*
forgive, I **ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum** + dat.
forum **forum, -ī,** *n.*
fountain **fōns, fontis,** *m.*
fourth **quārtus, -a, -um**
freedman **lībertus, -ī,** *m.*
freedom **lībertās, lībertātis,** *f.*
friend **amīcus, -ī,** *m.*
full (of) **plēnus, -a, -um** (+ abl.)

game **lūdus, -ī,** *m.*
garden **hortus, -ī,** *m.*
girl **puella, -ae,** *f.*
give, I **dō, dare, dedī, datum**
glory **glōria, -ae,** *f.*
go in, I **intrō, intrāre**
go out, I **exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum**; **ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum**
good **bonus, -a, -um**; very good **optimus, -a, -um**
grape **ūva, -ae,** *f.*
great **magnus, -a, -um**; so great **tantus, -a, -um**
greatest **maximus, -a, -um**
greatly **magnopere**; **valdē**
Greece **Graecia, -ae,** *f.*
greet, I **salūtō, salūtāre**
guard, I **custōdiō, custōdīre, custōdīvī, custōdītum**

hand **manus, -ūs,** *f.*
happy **laetus, -a, -um**
harbour **portus, -ūs,** *m.*
hard (adv.) **dīligenter**
have, I **habeō, habēre**
hear **audiō, audīre**
heart **cor, cordis,** *n.*
help **auxilium, -ī,** *n.*
help, I **adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum**
here **hīc**; to here **hūc**
hide, I **cēlō, cēlāre**
high **altus, -a, -um**
highly (of value) **magnī**
hill **collis, collis,** *m.*
home **domus, -ūs,** *f.*; at home **domī**
honour **honor, honōris,** *m.*
hope **spēs, speī,** *f.*
hope, I **spērō, spērāre**
hour **hōra, -ae,** *f.*
house **casa, -ae,** *f*; **aedēs, aedium,** *f. pl.*
hurry, I **festīnō, festīnāre**

idle **ōtiōsus, -a, -um**; **ignāvus, -a, - um**
if **sī**
ill, I am **aegrōtō, aegrōtāre**
increase, I **augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum**
invite, I **invītō, invītāre**
Italy **Italia, -ae,** *f.*

join, I (battle) **proelium committō, committere, commīsī, commissum**
journey **iter, itineris,** *n.*

kind **benignus, -a, -um**
know, I **sciō, scīre**
know, I don't **nesciō, nescīre**

land **terra, -ae,** *f.*
last, at last **tandem**
late (adv.) **sērō**
laugh, I **rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum**
lead, I **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**
leader **dux, ducis,** *c.*
leave, I = go away from **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum**
= leave behind **relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum**
lecture **schola, -ae,** *f.*
legion **legiō, legiōnis,** *f.*
leisure **ōtium, -ī,** *n.*

lest **nē**
letter **littera, -ae,** *f.*; **epistola, -ae,** *f.*
liberty **lībertās, lībertātis,** *f.*
lie, I **iaceō, iacēre, iacuī**
life **vīta, -ae,** *f.*
light **lūx, lūcis,** *f.*
like, I **mē iuvat, iuvāre, iūvit**
listen to, I **audiō, audīre**
live, I **vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum**
   = inhabit **habitō, habitāre**
long **longus, -a, -um**
   for a long time **diū**; longer **diūtius**
long for, I **dēsīderō, dēsīderāre**
look! **ecce**
look after, I **cūrō, cūrāre**
look at, I **spectō, spectāre; īnspiciō, īnspicere, īnspexī, īnspectum**
look back, I **respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectum**
look for, I **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum**
loud (voice) **magnus, -a, -um**
love **amor, amōris,** *m.*
love, I **amō, amāre**

make, I **faciō, facere, fēcī, factum**
man **vir, virī,** *m.*
many **multī, -ae, -a**
marry, I **nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum** + dat.
master = schoolmaster and master of a ship **magister, magistrī,** *m.*
   = master of slaves **dominus, -ī,** *m.*
meet, I **occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum** + dat.
messenger **nūntius, -ī,** *m.*
midday **merīdiēs, merīdiēī,** *m.*
miserable **miser, misera, miserum**
mistress **domina, -ae,** *f.*
modest **modestus, -a, -um**
money **argentum, -ī,** *n.*
month **mēnsis, mēnsis,** *m.*
more **plūs, plūris**; = more greatly **magis**
mother **māter, mātris,** *f.*
mountain **mōns, montis,** *m.*
moved **commōtus, -a, -um**
much (with comparative) **multō**
must, I **dēbeō, dēbēre**

Naples **Neāpolis**; acc. **Neāpolim**
near **prope** + acc.
need, I **opus est mihi** + abl.
neighbour **vīcīnus, -ī,** *m.*
never **numquam**
ninth **nōnus, -a, -um**
noble **nōbilis, nōbile**
nothing **nihil, nihilī,** *n.*
now **iam; nunc**

obey, I **pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritum** + dat.
occupied **occupātus, -a, -um**
often **saepe**
old **vetus, veteris**
once, at once **statim**
one **ūnus, -a, -um**; one (of two) **alter, altera, alterum**
one day **diē quōdam, quondam**
open **apertus, -a, -um**
oracle **ōrāculum, -ī,** *n.*
other **alius, alia, aliud**; the other (of two) **alter, altera, alterum**; the others = the rest **cēterī, -ae, -a**
ought, I **dēbeō, dēbēre; mē oportet, oportēre, oportuit**
outside **extrā** + acc.
overcome, I **superō, superāre**

pardon **venia, -ae,** *f.*
parent **parēns, parentis,** *c.*
passenger **viātor, viātōris,** *m.*
peace **pāx, pācis,** *f.*
people **populus, -ī,** *m.*
persuade, I **persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum** + dat.
philosopher **philosophus, -ī,** *m.*
philosophy **philosophia, -ae,** *f.*
pick, I **carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum**
play, I **lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum**
please, I **dēlectō, dēlectāre; placeō, placēre** + dat.
plough, I **arō, arāre**
poem **carmen, carminis,** *n.*; **poēma, poēmatis,** *n.*
praise, I **laudō, laudāre**
prepare, I **parō, parāre**
preserve, I **servō, servāre; conservō, conservāre**
proceed, I **prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum**
promise, I **prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī, prōmissum**
punish, I **pūniō, pūnīre**
pupil **discipulus, -ī,** *m.*

quaestor **quaestor, quaestōris,** *m.*
quickly **celeriter**

race **cursus, -ūs,** *m.*
reach, I **perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum (ad)**
read, I **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum**
ready **parātus, -a, -um**
recall, I **revocō, revocāre**
receive, I **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum**
recite, I **recitō, recitāre**
rejoice, I **gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum**
remove, I **removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum**
reply, I **respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum**
republic **rēspūblica, reīpūblicae,** *f.*
rest, I **quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī**
return, I = go back **redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum**
   = give back **reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum**
rouse, I **excitō, excitāre**
run, I **currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum**
run back, I **recurrō**

sad **trīstis, trīste**
sail, I **nāvigō, nāvigāre**
sailor **nauta, -ae,** *m.*
save, I **servō, servāre**
say I **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum**
   he/she said **inquit**
scarcely **vix**
school **lūdus, -ī,** *m.*
sea **mare, maris,** *n.*
see, I **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**
seem, I **videor, vidērī, vīsus sum**
send, I **mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum**

send for, I **arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītum**
sensible **prūdēns, prūdentis**
serve (as a soldier), I **mīlitō, mīlitāre**
set out, I **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum**
severe **sevērus, -a, -um**
shade **umbra, -ae,** *f.*
sheep **ovis, ovis,** *f.*
shepherd **pāstor, pāstōris,** *m.*
shield **scūtum, -ī,** *n.*
ship **nāvis, nāvis,** *f.*
shout **clāmor, clāmōris,** *m.*
shout, I **clāmō, clāmāre**
show, I (of qualities) **praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitum**
shut, I **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum**
signal **signum, -ī,** *n.*
sing, I **cantō, cantāre**
sister **soror, sorōris,** *f.*
sit, I **sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum**
sleep, I **dormiō, dormīre**
slowly **lentē**
small **parvus, -a, -um**; very small **minimus, -a, -um**
so (with adj. or adv.) **tam**; (with verb) **adeō**
so great **tantus, -a, -um**
soldier **mīles, mīlitis,** *m.*
someone **aliquis**
son **fīlius, -ī,** *m.*
soon **mox**; as soon as **cum prīmum**
speak, I **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum; for, fārī, fātus sum**
speed **celeritās, celeritātis,** *f.*
spend, I (of time) **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum**
spring **vēr, vēris,** *n.*
stand, I **stō, stāre, stetī, statum**
stay I **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum**
step **gradus, -ūs,** *m.*
still **adhūc**
stone **saxum, -ī,** *n.*
street **via, -ae,** *f.*
study **studium, -ī,** *n.*
suddenly **subitō**
summer **aestās, aestātis,** *f.*
summon, I **arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītum**
sure **certus, -a, -um**
sure, I am **prō certō habeō**
surely not? **num?**

talk I **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**
tavern **taberna, -ae,** *f.*
tell, I = narrate **nārrō, nārrāre**
= order **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum; imperō, imperāre** + dat.
= say **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum**
temple **templum, -ī,** *n.*
ten **decem**
terrified **territus, -a, -um**
than **quam**
their own **suus, -a, -um**
there **ibi**; to there **eō**
thing **rēs, reī,** *f.*
this **hic, haec, hoc**
three **trēs, tria**
through **per** + acc.
throw away, I **abiciō, abicere, abiēcī, abiectum**
time **tempus, temporis,** *n.*; for some time **aliquamdiū**
tired **fessus, -a, -um**
tired of, I am **mē taedet, taedēre, taeduit** + gen.
today **hodiē**
toga **toga, -ae,** *f.*
top (= highest, greatest) **summus, -a, -um**
travel, I **iter faciō**
treasury **aerārium, -ī,** *n.*
tree **arbor, arboris,** *f.*
true **vērus, -a, -um**
trust (in), I **cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum** + dat.
truth **vērum, -ī,** *n.* to speak the truth **vēra dīcere**
try, I **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**
turn, I **vertō, vertere, vertī, versum**

unwilling **invītus, -a, -um**
use **ūsus, -ūs,** *m.*
use, I **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** + abl.
useful, to be **ūsuī esse**

value, I **aestimō, aestimāre**
verse **versus, -ūs,** *m.*
visit, I **vīsō, vīsere, vīsī**

wait, I = stay **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum**
= wait for **exspectō, exspectāre**
wake up, I **ēvigilō, ēvigilāre** (intr.)
excitō, excitāre (trans.)
walk, I **contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum**
want, I **cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum**
war **bellum, -ī,** *n.*
warn, I **moneō, monēre**
watch, I **spectō, spectāre**
wave **unda, -ae,** *f.*
wedding **nūptiae, -ārum,** *f. pl.*
weep, I **fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum**
when **ubi, cum**
where? **ubi?** where to? **quō?**
whether? **num?**
whether . . . or? **utrum . . . an?**
wife **uxor, uxōris,** *f.*
without **sine** + abl.
who? **quis?**
why? **cūr?**
willing, I am **volō, velle, voluī**
wine **vīnum, -ī,** *n.*
winter **hiems, hiemis,** *f.*
wish, I **cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum**
with **cum** + abl.
wolf **lupus, -ī,** *m.*
woman **fēmina, -ae,** *f.*
wood **silva, -ae,** *f.*
wool **lāna, -ae,** *f.*
word **verbum, -ī,** *n.*
work I **labōrō, labōrāre**
worse **peior, peius**
worthy (of) **dignus, -a, -um** (+ abl.)
wound, I **vulnerō, vulnerāre**
write, I **scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum**

year **annus, -ī,** *m.*
young man **iuvenis, iuvenis,** *m.*

Index of grammar

The numbers refer to chapters

ablative
    absolute 37
    other uses 40
accusative and infinitive construction 41
conditional clauses 44
connecting relative 47
consecutive (result) clauses 43
cum = when 35, 47
    = since, although 47
dative, predicative 53
deliberative questions 45
deponent verbs 36
dum 47
fearing, clauses of 48
genitive of value 40
gerundives 51, 52
gerunds 50
imperative, passive 36
impersonal verbs 49
indicative 34, Appendix 3
indirect command 35, Appendix 2
indirect question 39, Appendix 2
indirect statement 41, Appendix 2
infinitive
    all tenses 41
    present passive 36
jussive subjunctive 34, 45
moods 34
optative subjunctive 45
participle, future 38
passive, impersonal use of 49
potential subjunctive 45
predicative dative 53
purpose, clauses of 34
relative
    connecting 47
    + subjunctive 53
result (consecutive) clauses 43
semi-deponent verbs 40
subjunctive
    deliberative 45
    'future' 39
    jussive 34, 45
    optative 45
    perfect 39
    pluperfect 35
    potential 45
    present and imperfect 34 (active), 35 (passive)
    uses of Appendix 3
ut 54
wishes 45

OXFORD LATIN COURSE

This second edition of the Oxford Latin Course combines the best features of both modern and traditional methods of Latin teaching from first stages to GCSE. Completely revised and restructured in light of a nationwide survey of Classics' teachers, it provides an exciting and stimulating approach to Latin based on the reading of original texts. Parts I–III are built around a narrative detailing the life of Horace, based closely on historical sources, which helps students to develop an understanding of the times of Cicero and Augustus. The course is completed by a Reader consisting of extracts from Caesar, Cicero, Catullus, Virgil, Livy and Ovid.

In addition, the second edition offers full colour illustrations throughout Parts I, II and III, and an expanded Teacher's Book for each part, with translations. It also features:

- clearer presentation of grammar
- revised narrative passages
- new background sections
- more emphasis on the role of women and on daily life
- a greater number and variety of exercises
- review chapters and tests

Part I ISBN 0 19 912226 1
Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912230 X

Part II ISBN 0 19 912227 X
Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912231 8

Part III ISBN 0 19 912228 8
Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912232 6

Reader ISBN 0 19 521209 6
Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912233 4

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.OxfordSecondary.co.uk

0113
€ 25.95

ISBN 978-0-19-912228-8
9 780199 122288